Scientific Excellence • Resource Protection & Conservation • Benefits for Canadians
Excellence scientifique • Protection et conservation des ressources • Bénéfices aux Canadiens

Report from the National Workshop on Recruitment

Edited by M. Sinclair, J.T. Anderson, M. Chadwick, J. Gagné, W.D. McKone, J.C. Rice and D. Ware

Fisheries Research Branch
Biological Sciences Directorate
Department of Fisheries and Oceans
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0E6

September 1988

Canadian Technical Report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences No. 1626

Fisheries and Oceans Pêches et Océans

Canada

Canadian Technical Report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences

Technical reports contain scientific and technical information that contributes to existing knowledge but which is not normally appropriate for primary literature. Technical reports are directed primarily toward a worldwide audience and have an international distribution. No restriction is placed on subject matter and the series reflects the broad interests and policies of the Department of Fisheries and Oceans, namely, fisheries and aquatic sciences.

Technical reports may be cited as full publications. The correct citation appears above the abstract of each report. Each report is abstracted in *Aquatic Sciences and Fisheries Abstracts* and indexed in the Department's annual index to scientific and technical publications.

Numbers 1–456 in this series were issued as Technical Reports of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada. Numbers 457–714 were issued as Department of the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Research and Development Directorate Technical Reports. Numbers 715–924 were issued as Department of Fisheries and the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service Technical Reports. The current series name was changed with report number 925.

Technical reports are produced regionally but are numbered nationally. Requests for individual reports will be filled by the issuing establishment listed on the front cover and title page. Out-of-stock reports will be supplied for a fee by commercial agents.

Rapport technique canadien des sciences halieutiques et aquatiques

Les rapports techniques contiennent des renseignements scientifiques et techniques qui constituent une contribution aux connaissances actuelles, mais qui ne sont pas normalement appropriés pour la publication dans un journal scientifique. Les rapports techniques sont destinés essentiellement à un public international et ils sont distribués à cet échelon. Il n'y a aucune restriction quant au sujet; de fait, la série reflète la vaste gamme des intérêts et des politiques du ministère des Pêches et des Océans, c'est-à-dire les sciences halieutiques et aquatiques.

Les rapports techniques peuvent être cités comme des publications complètes. Le titre exact paraît au-dessus du résumé de chaque rapport. Les rapports techniques sont résumés dans la revue *Résumés des sciences aquatiques et halieutiques*, et ils sont classés dans l'index annual des publications scientifiques et techniques du Ministère.

Les numéros 1 à 456 de cette série ont été publiés à titre de rapports techniques de l'Office des recherches sur les pêcheries du Canada. Les numéros 457 à 714 sont parus à titre de rapports techniques de la Direction générale de la recherche et du développement, Service des pêches et de la mer, ministère de l'Environnement. Les numéros 715 à 924 ont été publiés à titre de rapports techniques du Service des pêches et de la mer, ministère des Pêches et de l'Environnement. Le nom actuel de la série a été établi lors de la parution du numéro 925.

Les rapports techniques sont produits à l'échelon régional, mais numérotés à l'échelon national. Les demandes de rapports seront satisfaites par l'établissement auteur dont le nom figure sur la couverture et la page du titre. Les rapports épuisés seront fournis contre rétribution par des agents commerciaux.

ERRATA

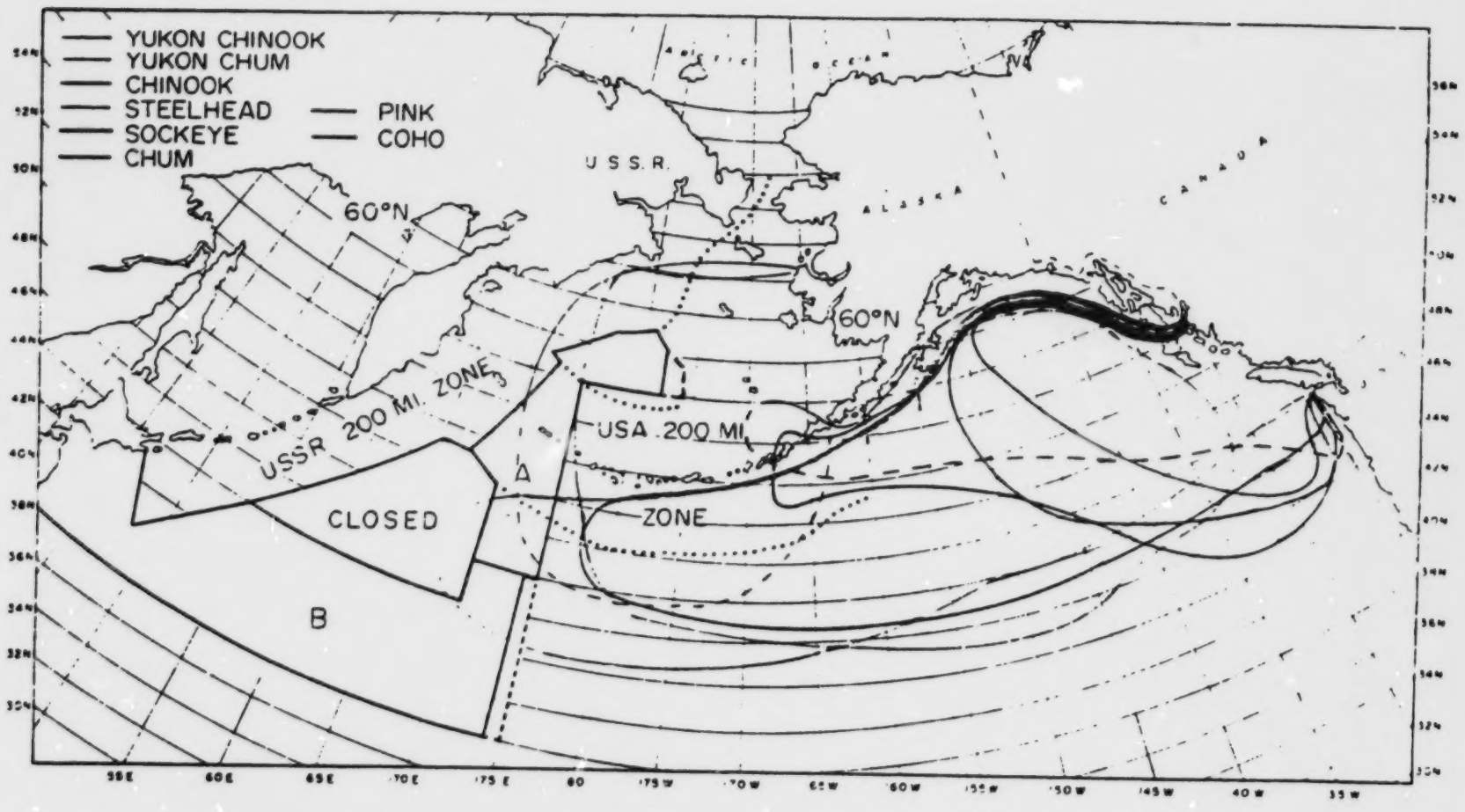
Canadian Technical Report of
Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences
No. 1626

Sinclair, M., J. T. Anderson, M. Chadwick, J. Gagné, W. D. McKone, J. C. Rice and D. Ware (eds.). 1988. Report from the National Workshop on Recruitment, Northwest Atlantic Fisheries Center, St. John's, Newfoundland, February 23-25, 1988. Canadian Technical Report of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences No. 1626.

Please find attached an edited version of the paper "Background information on the sockeye salmon question" by N. B. Hargreaves. An unedited version of this paper was inadvertently included in the Report from the National Workshop on Recruitment.

cc: M. Sinclair
J. T. Anderson
M. Chadwick
J. Gagné
W. D. McKone
J. C. Rice
D. Ware

FIGURE 1



Known ocean distribution of Canadian Pacific salmon and steelhead trout, as determined by tag recoveries, 1956-1986, and Japanese high-seas salmon fishing areas in 1987. A -- Mothership fishing area. B -- Landbased fishing area. Broken coloured lines indicate uncertain salmon distribution boundaries due to lack of data. Broken lines at 175°E between 38°N and 46°N, and east of 178°W in the central Bering Sea, represent easterly boundaries of the landbased fishing area from 1978 to 1985 and the Mothership fishing area from 1978 to 1986, respectively.

APPENDIX III BACKGROUND INFORMATION ON THE SOCKEYE SALMON QUESTION

by

B. Hargreaves
Pacific Region

Problem: To determine the distribution, mortality, and growth rates of Canadian salmon in the North Pacific Ocean, and identify the factors that contribute to interannual variability in recruitment.

Reason: This is a difficult but important problem, applicable to salmonids and many oceanic resource species. Most research on recruitment of west coast salmon has focused on the fresh water and early marine phases of the life cycle. However, attention may soon have to broaden to include recruitment processes on the high-seas. This would be a major undertaking and the focused, inter-disciplinary format of this workshop provides an unusual opportunity to discuss new ideas and approaches.

Elaboration of the Problem

Pacific salmon are the most important commercial species on the west coast of Canada. Most salmon spend a major portion of their life cycle in the ocean before returning to spawn and die in fresh water. Data from high-seas fishing and tagging work indicates that some species of salmon migrate large distances and are widely distributed in the northeastern Pacific Ocean during the oceanic phase (figure 1).

From a recruitment perspective, the abundance of all five species of salmon typically shown substantial interannual variability. In some cases, there is also significant variation in body size, and in the migration timing and routes taken by adult salmon returning to spawn. Many attempts have been made to explain and predict interannual variability in salmon production, including regression, correlation, and time series analyses. Some models initially appear to work well, but invariably have broken down soon after additional data became available. In general, much of the interannual variability in recruitment of salmon remains unexplained and unpredictable, which makes effective management of the fisheries very difficult.

During the oceanic phase, most Canadian salmon travel far beyond national territorial waters, and are susceptible to capture by foreign fishing fleets. In recent years there has been a dramatic increase in the number of foreign vessels fishing flying squid on the high-seas. This fishery is not directed at salmon, and existing data suggests that there is probably not much overlap between the distribution of salmon and flying squid during the current squid fishing season. However, the gillnets used to capture squid are known to be very effective in capturing maturing salmon, and existing international agreements (e.g., INPFC) which govern the distribution of fishing vessels, duration of the fishing season, reporting of catch data, etc., do not include countries such as Korea and Taiwan, which now represent the vast majority of the squid fishing fleet. Thus there is

growing concern that high-seas fishing activities in the North Pacific may currently, or soon will, have important negative impacts on the productivity of Canadian salmon. Although there is sufficient data available to indicate the general distribution of Canadian salmon in the North Pacific, this picture is a composite of many small, often isolated data sets, collected over many years. Thus the details remain uncertain, particularly in terms of interannual variation in ocean distributions.

It is therefore important to determine the distribution, mortality, growth rates, and interception rates of Canadian salmon by foreign fishing vessels in the North Pacific Ocean, and identify the high-seas factors that contribute to interannual variability in recruitment. This is also a generic question, applicable to other species in both the North Pacific (e.g., pomfret) and North Atlantic Oceans (e.g. Atlantic salmon). The problem is - what is the most effective way to tackle this type of question? What fisheries parameters should be measured or studied? What oceanographic factors are likely to be important? When? Where? How?

General Background

The five species of Pacific salmon (commonly called sockeye, coho, chinook, pink, and chum) that occur naturally off the west coast of North America support one of the most important fisheries in the North Pacific Ocean. For example, the commercial catch of salmon by Canada, the United States, and Japan averaged 438,346 tonnes, with a landed value of 1.2 billion (Canadian dollars) a year during the period of 1977 to 1982, the latest year for which published figures are available for all three nations (I.N.P.F.C. Statistical Yearbooks 1972-1982). In Canada, Pacific salmon are by far the most important fisheries resource on the west coast, in terms of both value and size. For example, in 1985 the total landed value of all commercial species in British Columbia was worth 375 million dollars, of which salmon accounted for 246 million (66%). Annual commercial landings of B.C. salmon over the past decade have averaged 142 million pounds, dominated by pinks (37 million pounds), sockeye (34 million pounds), and chums (31 million pounds). Coho and chinook salmon are caught in smaller quantities in the commercial fisheries (23 and 17 million pounds, respectively), but these two species support an important sport fishery. It has been estimated that approximately 200-600 thousand chinook and 600-1300 thousand coho salmon are taken each year by sport fishermen. Coho and chinook are the primary target species for approximately 90% of all sport fishing conducted in tidal waters, which is estimated to be worth about 85 million a year to the B.C. economy in direct tourism-related income, and an additional 402 million a year in "economic activity" arising indirectly from sport fishing in tidal waters.

The five species of B.C. salmon differ considerably in many respects, including their productivity, their dependence on fresh water habitat, longevity, flexibility in the life cycle, size at maturity, behaviour, susceptibility to fishing gear, and preference by both Canadian and international consumers. From a recruitment perspective, considerable interannual variation in survival rates has been observed. Early research suggested that the "bottle-neck" in salmon productivity occurred during the fresh water phase. Much subsequent work and recent major initiatives (e.g., Salmonid Enhancement Program) have clearly demonstrated the importance of fresh water events to salmon recruitment, but have generally failed to account for more than 15 to 25% of the interannual variability in abundance. This

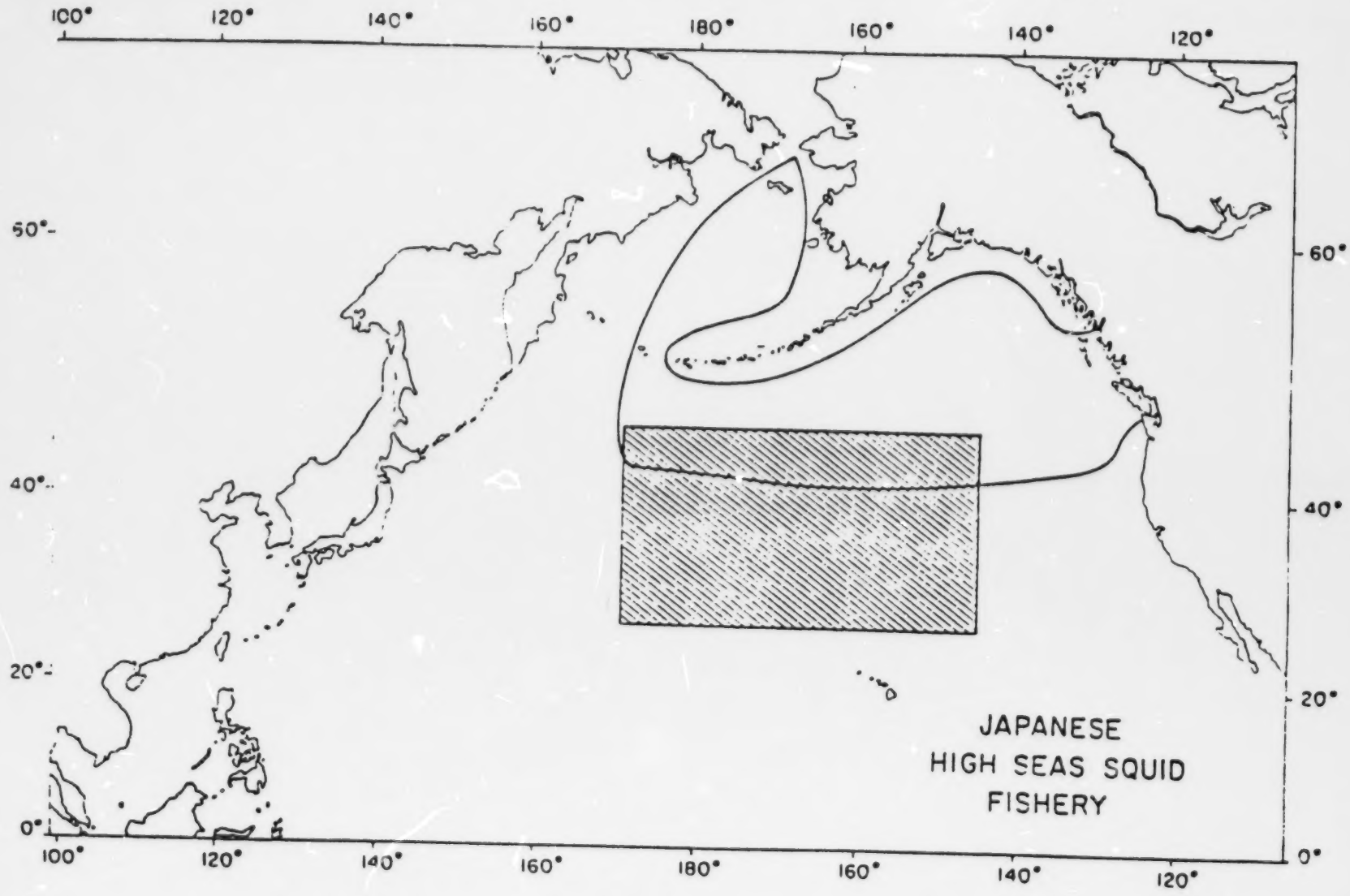
has led to the current era, when many people are convinced that the main "bottle-neck" in productivity is high and variable mortality during the early sea-life stage. However, events in coastal waters may ultimately prove to be responsible for only a portion (perhaps 30-50%?) of the total interannual variability in mortality. After quantifying this, the next logical step will be to investigate recruitment processes of salmon on the high-seas to determine the remaining sources of variability.

Research on the distribution, mortality, and growth of salmon on the high-seas is also a major concern for stock management. Accurate estimates of interannual variations in abundance, average size, migration routes, and migration timing prior to the fishing season would greatly improve and facilitate management of the fishery.

High-seas Fisheries

There has recently been increasing concern about the impact on Canadian salmon of foreign fleets fishing on the high-seas. This concern is currently restricted to three fisheries: a) the high-seas salmon-directed fisheries of Japan, b) the high-seas driftnet fisheries by Japan for non-salmonid species, and c) the high-seas driftnet fisheries for non-salmonid species conducted by other nations. The fisheries with the greatest potential for significantly affecting Canadian salmon are the driftnet fisheries for non-salmonid species. Japanese, Taiwanese, and Korean vessels annually conduct extensive driftnet (gillnet) fisheries for flying squid, Ommastrephes bartrami in the North Pacific Ocean. It is currently difficult to obtain reliable estimates for the total amount of fishing gear and effort involved in this fishery, but it is clearly substantial. For example, in 1983 an average of 150 Japanese vessels, approximately 200 Korean vessels, and 101 Taiwanese vessels participated in high-seas squid fisheries. Each vessel typically fishes 30 to 50 km of gillnet, amounting to a total of 13530 to 22550 km of gillnet deployed each night! The high-seas squid fishery has continued to expand since 1983, so it is likely that this is a conservative estimate of the amount of vessels and gear involved in more recent years.

The existing data indicate that there is some overlap in the geographic distribution of flying squid and salmon in the North Pacific (figure 2). However, this is probably not very significant in a practical sense. The area of overlap in distribution of squid and salmon arises from the north-south migrations of both species, in response to the seasonal warming and cooling of the surface layer of the ocean. However, flying squid prefer warmer water than salmon and typically are concentrated significantly further south at any given time. The results of a Canadian research vessel cruise this past summer are consistent with this, and indicate that very few salmon would normally be caught by fishing vessels targeting exclusively on flying squid. However, it is not known to what extent interannual variability in oceanographic conditions affects the distribution of squid and salmon, or to what extent some vessels may be targeting on species other than squid. Very little is currently known about the distribution and fishing activities of vessels from Taiwan and Korea.



Japanese high seas squid fishery area compared to Canadian high seas salmonid area of interest. Maximum salmonid ranges are shown and there probably exists a seasonal separation during the squid fishery.

"Ghost Nets"

The high-seas squid fisheries have also raised concerns about drift nets that are lost or discarded at sea. This is primarily due to the nature and large quantities of fishing gear deployed in the drift net fisheries, the fact that the nets are not anchored, the often difficult sea conditions encountered in the North Pacific, and the heavy commercial vessel traffic which presumably severs many nets. The main concern appears to be that any lost or discarded gear may continue to "ghost fish" for long periods, possibly capturing and killing significant numbers of salmon, sea mammals, and sea birds, before finally sinking to the ocean bottom or washing ashore. Recent D.F.O. observations indicate that substantial quantities of high-seas drift nets have washed ashore along the west coast of British Columbia. However, most nets recovered so far were found on beaches, and were torn and tangled, so it is not clear to what extent lost and discarded nets pose a threac to Canadian salmon.

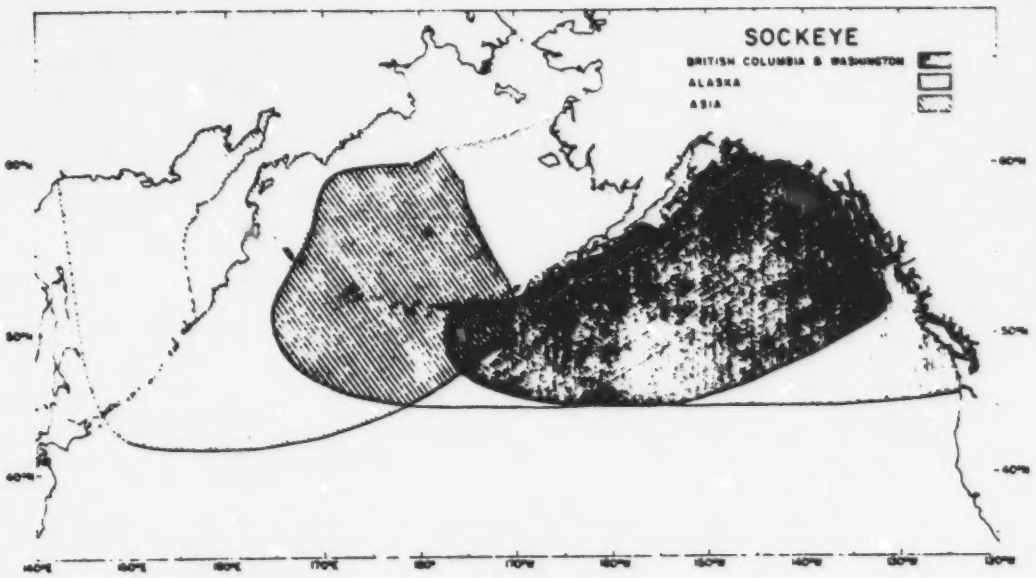
Sockeye Salmon

Due to the time constraints of this workshop, and the variety of life cycles exhibited by the various species of Pacific salmon, is probably best to limit discussion to one species as much as possible. Sockeye salmon are a reasonable choice because this species is usually the most important commercially, and is probably the best known.

British Columbia sockeye typically have a four-year life cycle, spending the first 1+ years in fresh water, and the next 2+ years in the ocean. They return to spawn and then die in fresh water as four-year olds. A brief summary of other pertinent biological information for sockeye is available (Ricker 1966). Most B.C. sockeye enter the ocean during the spring of their second year, at a size of 60-100 mm fork length. Existing data indicate that they remain close to shore, but migrate rapidly northward along the coast of British Columbia, Alaska, and the Aleutian Islands during their first ocean year. Juvenile sockeye apparently remain in, and disperse throughout, the Gulf of Alaska over the next two years, migrating southwest each winter and northeast each summer (French et al. 1976; Hart and Dell 1986). Fishing surveys and tagging studies indicate that B.C. sockeye are distributed over a vast area in the North Pacific ocean, and that there is considerable overlap in the distributions of sockeye from Canada, the U.S., and Asia (figure 3).

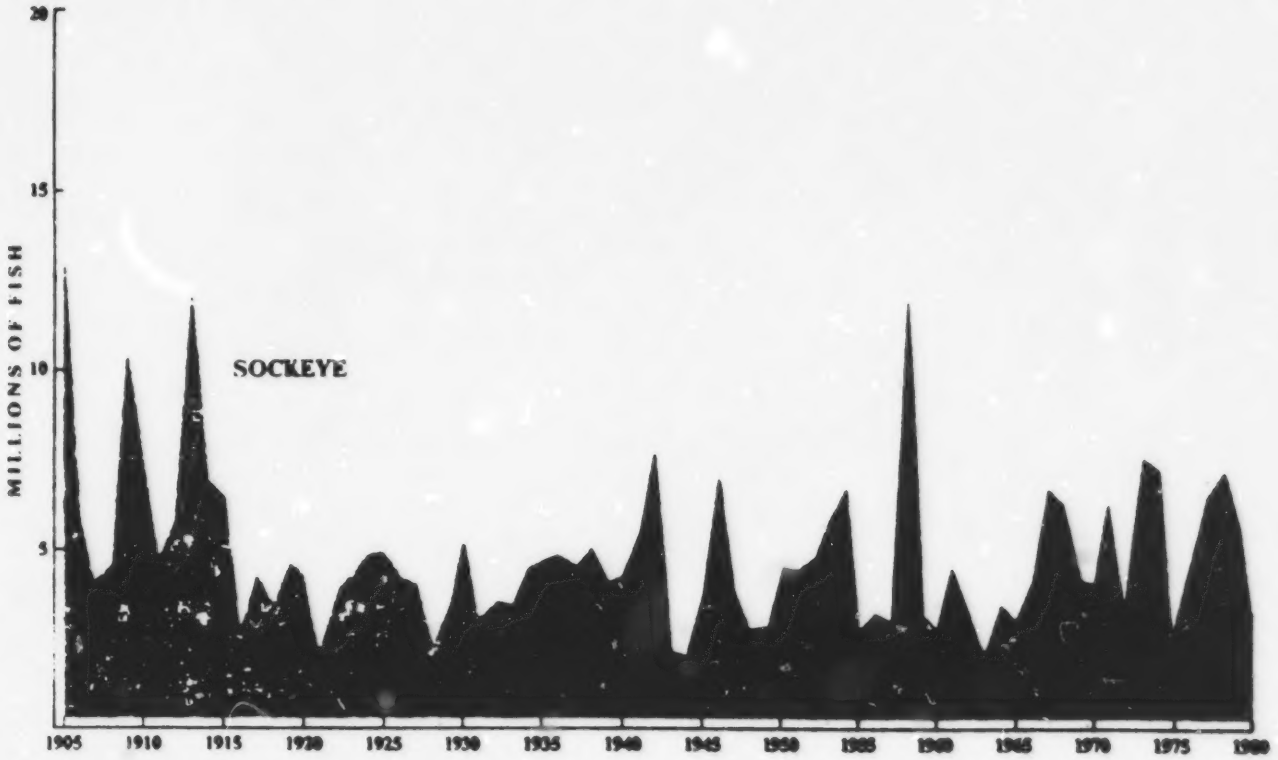
The productivity of sockeye salmon has varied considerably since commercial exploitation began in B.C. at the beginning of this century (figure 4). This illustrates the enormous and largely unpredictable interannual variations that are common among all species of Pacific salmon. In general, landings of sockeye historically appear to have been substantially higher than current levels. The major declines in 1913-14 resulted largely from devastation of the important Fraser River stocks by the obstruction of the river at Hells Gate Canyon. The current popular opinion in D.F.O. is that heavy fishing pressure thereafter has permitted only a modest recovery.

FIGURE 3



Ocean distribution of sockeye salmon from North America and Asia.

FIGURE 4



Commercial landings of Canadian sockeye salmon since 1905

Fisheries Oceanography

A summary of the general oceanography of the North Pacific Ocean is available (Shumacher and Wilson 1985). In general, it is clear that the ocean distributions of salmon and many other fish species and their prey are largely determined by, and can be substantially modified by, variations in the properties and movements of water in the North Pacific. All species have specific tolerances for temperature, salinity, oxygen, etc., which limit their distribution. For example, the minimal overlap in the distribution of flying squid and salmon mentioned earlier appears to be due primarily to different temperature preferences or tolerances. Flying squid typically avoid water with temperatures less than 12-15 degrees C, and salmon generally avoid water with temperatures greater than about 10 degrees C. The distribution of salmon includes the Pacific Subarctic Region, with each species apparently distributed according to its own temperature preferences, and migrating north and south in response to seasonal changes in water temperature. In general, water temperature has not been found to be a strong or consistent determinant of salmon distributions in the ocean, although it clearly does influence both ocean distributions and migrations. Tagging and experimental work have illustrated that during the coastal migration juvenile salmon travel about 20 km per day, while adult salmon returning from the open ocean to spawn can travel up to 50 km per day, and can swim steadily at speeds of at least 2.2 km per hour for more than a hundred hours. The effects of ocean currents on salmon is uncertain. Ocean currents probably influence the migration routes and timing of both juvenile and adult. There has also been some speculation that ocean currents may directly affect the survival of salmon during coastal migrations. Throughout their ocean life salmon typically remain near the sea surface, with most being concentrated in the top 20 meters and very few found below about 50 meters. Salmon can tolerant, and appear indifferent to, a wide range of salinity. French et al. 1976 concluded that there was little relation between high-seas distribution of sockeye salmon and surface salinity. The diets of salmon on the high-seas typically include such things as plankton (euphausiids, copepods, etc.), squid, and small fish. The effect of variations in food concentrations or timing is not well understood, although there is some evidence of density dependent growth and mortality during the high-seas period for some stocks (Peterman 1978, 1984).

References

French, R., H. Bilton, M. Osaka, and A. Hartt. 1976. Distribution and origin of sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) in offshore waters of the North Pacific Ocean. Int. North Pacific Fish. Comm. Bull. 34: 133 p.

Ricker, W.E. 1966. Salmon of the North Pacific Ocean- Part III: A review of the life history of North Pacific Salmon. 4. Sockeye salmon in British Columbia. p. 59-70. I.N.P.F.C. Bull. No. 18

Hartt, A.C. and M.B. Dell. 1986. Early oceanic migrations and growth of juvenile Pacific salmon and steelhead trout. I.N.P.F.C. Bulletin No. 46. 105 pp.

Peterman, R.M. 1978. Testing for density dependant marine survival in Pacific salmonids. J. Fish. Res. Board. Can. 35:1434-1450.

Peterman, R.M. 1984. Effects of Gulf of Alaska Sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) abundance on survival, body size, growth rate, and age at maturity of British Columbia and Bristol Bay, Alaska sockeye populations. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1302: 87 pp.

Shumacher, J.D., and J.G. Wilson. 1986. On the atmospheric and oceanic environment of the Gulf of Alaska. p 135-178. In: A Workshop on Comparative Biology, Assessment, and Management of Gadoids from the North Pacific and Atlantic Oceans. Seattle, Washington. 24-28 June 1985. Proceedings: Session I: Physical and Biological Environment.

Canadian Technical Report of

Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 1626

September 1988

Report from the National Workshop on Recruitment Northwest Atlantic Fisheries Center St. John's, Newfoundland February 23-25, 1988

Edited by

M. Sinclair, J.T. Anderson, M. Chadwick
J. Gagné, W.D. McKone, J.C. Rice and D. Ware

Fisheries Research Branch
Biological Sciences Directorate
Department of Fisheries and Oceans
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0E6

©Minister of Supply and Services Canada 1988

Cat. No. Fs 97-6/1626E ISSN 0706-6457

DFO/4160

Correct citation for this publication:

Sinclair, M., J.T. Anderson, M. Chadwick, J. Gagné, W.D. McKone, J.C. Rice, and D. Ware. 1988. Report from the National Workshop on Recruitment. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1626: 261 p.

CONTENTS

A. Acknowledgements iii
B. Abstract iv

I INTRODUCTION (M. Sinclair) 1

II WELCOME AND INTRODUCTION TO WORKSHOP (M.C. Mercer)..... 2

III OPENING REMARKS (L.S. Parsons) 4

IV HISTORICAL SKETCH ON RECRUITMENT RESEARCH (M.M. Sinclair) 8

V REVIEWS OF DEPARTMENT OF FISHERIES AND OCEANS PROGRAMS ON RECRUITMENT

A. Oceanic Factors Affecting the Distribution and Recruitment of West Coast Fisheries (R.E. Thomson and D.M. Ware) 31

B. A Review of Recruitment Related Studies and Relevant Physical Oceanography Programs Recently Undertaken by the Department of Fisheries and Oceans in the Newfoundland and Scotia-Fundy Region (K.T. Frank) 66

C. Recruitment Research in the Gulf of St. Lawrence (J. Gagné and D. Lefaivre) 116

D. Recruitment Studies - Central and Arctic Region (J. Craig) ... 142

VI STATISTICAL APPROACHES TO RECRUITMENT FORECASTING

A. Quantitative Methods in Recruitment (J.C. Rice) 148

B. An Overview of Alternative Methods for Forecasting Recruitment (D.J. Noakes) 165

VII WORK TEAM ACTIVITIES

A. Work Team Concept (M. Sinclair) 194

B. List of Team Members 195

C. Lobster - Questions Posed and Reports by Work Team Chairmen .. 196

D. Sockeye Salmon - Questions Posed and Reports by Work Team Chairmen 204

E. Northern Cod - Questions Posed and Reports by Work Team Chairmen 211

VIII COMMENTS BY INVITED EXPERTS 218

IX GENERALIZATIONS STATED BY STEERING GROUP 226

X RECOMMENDATIONS OF STEERING GROUP 228

XI EXECUTIVE SUMMARY 230

APPENDIX I List of Participants and Observers 234

APPENDIX II Background Information on the Lobster Question (C. Hudon) 236

APPENDIX III Background Information on the Sockeye Salmon Question (B. Hargraeves) 245

APPENDIX IV Background Information on the Northern Cod Question (J. Rice) 255

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

On behalf of the Steering Group (editors), I would like to thank all of the participants for their active participation. It was this participation that made the workshop intellectually stimulating and productive. The contribution of the invited "outside" experts was most beneficial. The Newfoundland hospitality and warmth ensured a most congenial working environment. I would also like to thank D. Burchat for her efforts in typing and collating the document for publication.

ABSTRACT

A National Recruitment Workshop was held by the Science sector of the Department of Fisheries and Oceans (DFO) in response to the request of the Assistant Deputy Minister of Science, Mr. L.S. Parsons. The aim of the workshop was to contribute to the development of a Departmental plan for future research on recruitment. During the first day, overviews of Departmental research of relevance to the recruitment problem were presented with the participation of senior management. During the second day the participants were divided into six multi-disciplinary work teams to address one of three specific recruitment problems. The aim of the work teams concept was to generate increased interaction between scientists of different disciplines. The workshop ended with a general discussion led by comments from each of the non-Departmental invited experts. The Steering Committee (editors) subsequently met and drafted this final report which includes a list of generalizations and recommendations for senior management consideration.

RÉSUMÉ

À la demande du Sous-ministre adjoint (SMA) des Sciences, M. L.S. Parsons, un atelier national sur le recrutement a été tenu par le secteur des Sciences du Ministère des Pêches et des Océans (MPO). Cet atelier avait pour objectif de contribuer à l'élaboration d'un plan ministériel pour la recherche sur le recrutment qui sera réalisée à l'avenir. Des exposés sur la recherche connexe au recrutement effectuée au Ministère ont été présentés au cours de la première journée avec la participation de la haute direction. Au cours de la deuxième journée, les participants se sont répartis en six groupes de travail multidisciplinaires pour traiter de l'un des trois problèmes particuliers au recrutement. Les groupes ont été formé afin d'accroître les interactions entre les scientifiques des diverses disciplines. L'atelier s'est terminé par une discussion générale animée par les commentaires de chacun des experts invités de l'extérieur du ministère. Le comité directeur (rédacteurs) s'est ensuite réuni et a rédigé le présent rapport difinitif qui comporte une liste des généralisations et des recommendations soumises à la haute direction pour examen.

I. INTRODUCTION

by

M. Sinclair
Director, Biological Sciences
Scotia-Fundy Region

The National Recruitment Workshop was held in response to the request of the ADM Science, Mr. L.S. Parsons. The principle aim of the workshop has been to contribute to the development of a Departmental plan for future research on recruitment. A Steering Group, with regional representation, was formed to organize the workshop. The members were: J.T. Anderson and J.C. Rice of the Newfoundland Region, M. Sinclair of the Scotia-Fundy Region, M. Chadwick of the Gulf Region, J.A. Gagné of the Québec Region, G.B. Ayles and W.D. McKone from Headquarters, and D. Ware from the Pacific Region. The Workshop itself was chaired by M. Sinclair, whilst the Steering Group was chaired by G.B. Ayles.

The first meeting of the Steering Group was held in Toronto in April 1987. At that time, the basic structure of the workshop was defined and requests for written contributions were initiated. A second meeting, to finalize the organizational aspects of the workshop, was held in Halifax in November 1987. Particular emphasis was directed towards ensuring representation of a broad range of disciplines - physical and biological oceanographers, fisheries biologists, and modellers.

The workshop took place at the Battery Hotel in St. John's on February 23 and 24, 1988. During the first day, overviews of departmental research of relevance to the recruitment problem were presented with the participation of senior management. During the morning of the second day, the participants were divided into six multi-disciplinary workteams (9 scientists per team). The teams were asked to address one of three specific recruitment problems. The background documentation (see attached Appendices) for the particular problem had been sent out to each participant several weeks prior to the workshop. Two workteams addressed each problem. One of the workteams comprised members with specific expertise for the assigned problem, and thus could be called the "expert team". Members of the second team lacked detailed knowledge of their particular problem. The aim of the workteam concept was to generate increased interaction between scientists of different disciplines rather than to produce specific recommendations for research. During the afternoon of the second day the chairmen of the workteams presented the results of their deliberations in a plenary session held at the Northwest Atlantic Fisheries Centre. The workshop ended with a general discussion led by comments from each of the non-departmental invited experts. On February 25, the Steering Group met to draft a list of generalizations and recommendations.

II WELCOME AND INTRODUCTION TO WORKSHOP

by

M. C. Mercer
Regional Director, Science
Newfoundland Region

I am pleased to welcome everyone to the second in what is planned to be a continuing series of national workshops on issues of importance to science in the Department of Fisheries and Oceans and by extension to the wider scientific community.

The workshops are intended to give strategic direction to the Department's science efforts, and thus far apparently that intent has been interpreted quite literally. In the first case the direction was west, in this case, it is east.

The subject of this workshop is recruitment. Seven decades ago early prominent fisheries researchers suggested that the recruitment problem was probably the most important one in fisheries. After seven decades we certainly know a great deal more about recruitment, but one still has little trouble finding claims that recruitment is still the most important problem area in fisheries science.

The study of recruitment certainly is still at the core of fisheries science and is important to fisheries management. It has the additional virtue of being fascinating in its own right. Few virtues, however, come without their companion vices - in the case of recruitment, research is not just fundamental and fascinating, but it can be a bottomless pit or "black hole" for resources available for science. Therefore, it is vitally important to plan and design carefully how and where to allocate resources. There is no problem finding something to study about recruitment - the difficulty is identifying problems that are both meaningful and tractable.

We are ready to attack meaningful, tractable problems in recruitment and are probably better prepared and structured than ever before for such efforts. Research on recruitment that is both excellent and useful requires a blend of expertise - in ecology, in oceanography, in statistics, modelling and experimental design. In our various regional laboratories, we have assembled the appropriate types of expertise. Nationally, the desirability of effectively blending physics, fish, statistics, and experimental design has been given renewed impetus. Research programs which will get their start in this workshop, at least as concepts, will serve the Department in two reciprocal ways. A successful workshop, producing effective approaches to blending the various disciplines, will pay back the Department first in the progress made in investigating some of the vitally important problems in recruitment to our aquatic resources, and in the better management which can follow from our enhanced knowledge. But the workshop will pay dividends in a second way as well, integrating people and approaches in individual laboratories, and among laboratories. It is clear that multidisciplinary approaches can broaden the types, and enhance the quality, of a spectrum of research efforts in our science programs that reach far beyond the problems of recruitment.

A cynic might even argue that this will be the more important dividend, as recruitment studies mounted by our colleagues to the south, and in the North Sea will be at scales we in Canada are unlikely to duplicate in the near future. There is a key difference though, because in some areas there is little more to the management of fish stocks than the managing of new recruits. For better or worse (and only someone terribly myopicly interested in recruitment would think it was for the worse), science in Canada still must allocate lots of resources to the assessment and management of past recruits, not just future ones.

The fact that we can study recruitment to improve our knowledge of and ability to manage our aquatic resources, rather than as a last gasp response to collapse and crisis is a laurel for the Department, but not one we should rest on. Rather it is one we should build on. We have the expertise available to do excellent work in the study of recruitment. We have the stocks and much of the knowledge base to implement studies of excellence. Also, with this workshop we have the opportunity to initiate what can become major strides in our understanding of what recruitment processes are and how they should be incorporated in management of our resources. I wish you well in your tasks, and hope the next 2 days are stimulating, fruitful, and enjoyable.

III OPENING REMARKS

by

L.S. Parsons
Assistant Deputy Minister, Science

I am delighted to be here with you today to open this Recruitment Workshop. This occasion marks the launching of the first Biological Sciences Workshop in DFO and follows the very successful Climate Workshop held last spring in Victoria. As you may be aware, there will be a Hydroacoustic Workshop at BIO next week. It is my intention to hold these workshops across the country. I hope they will foster a spirit of scientific cooperation, and contribute to the flow of ideas and information within the newly-integrated Science Sector of DFO. Our challenge is to bring better focus to our Science program by providing clear objectives and by developing mechanisms to better coordinate programs among regions and disciplines.

This question of better coordination among regions and disciplines leads me to stress the self-evident truth that recruitment processes and climatic conditions are interrelated. Understanding of the factors determining year-class variability can only be brought about through an inter-disciplinary approach encompassing all components of the DFO Science Sector and through international collaboration.

The annual variability of year-classes has been a preoccupation of fisheries scientists for about one hundred years. Its manifestation, as catch variability, has been a concern of the fishing industry for a very long time. The flyleaf of a recent book on the Dynamics of Marine Fish Populations by Dr. Brian Rothschild begins with the following statement: "Marine fish populations undergo dramatic fluctuations in abundance over time, a phenomenon that has mystified scientists and laypeople for centuries. These fluctuations obviously have considerable economic and social impact and it is important to understand why they occur". That statement explains why the subject of this workshop was chosen from among a number of important issues that face fisheries science today.

The existence of such year-class variability was vividly demonstrated by one of the first fisheries scientists in the field. I refer to the work of Hjort (1914) who painstakingly followed the large 1904 year-class of a Norwegian herring population as it passed through the fishery.

We have come a long way since Hjort's day but in many ways we can still see only "the tip of the iceberg" when it comes to recruitment. Writing in 1964, David Cushing stated: "The problem of the relationship between parent stock and subsequent recruitment is the hardest one in fisheries biology to solve. Two sorts of data are lacking: (1) long-time series of estimates of stock and recruitment; and (2) a range of measures of larval and juvenile mortality at sea. The proper description of the mechanism will go straight to the root of the dramatic fluctuations in stocks in the great fisheries".

The significance of recruitment variability was first brought home personally to me when I was conducting research on one of the major herring populations of the northwest Atlantic - the southern Gulf-southwest Newfoundland stock. Many of you here today know it only as the southern Gulf stock because it no longer migrates to southwest Newfoundland. But due to two enormous year-classes of the late 1950's, that stock supported a major fishery in the fjords of southwest Newfoundland as well as in the Southern Gulf in the late 1960's-early 1970's. No year-classes of that size have occurred subsequently.

This one example of year-class variability in herring was but part of a broader phenomenon in pelagic fish stocks. This was borne out by the Pelagic Fish Symposium in Aberdeen in 1978. As a participant in that Symposium, I was struck by the extreme variability of recruitment in pelagic fish stocks and their apparent vulnerability to stock collapse.

In the history of fisheries research there have been many conflicts between proposed effects due to fishing and those due to natural causes (recruitment failure due to fishing or to natural causes). Despite this, the Aberdeen Symposium arrived at certain conclusions. I will quote a couple of these:

"In all (of the cases) heavily depleted stocks the events preceding the collapse show similar features. In most cases, the rate of decline has been augmented, in the final states, by recruitment failure."

"In some instances environmental changes may have played a part in the decline but generally their influence would appear to have been minor compared with the effects of the fisheries."

"In all cases considered during the Symposium there is strong positive, or presumptive, evidence that the stock collapse was, in the final analysis, due to reduced recruitment, generated by a decline in spawning stock."

In other species and other stocks large scale changes in abundance have been attributed to the influence of ocean climate factors.

From a management point of view, the long-term average recruitment is important, but so is the variation from the average. Fluctuations in year-classes often translate into 'feast or famine' situations for the fishing industry and for fishermen who, in many cases, are dependent on the resource as their sole source of income. Any improved predictive capability in estimating year-class size would soften the impact of this variability. Managers, along with the industry, would like to be able to plan for large changes, whether positive or negative, for the benefit of all participants in the fishery.

Over the past eight decades there has been slow progress in unravelling the underlying processes that govern recruitment. More recently, in the last 10-15 years, a great deal of effort has been spent internationally on trying to understand recruitment problems.

In the eastern Atlantic, ICES has been actively involved in pursuing solutions to problems posed by the variabilitiy in recruitment. More recently, the International Recruitment Program (IREP) has been formed so that we may look

at recruitment over a broader geographic area. A number of ambitious experiments on recruitment have been devised. Our understanding of the underlying mechanisms of stock definition and reproductive biology has progressed. However, our understanding of the processes of survival, from the larval stage to recruitment to the adult population, is still far from complete. Warren Wooster, in his introduction to a recent ICES Mini-Symposium on Recruitment summarized the current situation when he stated: "Events between spawning and eventual attainment of maturity in the next generation are still the most important and least understood in the whole field of fish population dynamics".

In 1983, writing about the outlook for fisheries research over the next ten years, David Cushing predicted that fisheries science would develop in three ways: (1) in polishing procedures associated with cohort analysis; (2) in small but experimental multispecies models; and (3) in continuing the slow progress toward solution of the stock and recruitment problem. He argued that progress would remain slow because the integration of the growth and mortality of larval and juvenile fishes demands expensive work at sea or in artificial enclosures.

More recently, Brian Rothschild has identified the most important constraints as being the fact that only a few components of the entire problem have been studied and that continuing research seems to focus ever more intensively on those few components. Increases in research effort have not resulted in commensurate increases in knowledge. He goes on to state: "What we need to do is to specify or identify the fish's environment. The problem of predicting fish-population variability does not at present rest on our understanding of the behaviour and physiology of any particular group of fish. Rather, it rests on our ability to identify, define and measure the fish's ambient environment".

Brian has reviewed the extensive literature and concluded: "The specific causes of fluctuations in fish-population abundance are supported by a long list of speculations and a short list of facts. The facts are: (1) the abundance of individual stocks has fluctuated for centuries; (2) evident human interaction with most marine stocks is relatively recent; and (3) fish stocks have continued to fluctuate in abundance in the presence of increased toxic-chemical loading, eutrophication, habitat modification and fishing".

He summarizes the numerous hypotheses in six categories:

1) Intraspecific

2) Fishing

3) Natural Environmental

4) Anthropogenic Environmental

5) Interspecific

6) Complexity

He then goes on to provocatively state: "The solution will not be advanced by obtaining more of the same data or replicating research approaches; rather it will be derived from a reformulation of the problem. This should include a systematic search for those parts of the problem that are not well identified and a design of experiments that can illuminate these critical areas".

It is clear that we are only on the threshold of understanding the factors determining recruitment variability. This is an immense scientific challenge. It requires review, dialogue, debate and cooperation. This cooperation must occur among disciplines as well as among individual scientists. Cooperation and collaboration are required both at the national and the international levels. Only through such collaboration can progress be made.

Which brings us back to the reason for this workshop. My expectations from this workshop centre around the development of a Departmental plan for future research on recruitment. In collaboration with colleagues internationally, we must seek a clearer understanding of the underlying processes that influence recruitment and hopefully an improvement in our predictive capability in the longer-term. This requires a commitment to long-term multidisciplinary targetted basic research on this important subject, a commitment that we in DFO are prepared to make. In order to pursue this objective, long-term priorities for the next 5-10 years for DFO research must be developed, recognizing that these will evolve over time. In doing so, we must of course recognize that scientific discovery cannot be premeditated. But it can be facilitated by formulating and debating hypotheses, by sharing experience and insight and by designing future research to shed light on old problems.

Carl Sagan has described science as "a way of thinking much more than it is a body of knowledge". Its goal is to find out how the world works, to seek what regularities there may be, to penetrate to the connection of things. Science is based on a willingness to challenge old dogma and requires the courage to question the conventional wisdom.

I hope that during this workshop you will question the conventional widom on recruitment and point the way to the research necessary for a better understanding of the recruitment process.

Best wishes for a successful workshop.

IV HISTORICAL SKETCH ON RECRUITMENT RESEARCH

by

M. Sinclair
Director, Biological Sciences
Scotia-Fundy Region

The aim of this introductory paper to the National Recruitment Workshop is to introduce the concepts generally shared by those researchers concerned with the so-called recruitment problem in marine fisheries research. This review of concepts is thought to be useful because many participants at the workshop, in particular the biological and physical oceanographers, may not be familiar with the literature and associated specialized vocabulary. A historical approach is taken, and there is some bias towards events in the North Atlantic.

Empirical Observations of 19th Century

Fluctuations in landings (of herring and cod in particular) in northern Europe was a problem of considerable economic and social concern during the 19th century. The empirical observations were straightforward and well documented. The fisheries at that time were limited to coastal waters close to the fishing communities. The landings at particular coastal fishing areas fluctuated on a range of time scales (seasonal, interannual and decadal). It was also noted that there was marked variability in the quality of the fish landed (i.e. relative amount of cod liver oil and the size composition). Thirdly, those people closely associated with the marketing of fish noted persistent slight differences in morphology between fish of the same species coming from different fishing locations. The morphological patterns were not randomly distributed. The most dramatic observation, because of the economic implications, was the decadal fluctuations in the winter herring fishery off Bohuslän, western Sweden. This fishery varied in an extreme fashion, from excess capacity for several years to a total lack of fish in subsequent years.

This overall set of empirical observations was paradoxical. There was an underlying predictable pattern in both the geographic location at which lucrative fishing occurred, and the seasonal timing during which the fish arrived. The timing of the fisheries varied between geographic locations. This was particularly true for the coastal herring fisheries. Superimposed on this orderly natural phenomena of fish migration was considerable variability in local abundance. The fishing communities, given the strict limits to the distance the boats could travel, established themselves in relation to the reproducible patterns in fish distributions in coastal areas. The interannual variability, however, generated feast and famine cycles for the single industry communities.

This set of observations generated the "migration" hypothesis to account for the fluctuations in landings at all time and space scales. The title indicates the essence of the hypothesis which inferred an annual migration of fish from the Arctic Ocean to the coastal waters of northern Europe and North America. During the spring, the fish species of commercial interest were interpreted to begin their migration to diverse spawning locations in coastal

waters along both sides of the North Atlantic. A return migration to the Arctic was hypothesized during the autumn. The difference in the timing of the fisheries between geographic areas was considered to be a function of the migration routes. The interannual and decadal fluctuations were thus interpreted to be a function of variability in the migration pattern of a single mass of fish of a particular species. Abundance levels of the exploited species were thought to be relatively constant. The fluctuations in landings at particular coastal fishing locations were, under the migration hypothesis, the result of an edge effect (i.e. variability in the availability along the perimeter of a constant abundance level of pan-oceanic species). The hypothesis did not, however, account for the persistent intra-specific differences in morphological patterns that were observed between geographic locations. Even though by the end of the 19th century this hypothesis had been discredited by many naturalists, the underlying concept that interannual fluctuations in landings at particular geographic locations was a function of changes in migration patterns of the species in question, rather than changes in overall abundance of the species, was still generally accepted. The title of Committee A of the International Council for the Exploration of the Sea (ICES), one of only three standing committees defined in 1902, as the Migration Committee is evidence of the prevalence of this concept at that time. Committee A, the Migration Committee, was specifically established to address the problem of interannual fluctuations in landings. A paradigm shift in the interpretation of fluctuations in landings occurred subsequent to the formation of ICES.

The Paradigm Shift

Several key studies on marine fish species in European coastal waters between 1898 and 1914 resulted in major increases in understanding of the causes of fluctuations in landings. These studies resulted in a paradigm shift.

First Heincke (1898), in an extensive monograph, summarized his detailed studies on life cycles and morphometrics of Atlantic herring. He had studied with his colleagues at Kiel, Germany, all aspects of the biology of herring which spawned respectively during the spring and fall in Kiel Bight. It was noted that the duration of the larval phase differed by several months between progeny of the two spawning groups. Also some larvae were retained in the Bight through the larval phase. He noted persistent differences in morphological and meristic characters between the spawning groups (Figure 1). The observations led him to conclude that the species herring was comprised of many component self-sustaining populations, each population having a precise and relatively limited geographical area of distribution. This was a radical conclusion at that time because the extant typological or essentialist species concept inferred that species were panmictic (i.e. comprised a single group throughout the area of distribution). Heincke extended his study by sampling many other spawning fisheries in the Baltic, North Sea and Norwegian coastal waters. He invented rudimentary multivariate statistics to aid in the analysis of the data. His conclusion that herring is comprised of many self-sustaining populations was accepted surprisingly quickly, given the strongly held views prior to its publication and the controversial nature of the new species concept that he introduced.

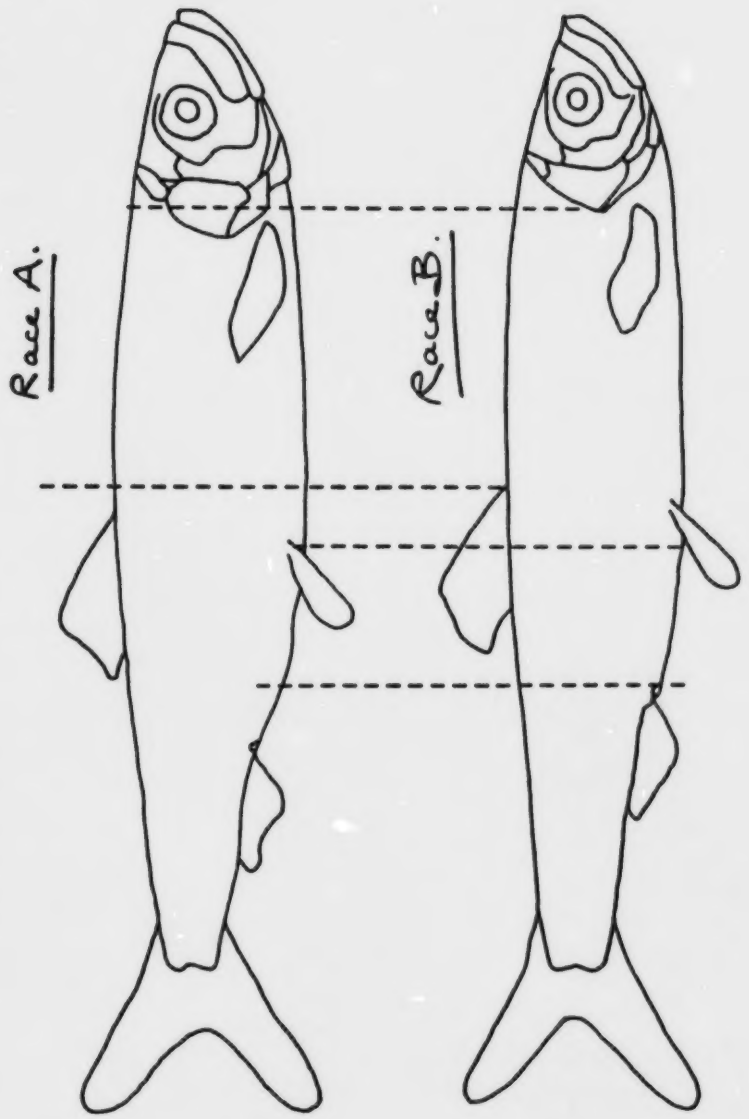
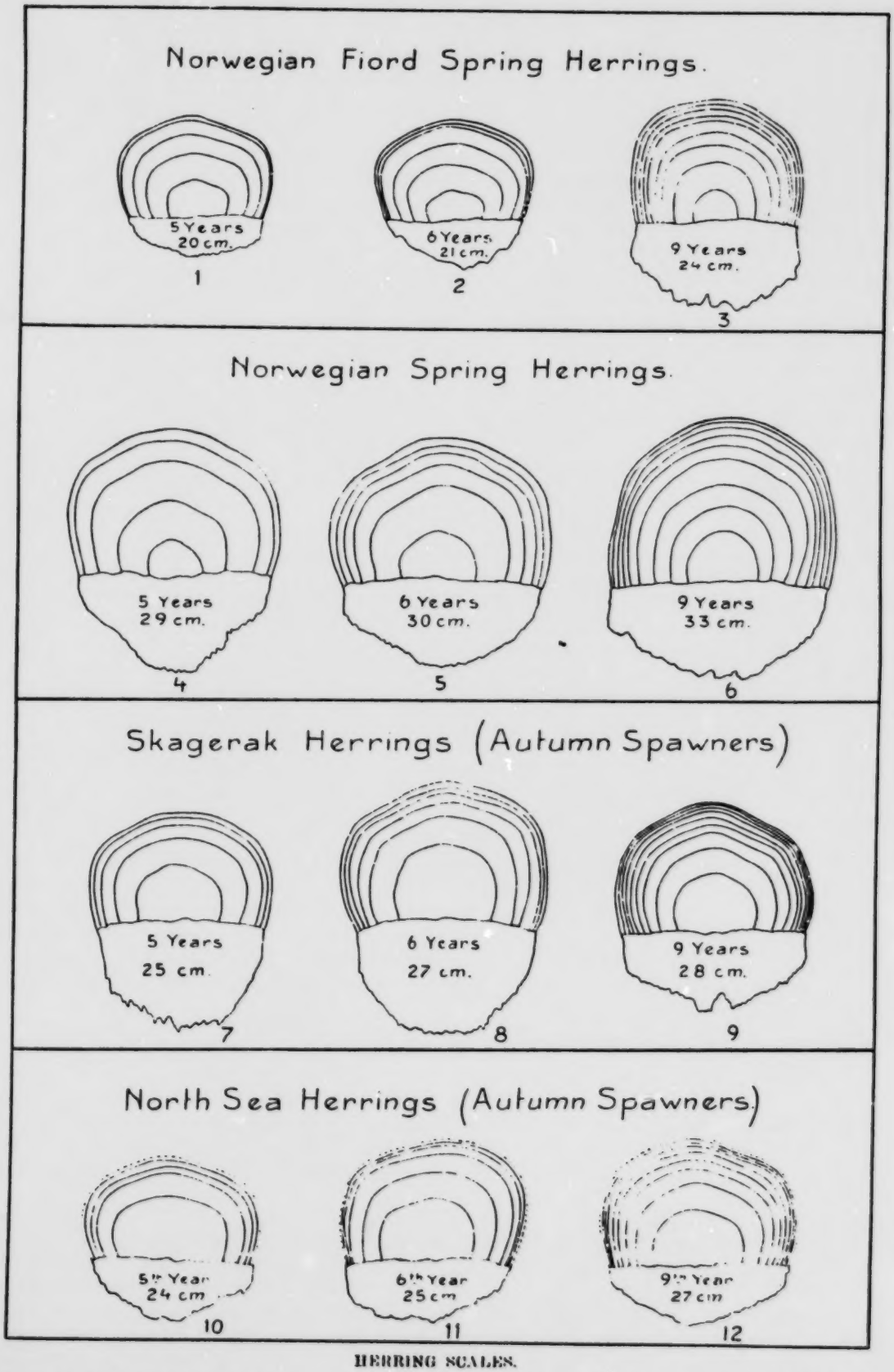

Race A.
Race B.
Outlines traced from Heincke's figures of two typical Kiel Herring, one belonging to this Race A, the other to this Race B.

Figure 1. Illustration of morphological differences between two populations of herring spawning in Kiel Bight at different seasons (from an application by Weldon for research funding to the Royal Society in 1894).

The implications on fisheries questions were just as dramatic as on natural history and taxonomy. If the "migration hypothesis" involving a relatively constant massive pan-oceanic aggregation of herring in the high seas migrating seasonally to coastal waters was incorrect, there were obvious implications on fisheries management. The new description of nature and its interpretation suggested the existence of local populations whose abundance levels could be influenced by local fishing activities. If correct, restrictions on fishing effort might be required to allow population persistence. Heincke's work also provided some explanatory power on the problem of interannual and decadal fluctuations in landings of herring. He sampled herring from the Bohuslän "overwintering" fishery (i.e. not a fishery on spawning fish) and compared their shape and meristic characters to various spawning populations in the North Sea and the Baltic. He concluded that the Bohuslän herring fishery exploited the overwintering distribution of a herring population that spawned in the North Sea off Germany. Also, using information on the physical oceanography of the area (Skagerrak and Kattegat) he argued that the overwintering distribution shifted as a function of ocean climate changes. Pettersson (1914) in his classic paper "climatic variations in historic and prehistoric time" argued that the water mass and circulation changes off Bohuslän were caused by tidal processes (18.6 year cycle). Thus the disruptive fluctuations in local abundance in herring in the winter off Bohuslän were interpreted to be due to changes in the overwintering distribution (thus changes in availability of the "German" herring to the Swedish fishery), rather than due to changes in population abundance. In contrast, interannual fluctuations in landings from spawning fisheries were interpreted to be due to changes in the absolute abundance of the population. Heincke did not, however, speculate on what might cause the fluctuations in population abundance. Heincke's (1898) paper fundamentally modified the interpretation of fluctuations in landings. There were two causes: changes in migration patterns of populations, and changes in absolute abundance of populations. Also the geographic scale of the fluctuations problem was changed, from the whole North Atlantic to restricted areas of coastal and shelf waters.

The second major contribution was made by Hjort (1914) based on his studies with colleagues on herring and cod in Norwegian waters. The development of new methods, and some good luck in the timing of his study, were critical to the conclusions that he was able to draw. While helping to introduce an insurance scheme for fishermen, he became aware of age composition statistics and concluded that if fish could be aged, similar statistics could be collected for exploited fish species (Hjort did not appear to have accepted Heincke's conclusions on herring populations during this pre-1914 period, and the "racial" approach of Heincke had not been generalized for other species such as cod). Hjort proposed a port-sampling scheme for the ICES area as a whole in 1907, but the recommendation was not accepted. Nevertheless, his approach was instituted in Norway, where he was the director of fisheries research. As a result, from 1907 onwards, the age composition of the landings of herring and cod were sampled for Norwegian coastal fisheries [the new methods required to permit this development were: (1) an ageing method using fish scales (Figure 2); and (2) development of sampling theory]. An additional methodological tool that was critical was tagging. This provided estimates on the geographic scale of migrations. The good luck was the particular oceanographic conditions of 1904. This year generated a massive year-class of herring in Norwegian waters which was three years old when the port-sampling program began in 1907. It was found



HERRING SCALES.

Figure 2. Herring scales from fish of different ages and populations in the northeast Atlantic (from Dahl 1907).

out, subsequently, to be about 30 times larger than the year-classes which bracketed those born in 1904. This strong signal was followed as the year-class progressed through the fishery year by year (Figure 3).

From the results of wide-ranging studies (including the port-sampling results, tagging experiments, egg and larval distributional surveys, timing of phytoplankton blooms and physical oceanographic studies on the circulation of the Norwegian current), Hjort (1914) arrived at exciting conclusions on the causes of interannual fluctuations in landings. They may sound somewhat flat today because his conclusions form the starting point of much of our ongoing research. At the time, the conclusions of his paper generated enormous excitement and considerable explanatory power. The review by Allen (1914) in Nature captures this excitement:

> "There can be little doubt that this report by Dr. Hjort will mark an epoch in the history of scientific fishery investigation. If the arguments upon which its conclusions are based successfully withstand the test of criticism, there has been established a method of predicting the probable future course from year-to-year of some of our most important fisheries, which should be of utmost value both to those engaged practically in the fishing industry and to those responsible for fishery administration" (emphasis added).

Hjort demonstrated convincingly that the fluctuations in landings, both in quantity and quality in the herring and cod in Norwegian fisheries, were a function of extreme variability in year-class sizes (the population concept was not well articulated by Hjort until the 1920's). Thus the problem of fluctuations in landings at particular fishing locations was decomposed into two components (availability changes and year-class size variability).

To sum up, the major contribution of Heincke and Hjort (and thus the paradigm shift itself) was the redefinition of the problem of fluctuations in landings. Age-structured populations persisting on limited geographic scales became the focus of study to resolve the problem, rather than studies of pan-oceanic migration of typological or essentialist species. The paradigm shift involved a change in the unit of study to the geographic population, rather than the species. This shift in thinking by fisheries biologists predated the changes in taxonomy and evolutionary biology by a couple of decades. The migration hypothesis inferred constant abundance levels of pan-oceanic typological species. The new interpretation inferred highly variable abundance levels of the component populations of so-called "biological species". The interpretation of Hjort (i.e. fluctuations in landings due to year-class variability) explained the changes in quality of the landings (i.e. changes in size composition and percent cod liver oil), as well as the quantity.

As well as fundamentally redefining the nature of the "fluctuations" problem, Hjort proposed two hypotheses to account for recruitment variability. During his field studies on cod spawning and subsequent egg and larval distributions in the Lofoten area, Hjort noticed that the events occurred close to the seasonal timing of the spring phytoplankton bloom, the precise timing of which varied between years. From studies on the Norwegian current, he had also estimated with Helland-Hansen and Nansen that there was interannual variability

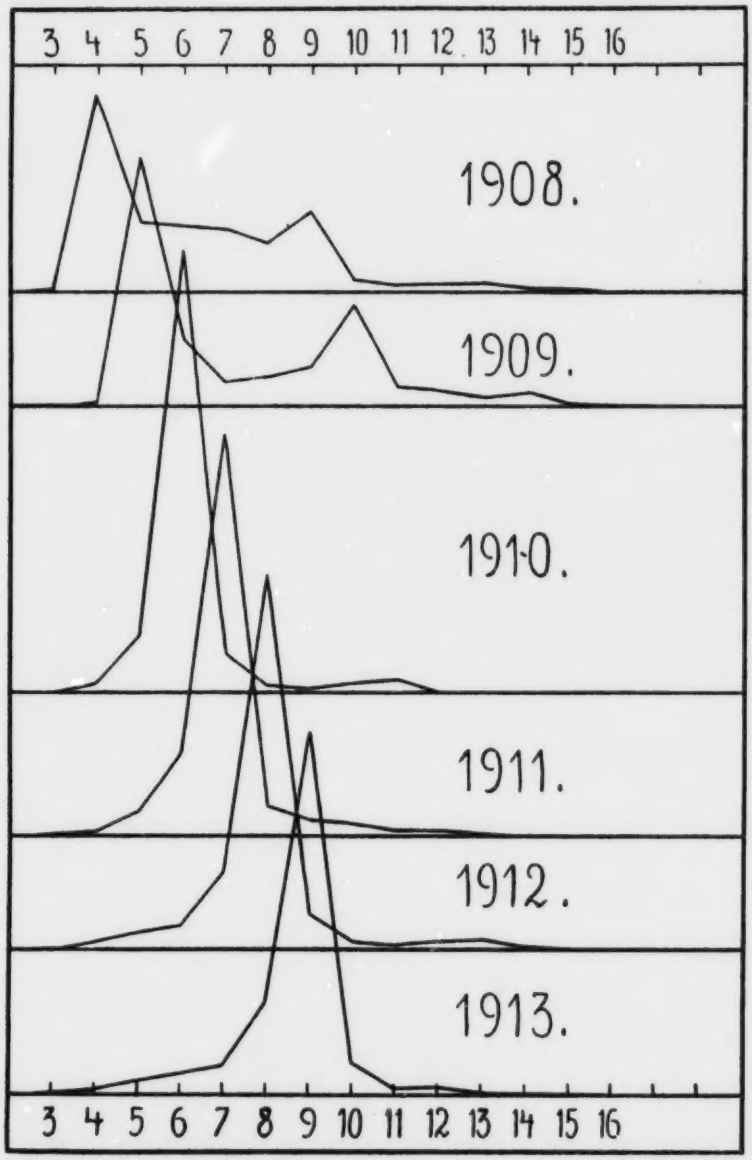


Figure 3. Age composition of the landings of herring caught off Norway from 1908 to 1913 (from Hjort 1914).

in advection. These observations in part led to his two hypotheses that have collectively been linked with the critical period concept. The landings data (such as those shown in Figure 3) indicated that relative year-class sizes were defined prior to recruitment of each year-class to the fishery. Thus the first few years were defined as the "critical period". Hypothesis 1 states that variability in year-class size is a result of between year shifts in the precise timing of spawning and of the phytoplankton bloom (which initiates the seasonal zooplankton production cycle upon which the fish larvae feed). From laboratory culture studies on fish eggs and larvae, it had been observed that first feeding during the few days following final resorption of the yolk sac were critical to larval survival. In the subsequent literature, it has frequently been assumed that the "critical period" defined by Hjort was these few days. A careful reading of the paper, however, indicates that he considered the early-life history stages as a whole (egg, larvae, post-larvae and early juvenile stages) to be the "critical period".

Hypothesis 2 was not very well articulated. In essence, Hjort argued that interannual differences of advection of eggs and larvae away from appropriate geographic areas for feeding and life cycle continuity generates subsequent recruitment variability to the fisheries. He recognized that multiple causes could be important in generating fluctuations in year-class sizes.

A Firming up of the Concepts (1914 to 1948)

After the rapid increases in understanding of the causes of fluctuations in landings between 1898 and 1914, the pace of discovery inevitably slowed. Between 1914 and 1948 (Hjort's death), there was, however, an increasingly better articulated description of the nature of the problem. Hjort's contribution of 1914, the discovery of year-class variability, was linked to that of Heincke (the discovery that species were comprised of geographically defined populations). The recruitment variability question was thus phrased in the context of population regulation. This took some time, and was based on the accumulation of empirical observations on the existence of populations for other fish species, as well as on the existence of year-class variability.

At the 1913 Statutory Meeting of ICES, during which Hjort presented an evening lecture on the major points of his 1914 classic paper, Gran (the phytoplankton ecologist) proposed a multidisciplinary international field test of Hjort's two hypotheses. It was on the books for initiation in 1914, but was stopped due to the outbreak of World War I, and the subsequent reduction of oceanographic research. The state-of-the-art in physical oceanography of continental shelves was probably not adequate at that time to have supported the test of this hypothesis. No field work was carried out on the two hypotheses during the 1914 to 1948 period. During this period there was, however, a substantial amount of study on the description of geographic population patterns for a variety of marine species. Not surprisingly, conceptual progress addressed this aspect of the recruitment variability problem.

A major contribution towards the population question was made by Schmidt in a series of 10 papers entitled "racial investigations" published

between 1917 and 1930. He compared population patterns amongst several species (Atlantic herring, Atlantic cod, the eelpout Zoarces viviparous, and the European eel). Several conclusions of his studies were conceptual breakthroughs. He showed conclusively that the numbers of populations of a species varies markedly, from Zoarces sp. (which has dozens of separate populations), to Atlantic cod (which has a moderate number), to European eel (which is a single population or panmictic). He also noted that the characteristic absolute abundance varied considerably between populations of the same species. Thirdly, from experimental studies, he demonstrated that there was a genetic component to the observed differences in shape and meristics between populations. The geographic extent of the distribution of a population, which was shown to vary both within and between species, defines the spatial scale at which the recruitment variability question must be addressed. Schmidt demonstrated that this scale varies between tens and thousands of kilometers.

An additional important contribution during the 1914 to 1948 period were the first statistical studies showing correlations between physical processes (freshwater runoff, wind, temperature, etc.) and indices of fluctuations in abundance of fish populations (for example, the contribution by Sund 1924).

Two Special Meetings were sponsored by ICES in 1928 and 1929 to review progress on, respectively, the geographical patterns in marine fish populations and on recruitment fluctuations within particular populations. Hjort (1930), in his introductory address to the second of these two Special Meetings in London (1929), clearly states the overall importance of the transition from the species to the population as the essential unit of study (as well as its key role in making progress on the recruitment problem). He states (page 5):

> "When we entered upon our international collaboration 30 years ago [i.e. 1899], the biological analysis of the organisms we caught in the sea was in the main confined to the systematic determination of the various species..... However, as the work advanced, the demand for a more refined biological analysis and morphological classification became urgent. It was realized that the terms of species were inadequate to give a clean and orderly grasp of the phenomena in the large field covered by the international cooperation, and that recourse had to be taken to the conception of races or tribes [i.e. populations] as the more natural and convenient morphological and biological units ..... it is a matter of the greatest importance for all our research and deliberations that the existence of these races and their geographical area of distribution have been revealed" (emphasis added).

Hjort (1930) goes on to state the dual aspect of the recruitment problem (year-class variability within geographically defined populations). In a summary of the first 40 years of ICES work (1902 to 1942), Hjort (1945) again indicates the gradual clarification of concepts that had occurred. In a section entitled "Races and Populations" (p. 14-15) he states:

> "In the majority of species, perhaps in all, groups are formed which, so to speak, divide up the distribution area

> of the species among themselves and which, irrespective of size-classes, live separate from each other. They are called races ... The German scientist, Heincke, raised these problems by his years of investigations into the natural history of herring ... Subsequent investigations have confirmed and augmented these observations, not only with regard to herring, but also as regards many other species ...
>
> Out of this view of the geographical limitation of the races to definite areas, there gradually arose the conceptions connected with the words 'population' and 'stock', which denote a group of individuals distinct from all others both geographically and biologically. Thus we speak, for instance, of a herring population and a cod population off the west and north coasts of Norway that are different from the cod and herring populations of the North Sea and the baltic." (emphasis added).

In summary, during the period 1914 to 1948, the problem of understanding fluctuations in landings of marine fisheries was articulated in terms of population regulation. In retrospect, one can see that this resulted from a linking of Hjort's discovery of year-class variability to Heincke's contribution on the existence of geographically-defined populations. The conceptual advances were firmly based on empirical observations from the North Atlantic. A more detailed historical analysis of fisheries research on the population concept is provided in Sinclair and Solemdal (1987).

The Recruitment Problem and Ecological Theory (1949-1975)

Developments within the field of ecology germane to population regulation were based largely on empirical observations on insects and birds. In general, estimates of temporal fluctuations in abundance were stated in terms of "population density" (numbers of individuals per unit area), rather than absolute abundance of geographically-defined populations in the sense defined above for fisheries studies. This is an important distinction. Theoretical developments concerning population regulation within ecology have not, in general, been based on empirical observations of geographic populations (see Kingsland 1985 for a historical analysis), but rather on density fluctuations at particular locations. Perhaps the most topical question in ecology during the 1950s and early 1960s was that of population regulation, in particular the relative importance of density-dependent and density-independent processes. The key contributions during this time period to the recruitment problem for marine fisheries were linked to this debate on population regulation in the broader field of ecology. Ricker (1954) and Beverton and Holt (1957) introduced mathematical formulations to describe stock/recruitment relationships. These relationships involved some biological feedback between adult abundance and year-class size. Such a relationship was (and still is by many ecologists) considered an essential requirement for stabilization of abundance levels. The fit of the empirical data on year-class sizes and spawning population abundance to the mathematical formulations was generally not sufficiently good to distinguish between the validity of different models based on the data itself. Also, the stock/recruitment relationships did not address the question of

control of absolute abundance levels or the variability. The contributions of Ricker and Beverton and Holt did, however, formally state the recruitment problem in terms of population regulation. It appears that the different uses of the term population in respectively ecology and fisheries biology were not always clearly recognized (i.e. the term frequently refers to density differences in local abundance in ecology, whereas it refers to a geographic phenomena involving absolute numbers in fisheries biology).

The other key contributions on the recuitment question during this time period (1949-1975) were the syntheses by R. Harden Jones and D. Cushing of Lowestoft. Harden Jones (1972) in his classic book Fish Migration brought together much of the literature on the distribution of geographic populations and migration patterns at different life history stages. His migration triangle concept for population persistence, which involved larval drift from spawning locations to juvenile nursery areas via the surface layer residual currents, provided a geographical framework for the evaluation of recruitment variability. Events during the larval drift phase were considered to be critical to variability in year-class sizes. Cushing, in a series of papers, gradually developed his elegant match/mismatch theory which was widely read by the oceanographic community as a result of his 1975 book, Marine Ecology and Fisheries. The theory linked Hypothesis 1 of Hjort (1914) (i.e. the variability in timing of spawning and timing of blooming) with the "critical depth" concept of Sverdrup (1953). The critical depth concept itself linked the initiation of the spring bloom of phytoplankton to the seasonal development of thermal stratification. Between year differences in wind events at the time of spawning, and their effect on thermal stratification (and thus on initiation of the plankton production cycle), were packaged together in the attractively-phrased match/mismatch theory. The theory linked oceanographic processes to fisheries fluctuations in a most persuasive manner. Food-chain events during the early larval drift phase, an elaboration of Hjort's first hypothesis, became the focus of study for the recruitment problem. Cushing's food-chain articulation of the issue is perhaps still the leading hypothesis. The papers, and in particular the synthesis in his 1975 book, generated considerable excitement in the marine ecological community. The book, in addition, generated a wave of field studies on the first stages of the life cycle, around first feeding of larvae.

In parallel, particularly during the early period, a separate body of literature accumulated which involved the role of ocean climate (i.e. large-scale changes in physical oceanographic processes) on fluctuations in recruitment. Representative studies are Carruthers et al (1951a, b), Colton and Temple (1961) and Iles (1973). The study by Iles (1973) is particularly noteworthy in that he interpreted the year-class variability in the north Pacific and in western Canadian lakes in relation to large-scale ocean climate changes a decade prior to major increases in understanding of the El Nino/Southern Oscillation phenomena. This literature did not always specify the causal mechanisms generating recruitment variability (i.e., the steps between the physical changes observed and the year-class signal). Some papers, however, elaborated on Hjort's second hypothesis (i.e., variable losses of eggs and larvae from the appropriate distributional area for the population in question due to circulation differences between years). Evidence that the fisheries biologists during the 1950s and 1960s favoured Hjort's second hypothesis is provided in the annual reports of both ICNAF and ICES. In the 1961 Redbook of ICNAF, for example, it was stated (p. 72) that:

> "...there is urgent need for more information as regards year-class strengths in these subareas (SA2 and 3) ... owing to the complex nature of water movements in these and adjacent subareas, and some uncertainties regarding stock identity, there is need for more up-to-date information concerning spawning, larval success and subsequent drift in relation to contemporary environmental conditions. The probable value of studying these in relation to the isolated fishery of Flemish Cap should be considered ..." (emphasis added).

And further on in the report (p. 77):

> "The Working Party gave considerable thought to the problem of investigating the distribution of eggs and larvae of the principal commercial species in each subarea and of plankton studies in general ...
>
> They also recognized that the ICNAF Area, however, in which a series of most valuable fisheries are situated on the edge of a major continental slope, may present particularly important and valuable opportunities for a specially co-ordinated attack on the problem. Special reference has been made above to the value of egg and larval studies in Subareas 1 and 2, over the Flemish Cap and on Georges Bank. From north to south, there are a series of spawning grounds which would appear to be particularly vulnerable to deviations in the normal regime of the waters flowing constantly past them and in meteorological conditions ...
>
> The Working party therefore strongly recommended that the Commission should plan for a co-operative plankton and hydrographic [oceanographic] survey as soon as possible ..."

Part of the stimulation for the 1951 ICES Special Scientific Meeting in Amsterdam to discuss the place of oceanography in fisheries research was the paper presented at the 1950 Statutory Meeting by J. Carruthers and collaborators [subsequently published in Nature (Carruthers et al, 1951b)] in which haddock recruitment in the North Sea was linked statistically to wind-generated physical oceanographic phenomena. In the opening statement of their 1951a paper, they state (p. 6):

> "In this paper brood-strength fluctuations of the North Sea herring, plaice and cod are associated with inferred water movements set up by the local wind" (emphasis added).

In summary, during the early 1950s and 1960s, there was considerable support for the concept that changes in circulation in the egg and larval distributional areas was critical to the definition of year-class variability. The dual contribution of Harden Jones (1968) and Cushing (1975), however, shifted emphasis within the research community in the North Atlantic at least. The match/mismatch concept involving stratification changes and food-chain events generated the leading hypothesis for field studies.

The Decade of Field Studies on Early Life History Stages (1975 to 1985)

Until the mid 1970s, there were few field studies in the North Atlantic specifically designed to evaluate mechanisms involved in generating variable year-class sizes. There was, thus, a surprisingly long drought between Gran's 1913 proposal and the field studies on early life history stages that have proliferated since the mid 1970s. In the North Pacific, the ambitious CalCOFI program was initiated in 1948 to evaluate the importance of oceanographic processes on fluctuations in sardine abundance. For a summary of the historical events leading to the CalCOFI program see Scheiber (1986, Chapter 3). This long-term program has contributed to the recruitment literature, particularly within the 1975 to 1985 decade. For example, Lasker (1975) and Lasker and MacCall (1983) elaborated on Cushing's match/mismatch theory, and Sinclair et. al (1985) linked the CalCOFI data with Pacific mackerel population estimates and argued that the empirical observations support Hjort's second hypothesis (Figure 4).

The field studies on the recruitment question involving Canadian scientists during this decade are briefly summarized, giving emphasis to the particular hypotheses that have been addressed, the geographic scale of the studies and the conceptual advances. To my knowledge, essentially all of the Canadian field studies on recruitment during this period took place in the Atlantic. Grosslein (1987), Lilly (1987) and Grosslein and Lilly (1987) have recently reviewed the ICNAF/NAFO-sponsored multi-national recruitment studies on Georges Bank herring and Flemish Cap cod/redfish. Their reviews include critiques. Sinclair et al (1987), in a review of a broader scope than just recruitment studies, cover much of the same ground, but give particular attention to the adequacy of the physical oceanographic components of these major programs. Given these reviews, there is no need for further soul-searching on their shortcomings. When these two programs are looked at in a historical perspective (i.e. they represent the first serious attempt to investigate recruitment dynamics in the field in the western North Atlantic), the overall approach taken was well-founded.

The first step of the Georges Bank herring program was to describe spawning locations and subsequent larval distributions on a spatial scale considerably larger than Georges Bank itself. The multi-national larval surveys covered the Gulf of Maine area as a whole. The accumulated observations on larval distributions and their spatial shifts seasonally were somewhat contrary to expectations. A persistence in geographic distributions of larvae, rather than a displacement with the residual surface-layer currents, was observed. The recirculation processes on Georges Bank were considered important in limiting the dispersal of larvae from the Bank. The large-scale survey style studies allowed the scientists participating in ICNAF to define the spatial scale at which a Georges Bank herring recruitment study should encompass. The survey series provided the setting for the definition of the research questions involved in the second component.

The aims of the Georges Bank herring recruitment study proper are stated in the 1975 ICNAF Redbook (p. 91-92). Of the eight recommendations, three dealt specifically with Georges Bank-Nantucket Shoals herring. They were:

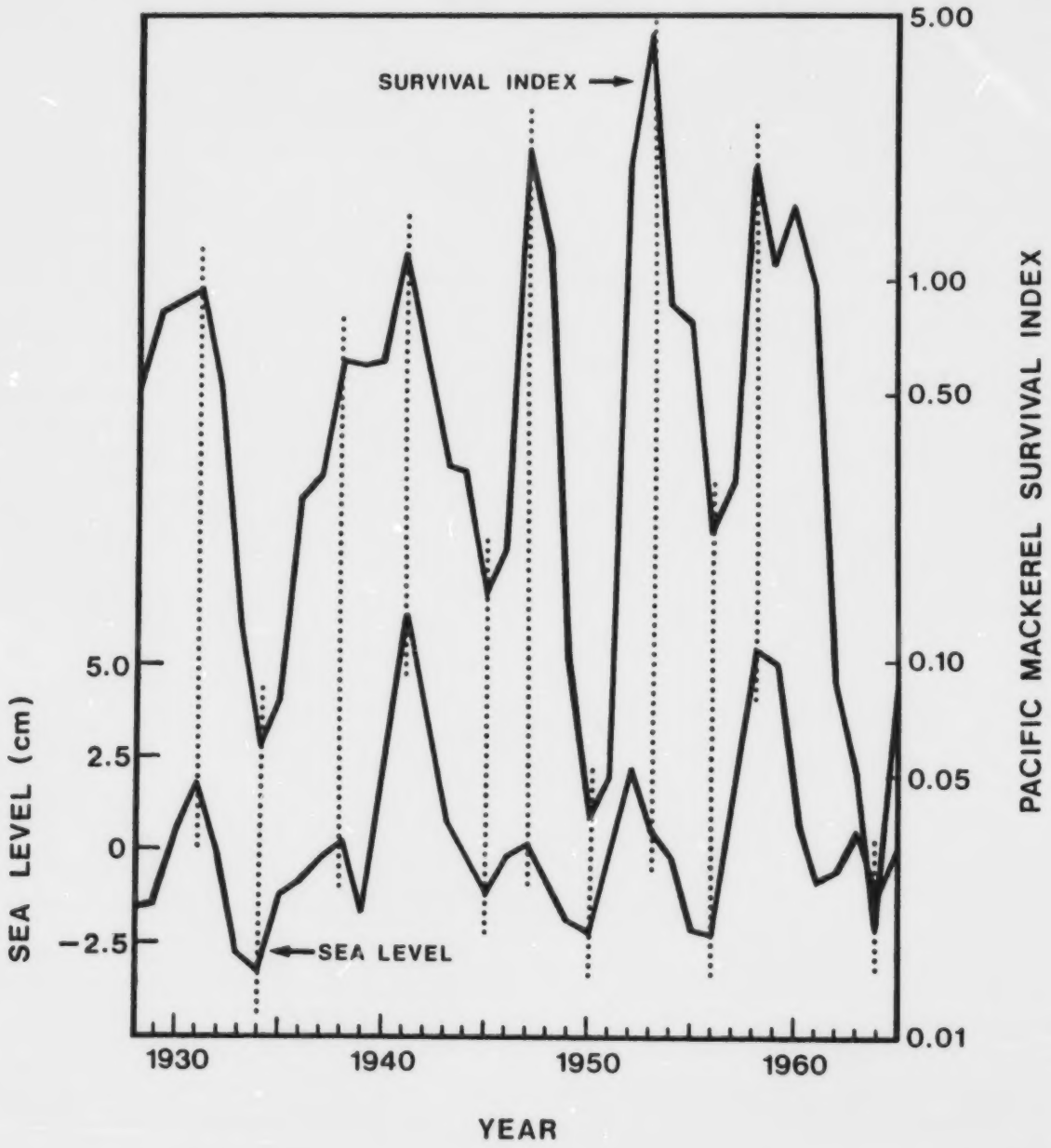


Figure 4. Time series of estimates of Pacific mackerel survival index and an index of the strength of the California current (from Sinclair et al 1985).

"v) that a concerted effort be made to understand the circulation and diffusive processes above and around the Georges Bank-Nantucket Shoals area;

vi) that a special sampling study to follow an isolated patch of larvae on Georges Bank be attempted in 1975 and/or 1976, in addition to the Standard Surveys, with a view to identifying the physical processes responsible for larval loss from the system, and providing information on the finer-scale variations in growth, mortality, dispersion, feeding and vertical distribution, as the basis for evaluating the feasibility of quantitative estimation of these processes and sampling errors inherent in the present data base;

vii) that quantitative studies of primary and secondary productivity should be conducted to provide a better basis for relating these phases of organic production to potential fish production."

International research projects under ICNAF were directed toward Recommendations (v) and (vi) above, but not Recommendation (vii). Although preliminary observations were collected in 1977, the detailed Georges Bank-Nantucket Shoals study did not take place until 1978.

What is of interest is the questions that were asked and their geographic scale. To understand recruitment variability of the Georges Bank spawning population, it was considered necessary to investigate the distributional area for the larval phase of the population, in this case, the bank itself (as indicated from the earlier large-scale surveys). Second, both physical losses from the area and food chain events were considered to be important. Studies on the relevant physics, biological oceanographic production processes, as well as detailed studies on larval behaviour in relation to the physics, were recommended. The approach advocated and taken was descriptive rather than hypothesis testing. For a number of reasons, the program lost momentum and was not brought to a timely conclusion. Thus, conceptual advances from the program itself cannot be considered to be substantive. However, the descriptive data collected and its subsequent analysis have contributed to:

1) a hypothesis on Atlantic herring population patterns and abundance for the northern Atlantic as a whole (Iles and Sinclair 1982, Sinclair and Iles 1985);

2) space- and time-scale characterization of circulation and mixing over submarine banks in general (Loder et al, 1988); and,

3) the conclusion that events during the early life history stages as a whole (rather than the first few weeks of the larval stage) are important in defining year-class stengths (Sissenwine 1984).

This field study in 1978 addressing recruitment dynamics of marine fish in the North Atlantic (65 years after Gran's research proposal at ICES in 1913), in the sense that it involved an enhanced description of the ocean which aided in subsequent hypothesis formulation, can be rated in retrospect as an important program. It is noteworthy that the field study was not a test of Cushing's match/mismatch hypothesis.

The Flemish Cap recruitment study on cod and redfish was more influenced by Cushing's food-chain interpretation of year-class variability. From the early years of ICNAF, Flemish Cap was considered a good geographic area to investigate recruitment dynamics. There was evidence that the Cap supports a self-sustaining spawning population of cod with minimal immigration from contiguous areas. The direct influence of physical oceanographic processes on abundance fluctuations was inferred to be of importance (see earlier quotation from 1961 Redbook of ICNAF).

It was not until 1975 that a major recruitment focus was placed on Flemish Cap by ICNAF. The Flemish Cap International Experiment developed from Recommendation 30(i) of the Environmental Working Group of ICNAF which stated (ICNAF Redbook 1975, p. 100) that:

> "... an attempt be made to identify relationships between the various currents around Flemish Cap, the water temperature at appropriate depths and any other relevant environmental factors with the year-class strengths of cod and redfish on the bank, including the role of predation of cod and redfish, and to identify other major gaps which still exist in knowledge of the area as well as research programs needed to fill them ...".

The reasons why this geographic area was considered amenable to study were listed (1975 Redbook, p. 99). These included:

> "i) both the cod and redfish stocks are relatively isolated from the stocks on the adjacent Grand Bank;
>
> ii) the water circulation patterns are likely to be amenable to study;
>
> iii) the area is restricted in size; and,
>
> iv) the area is one which, because of its major oceanographic features has been of interest to physical oceanographers for many years and there exists a useful historical and physical environmental data base. With respect to the latter, no fully co-ordinated and comprehensive analysis has yet been carried out."

These quotes are of interest for several reasons. Again, it is clear that ICNAF scientists of the time considered that it is critical to study recruitment dynamics in the context of a self-sustaining, geographically identifiable population. The spatial scale of the study must match the distributional limits of the population. Flemish Cap being relatively restricted in size, as well as isolated, offered certain advantages for a field program on recruitment.

Second, a leading hypothesis in 1961 and even 1975 was that interannual differences in circulation generated variable losses of eggs and larvae from the appropriate distributional area for the population, and thus the physics directly influenced year-class sizes. This emphasis on the physics as a leading hypothesis diminished as the progam progressed. The influence of the food-chain events became increasingly important in directing thought concerning the field studies. Lilly (1987, p. 110-111) summarizes the hypotheses that were developed as the program evolved. He states:

> "... they expressed the central hypothesis of the project as follows: 'The year-class strength of the Flemish Cap cod stock varies as a result of specific biological and environmental conditions.' This central hypothesis was divided into four main parts: physical environmental conditions, predation conditions, food abundance conditions and characteristics of the spawning stock. By making references to stages of the life cycle, 12 hypotheses were developed... This document was potentially very useful. It was clearly instrumental in guiding some of the research, particularly the oceanographic program, but its use to date as a framework for gauging progress in the testing of specific hypotheses has been insignificant."

The shift in the leading hypotheses from the direct role of physics to a predominant role by food-chain events paralleled shifts in the published literature dealing with the recruitment question.

As was the case for the Georges Bank herring program, from a historical perspective, the Flemish Cap study has been an important contribution. It was the second field study in the northwest Atlantic that addressed recruitment on the population scale. The study on its own has not contributed to conceptual advances in our understanding of the factors controlling year-class variability, but the empirical observations have contributed to better articulated hypotheses and descriptions of the relevant physics (e.g., Loder et al, 1988).

The third study on similar spatial scales off eastern Canada was the Scotian Shelf Ichthyoplankton Program (SSIP). This program, which was carried out between 1977 and 1982, has received considerable criticism, to a large degree because of a misunderstanding of its goals. As was the case with the ICNAF Georges Bank herring program, it was considered important to conduct a large scale description of the distribution of eggs and larvae on the Scotian Shelf as a whole prior to defining a study on the recruitment dynamics of a particular population. Other than the descriptive work of the 1914/15 Hjort expedition to Canada (published in 1919), there was, in 1975, essentially no information on ichthyoplankton on the Scotian Shelf. The aim of SSIP was to describe the seasonal distribution of egg and larval distributions for all fish species on the Scotian Shelf. An attempt was made to cover each month of the year at least twice over the five-year period (the sampling grid is shown in Figure 5). The surveys provided information on the timing of spawning for different species, the duration of the larval phase and the geographic scales of dispersal from the spawning areas. The empirical observations on spatial distributions were again somewhat surprising, in that they suggested persistence of egg and larval distributions for some species over the banks rather than

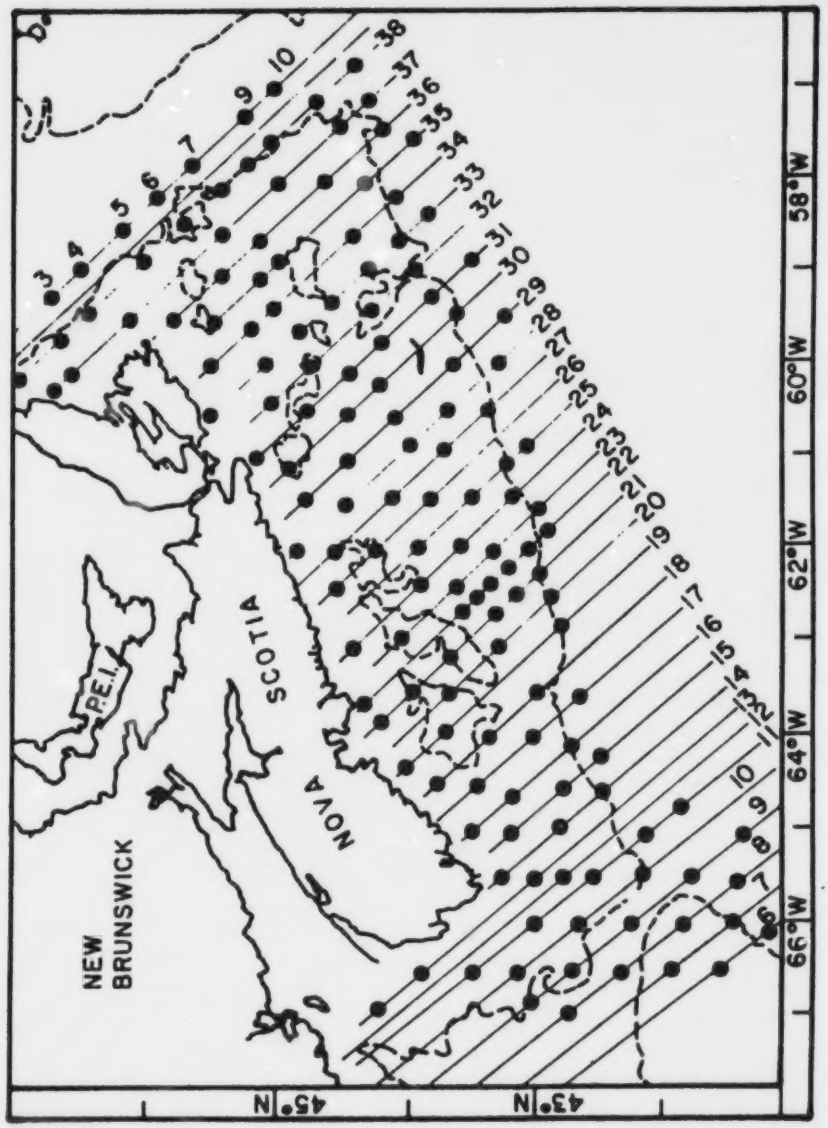


Figure 5. Station locations for SSIP.

drift with the residual surface layer circulation (O'Boyle et al, 1984; Gagné and O'Boyle, 1984). These survey results have provided the setting, and an indication of the appropriate spatial scale, for the follow-up recruitment study on Brown's Bank haddock (part of the Fisheries Ecology Project, FEP). In this sense SSIP was, in my view, the logical first (and necessary) step needed prior to the definition of a recruitment program on the Scotian Shelf. A legitimate criticism is that perhaps more ancillary environmental data was collected than was justified by the limited aims of the program, and that full analysis and publication of the ichthyoplankton data in the primary literature has been slow.

In parallel to these three major expensive large scale field programs of relevance to recruitment, there were two classes of inexpensive small-team studies carried out in eastern Canada during the 1975-1985 decade. The first category is a series of statistical studies initiated by W. Sutcliffe and his collegues in the former Marine Ecology Laboratory (MEL). The study was developed in the early 1970's (Sutcliffe 1972; 1973) but gained momentum and interest by the broader scientific community during the decade in review. The study has involved the analysis of existing time series on year-class sizes (or landings) and physical oceanographic parameters (Sutcliffe et al, 1977, 1983, Koslow 1984, Koslow et al 1987, Drinkwater and Myers 1987). The correlations have generated several site-specific hyptheses, but field tests to date have been minimal. The second category includes the near-shore field studies by W. Leggett and his colleagues on the spawning and early life history of capelin in both the St. Lawrence Estuary and Newfoundland embayments. These studies which were reviewed in the context of the broader literature by Leggett (1986) have focused on smaller spatial and temporal scale processes, not necessarily on the scale of the population (for which there is still considerable uncertainty for this species). The accumulated work has generated a rich set of empirical observations and a number of new hypotheses. The papers have only recently reached the scientific community and their full impact on our thinking about recruitment has yet to be felt. The implications of these studies will undoubtedly be addressed in other review papers of current work in this report. Suffice to say here that the contribution, in terms of both observations on the oceans and on ecological theory, has been substantive and thought provoking.

The recent leading hypotheses that have been generated both by increasing empirical observations (on spawning population abundance, year-class sizes, oceanographic time series and results of process-oriented studies), and a developing theoretical framework, will be introduced in the following papers. It is fair to say that they are still, to a large degree, elaborations of Heincke's geographic population concept and Hjort's two categories of hypotheses (respectively, food-chain events and the direct role of physical oceanographic processes). What has changed since the 1914 paradigm shift dealing with fluctuations in marine fisheries landings is the greater role assigned to predation during the early life history stages in the definition of year-class sizes. In this sense, there are perhaps three categories of hypotheses (direct role of physics in generating losses, food limitation and predation control). In the closing section of this paper, I will take the opportunity to state (or re-state) my conception of the scope of the recruitment problem.

Concluding Remarks

What then do we mean by the recruitment problem or question in fisheries research? First of all, recruitment is a term associated with species having complex life histories (i.e. with egg, larvae, junvenile and adult stages). Secondly it usually addresses age structured populations. The problem involves the causes of the intergenerational variability in abundance of age-clases of geographically persistent populations. In fisheries research the recruitment problem is a euphemism for the fundamental problem of population regulation. It is not to be confused with availability changes which reflect temporal shifts in distribution of populations and thus local abundance rather than changes in absolute abundance. I have found it useful to consider the recruitment problem in the broader context of population regulation. Four components of population regulation can be defined:

i) geographic pattern in the distribution of populations within and between species;

ii) numbers of populations per species, or population richness, and how this characteristic varies between species;

iii) the characteristic mean absolute abundance of numbers of individuals within a population;

iv) the inter-generational variability in age-class strengths that cause temporal fluctuations in abundance.

In brief, the four components of population regulation are pattern, richness, abundance and variability. Most of the research focus in recent years had been on the fourth component. It may well be that substantive increases in understanding of the causes of variability of age-classes within populations depends on a better understanding of the processes regulating the pattern, richness and mean abundance of populations. This involves such problems as understanding why different populations of species spawn in particular locations at different seasons and the degree to which homing exists for mobile animals.

I would prefer that we state the age-class variablility problem (or recruitment problem) in population regulation terms. There is a danger that we may lose sight of the context of the problem by using terminology that emphasizes only part of the natural phenomena. During the workshop we need to consider the research thrusts in oceanography and marine ecology that will generate increases in understanding of population regulation of commercially important species.

References

Allen, E.J. 1914. Fluctuations in the yield of sea fisheries. Nature 93: 672-673.

Beverton, R.J.H. and S.J. Holt. 1957. On the dynamics of exploited fish populations. U.K. Min. Agric. Fish., Invest. (Ser. 2) 19: 533 p.

Carruthers, J.N., A.L. Lawford and V.F.C. Veley. 1951a. Fishery hydrography: brood strength fluctuations in various North Sea fish, with suggested methods of prediction. Kieler Meeresforsch. Bd. 8, Heft 1: 5-15.

Carruthers, J.N., A.L. Lawford, V.F.C. Veley and B.B. Parrish. 1951b. Variations in brood-strength in North Sea haddock in the light of relevant wind conditions. Nature, London 168: 317-319.

Colton, J.B., Jr., and R.F. Temple. 1961. The enigma of Georges Bank spawning. Limnol. Oceangr. 6: 280-291.

Cushing, D.H. 1975. Marine Ecology and Fisheries. Cambridge University Press, London. 278 p.

Dahl, K. 1907. The scales of herring as a means of determining age, growth and migration. Report of the Norwegian Fisheries and Marine Investigations 2(6): 1-36.

Drinkwater, K.F. and R.A. Myers. Testing predictions of marine fish and shellfish landings from environmental variables. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 44(9): 1568-1573.

Gagné, J.A. and K.N. O'Boyle. 1984 The timing of cod spawning on the Scotian Shelf. In, E. Dahl, D.S. Danielssen, E. Moksness and P. Solemdal, eds. The Propagation of Cod Gadus morhua L. Flodevigen rapportsen. 1: 501-517.

Grosslein, M.D. 1987. Synopsis of knowledge of the recruitment process for Atlantic herring (Clupea harengus) with special reference to Georges Bank. NAFO Sci. Coun. Studies 11: 91-108.

Grosslein, M.D. and G.R. Lilly. 1987. Summary report of the special session on recruitment studies. NAFO Sci. Coun. Studies 11: 83-90.

Harden Jones, F.R. 1968. Fish Migration. Edward Arnold Ltd., London, 325 p.

Heincke, Fr. 1898. Naturgeschichte des Herings I. Die Lokalformen und die Wanderungen des Herings in den europäischen Meeren. Abh. d. Seef. Ver. 2, S. cxxxui u. 128 S.

Hjort, J. 1914. Fluctuations in the great fisheries of northern Europe. Rapp. P. -v. Cons. int. Explor. Mer 20: 1-228.

Hjort, J. 1919. Canadian Fisheries Expedition, 1914-1915. Department of Naval Service, Ottawa, Ontario. 495 p.

Hjort, J. 1930. Fluctuations in the abundance of the various year classes of food fishes. 1. Introductory address. Rapp. P. -v Cons. int. Explor. Mer 65: 5-9.

Hjort, J. 1945. International exploration of the sea. Rapp. P. -v. Cons. int. Explor. Mer 115: 3-19.

Iles, T.D. 1973. Interaction of environment and parent stock size in determining recruitment in the Pacific sardine as revealed by analysis of density-dependent 0-group growth. Rapp. P. -v. Réun. Cons. int. Explor. Mer 164: 228-240.

Iles, T.D. and M. Sinclair. 1982. Atlantic herring: stock discreteness and abundance. Science (Wash., D.C.) 215: 627-633.

Kingsland, S.E. 1985. Modelling Nature. Univ. Chicago Press, Chicago: 267p.

Koslow, J.A. 1984. Recruitment processes in northwest Atlantic fish stocks. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 41: 1722-1729.

Koslow, J.A., K.A. Thompson and W. Silvert. 1987. Recruitment to northwest Atlantic cod (Gadus morhua) and haddock (Melanogrammus aeglefinus) stocks: influence of stock size and climate. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 44: 26-39.

Lasker, R. 1975. Field criteria for survival of anchovy larvae: The relation between inshore chlorophyll maximum layers and successful first feeding. Fish. Bull. U.S. 73: 453-462.

Lasker, R. and A. MacCall. 1983. New ideas on the fluctuations of the clupeid stocks off California. In, Proceedings of the Joint Oceanographic Assembly 1982 - General Symposia (p. 110-120), Canadian National Committee/ Scientific Committee on Ocean Research, Ottawa, Ont. 189 p.

Leggett, W.C. 1986. The dependence of fish larval survival on food and predator densities. In, The Role of Freshwater Outflow in Coastal Marine Ecosystems (p. 117-137), ed. S Skreslet, Springer-Verlag, Berlin Heidelberg, 453 p.

Lilly, G.R. 1987. Synopsis of research related to recruitment of Atlantic cod (Gadus morhua) and Atlantic redfishes (Sebastes sp.) on Flemish Cap. NAFO Sci Coun. Studies 11: 109-122.

Loder, J.W., C.K. Ross and P.C. Smith. 1988. A space- and time-scale characterization of circulation and mixing over submarine banks, with application to the northwestern Atlantic continental shelf. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. in press.

O'Boyle, R.N., M. Sinclair, R.J. Conover, K.H. Mann, and A.C. Kohler. 1984. Temporal and spatial distribution of ichthyoplankton communities of the Scotian Shelf in relation to biological, hydrological and physiographic features. Rapp. P. -v. Réun. Cons. int. Explor. Mer 183: 27-40.

Pettersson, O. 1914. Climatic variations in historic and prehistoric time. Svenska Hydr.-Biol. Kommissionens Skrifter V, 26 p.

Ricker, W.E. 1954. Stock and recruitment. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 11: 559-623.

Scheiber, H.N. 1986. Pacific Ocean resources, science, and law of the sea: Wilbert M. Chapman and the Pacific Fisheries, 1945-1970. Ecology Law Quarterly 13: 381-534.

Schmidt, J. 1917. Racial investigations. 1. Zoarces viviparous L. and local races of the same. Comptes-rendu des travaux du Lab. Carlsb. 13(3): 279-396.

Schmidt, J. 1930. Racial investigations. X. The Atlantic cod (Gadus callarius L.) and local races of the same. Comptes-rendu des travaux du Lab. Carlsb. 18(6): 1-71.

Sinclair, M., M.J. Tremblay and P. Bernal. 1985. El Nino events and variability in a Pacific mackerel (Scomber japonicus) survival index: support for Hjort's second hypothesis. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 42: 602-608.

Sinclair, M., and T.D. Iles. 1985 Atlantic herring (Clupea harengus) distributions in the Gulf of Maine-Scotian Shelf area in relation to oceanographic features. Can. J. Fish Aquat. Sci. 42: 880-887.

Sinclair, M., J.W. Loder, D. Gascon, E.P. Horne, I. Perry and E.J. Sandeman. 1987. Fisheries needs for physical oceanographic information within the Atlantic Zone. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1568: viii & 166 p.

Sinclair, M., and P. Solemdal. 1987. The development of "population thinking" in fisheries biology between 1878 and 1930. ICES C.M. 1987/L: 11.

Sissenwine, M.P. 1984. Why do fish populations vary? In: Exploration of Marine Communties (p. 59-94), R.M. May (ed.), Springer-Verlag, Berlin. 370 p.

Sund, O. 1924. Snow and the survival of cod fry. Nature 113 163.

Sutcliffe, W.H., Jr. 1972. Some relations of land drainage, nutrients, particulate material and fish catch in two eastern Canadian bays. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 29: 357-362.

Sutcliffe, W.H., Jr. 1973. Correlations between seasonal river discharge and local landings of American lobster (Homarus americanus) and Atlantic halibut (Hippoglossus hippoglossus) in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 30: 19-30: 856-859.

Sutcliffe, W.H., Jr., K. Drinkwater and B.S. Muir. 1977. Correlations of fish catch and environmental factors in the Gulf of Maine. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 34: 19-30.

Sutcliffe, W.H., Jr., R.H. Loucks, K.F. Drinkwater and A.R. Coote. 1983. Nutrient flux onto the Labrador Shelf from Hudson Strait and its biological consequences. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 40: 1692-1701.

Sverdrup, H.U. 1953. On conditions for the vernal blooming of phytoplankton. J. du Conseil 18: 287-295.

V REVIEWS OF DEPARTMENT OF FISHERIES AND OCEANS PROGRAMS ON RECRUITMENT

A. OCEANIC FACTORS AFFECTING THE DISTRIBUTION AND RECRUITMENT OF WEST COAST FISHERIES

by

R.E. Thomson and D.M. Ware
Pacific Region

INTRODUCTION

Fisheries-oceanographers have long recognized the possible importance of oceanic variability to the distribution and recruitment of North Pacific fish stocks. However, throughout most of this century stock-related research has focused on the migration and survival of salmon in freshwater and the near-shore environment. Until recently, there has been no concerted effort to conduct a coordinated, multi-disciplinary, long-term (decadal scale) program of fisheries and physical oceanographic observations to better delineate the factors influencing the production and recruitment of British Columbia fisheries.

A recent study of the large-scale circulation features and distribution of commercial quantities of marine fish indicates that there are three major production domains in the northeast Pacific Ocean (Fig. 1; Ware and McFarlane 1988). The Coastal Upwelling Domain extends from Baja California (25°N) to the northern tip of Vancouver Island (50.5°N). This domain is defined physically by the normal summer pattern of negative wind stress curl and offshore Ekman transport (upwelling), and by the northward limit of major concentrations of Pacific hake, sardine,and mackerel which migrate into Canadian waters in the summer to feed (when the stocks are abundant), and which return to southern and Baja California where they spawn in the winter and spring (Fig. 2). The Coastal Downwelling Domain extends from Dixon Entrance in northern British Columbia (54°N), along the continental shelf of southeast Alaska to Prince William Sound and then westward along the Aleutian Islands. This domain is defined physically by the poleward flowing Alaska Current, which is an eastern boundary current of the Alaska gyre, and by the buoyancy-driven Alaska Coastal Current. Biologically, the domain is defined by the distribution of major concentrations of Pacific halibut, cod and Walleye pollock (Fig. 3). The third major production domain is the Central Subarctic Domain which is defined by the Alaska gyre and is dominated by Pacific salmon. Ware and McFarlane (1988) also recognized a small Transitional Zone between the Coastal Upwelling and Downwelling Domains. This zone encompasses the coastal waters of central and northern British Columbia, specifically Queen Charlotte Sound and Hecate Strait and is significant because it helps explains why the recruitment patterns differ between northern and southern stocks of Pacific herring, Pacific cod, and Sockeye salmon, and why there are no major commercial halibut fisheries in southern British Columbia.

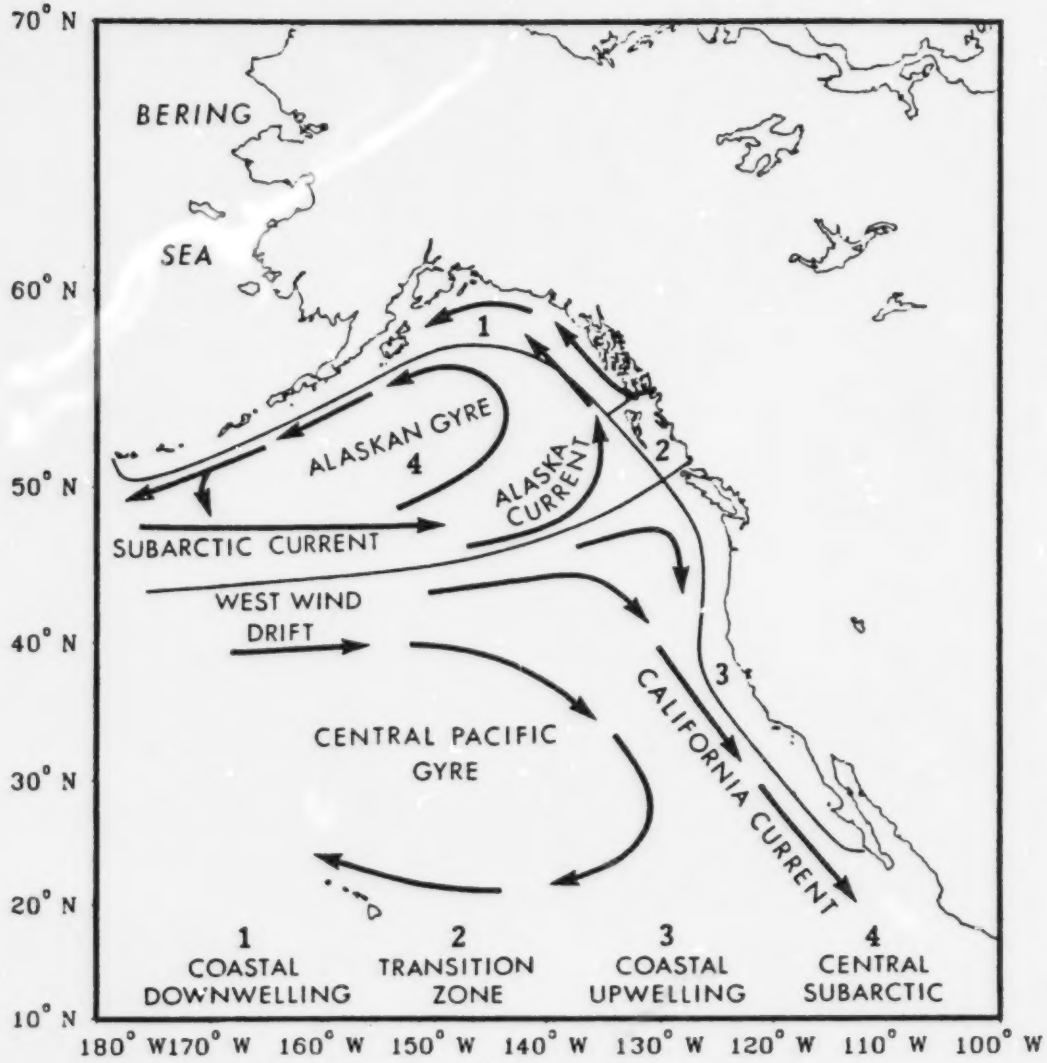


Fig. 1. Approximate areas of oceanic production domains and prevailing current directions in the northeast Pacific Ocean (from Ware and McFarlane 1988).

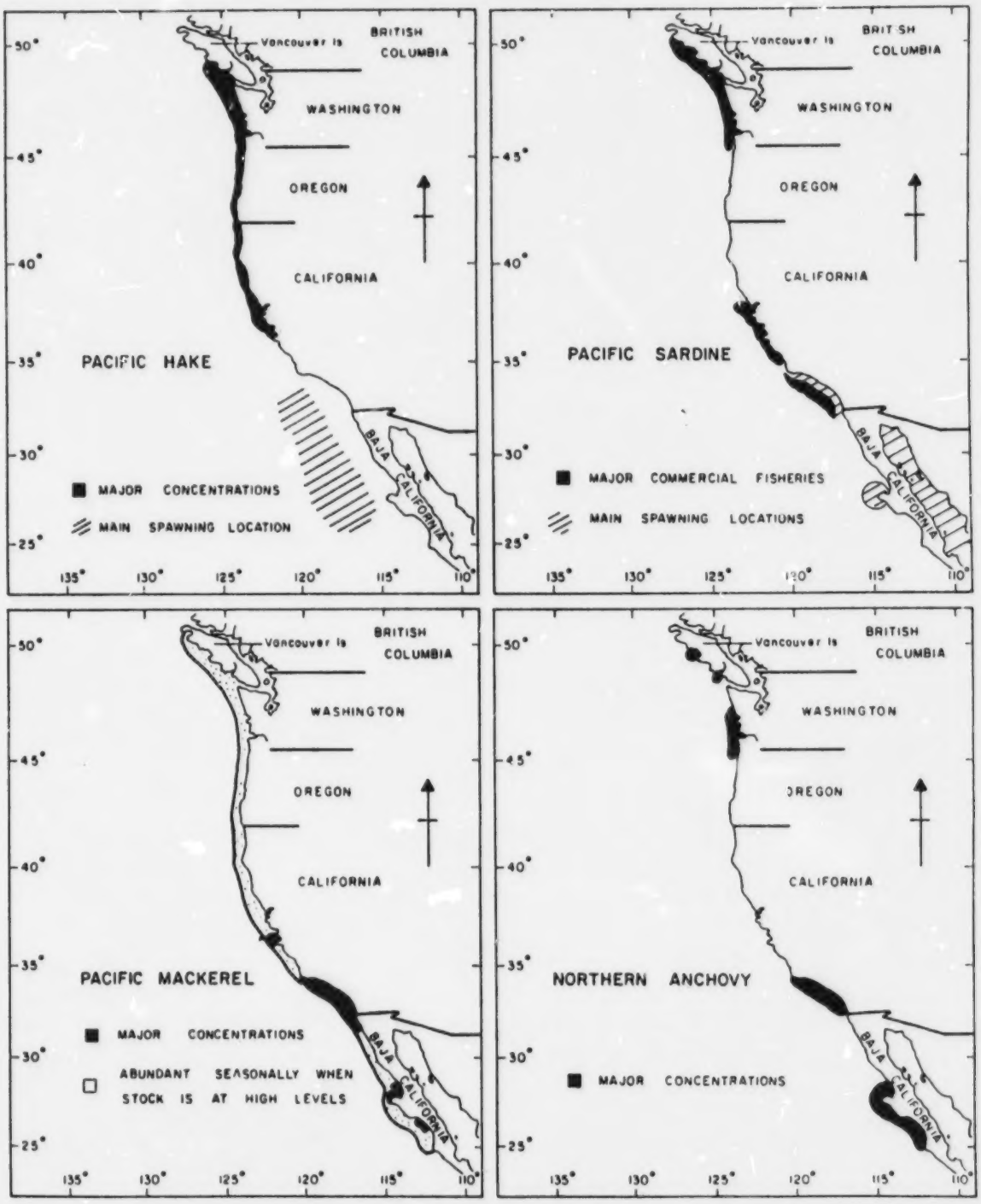


Fig. 2. Major concentrations of the dominant pelagic species in the coastal upwelling domain in summer (from Ware and McFarlane 1988).

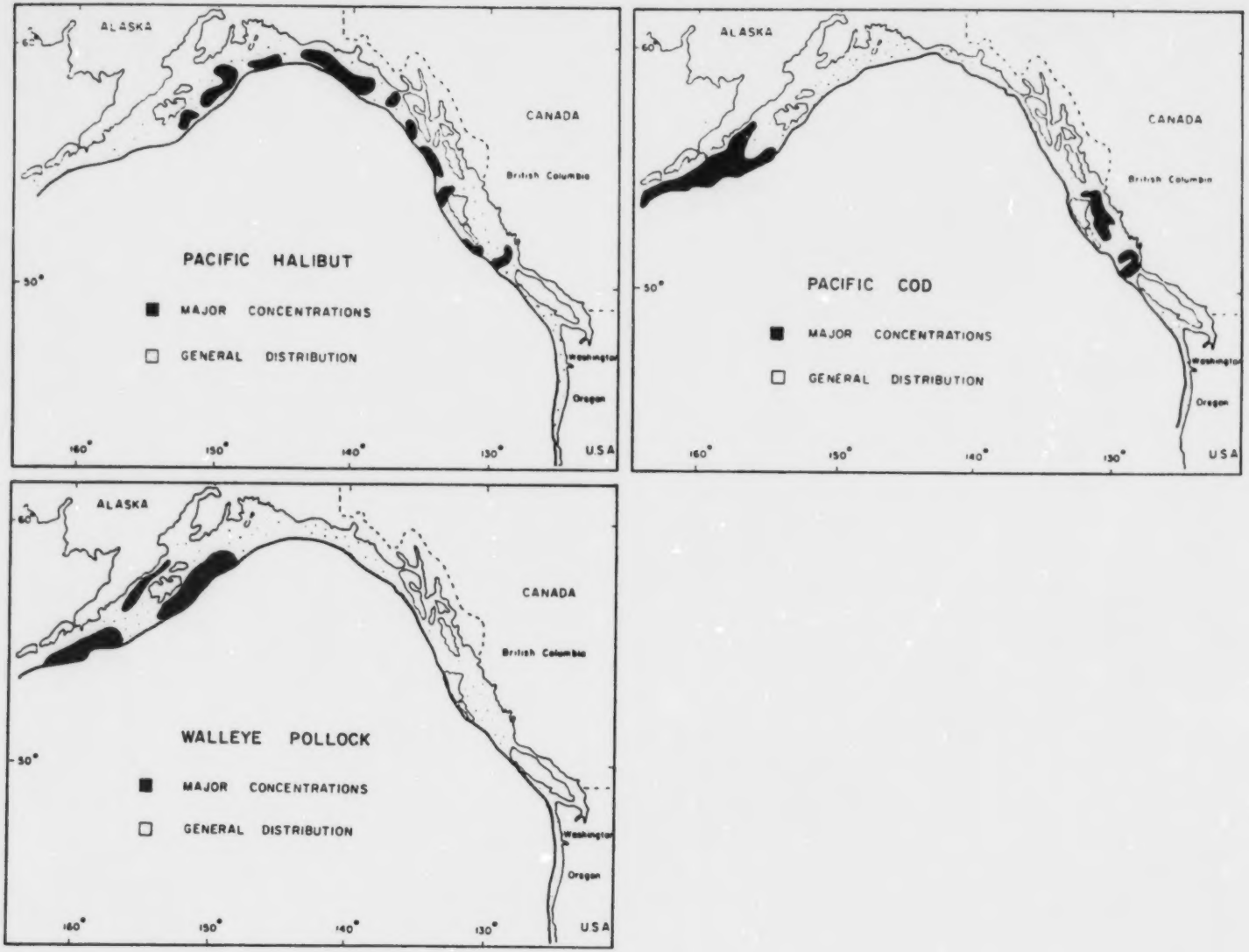


Fig. 3.
Major concentrations of the dominant fish species in the coastal downwelling domain (from Ware and McFarlane 1988).

Most of the continental shelf fisheries in British Columbia fall within two different production regions: the Coastal Upwelling Domain and the Transitional Zone. Historically, the Coastal Upwelling Domain has been the most productive region. Between 1917-66 the West Coast of Vancouver Island (shelf area of roughly 19 thousand sq. km) produced an average catch of 65 thousand tonnes of Pacific herring (from the West Coast and lower East Coast of Vancouver Island stocks; Taylor 1964), and an average catch of 31 thousand tonnes of sardine between 1917-47, which represents an average production rate of 5.1 tonnes/sq. km/yr when the migratory stock of sardine was abundant, and 3.4 tonnes/sq. km/yr when this stock declined. The west coast of Vancouver Island (WCVI) currently produces a catch of some 60 to 70 thousand tonnes of Pacific hake (the potential catch for 1988 is 90 thousand tonnes) and 6 to 8 thousand tonnes of herring. Thus although there is no clear indication that the general level of productivity has changed significantly since 1917, there has been a striking change in the species composition of the catch! The Coastal Upwelling Domain is currently in a state dominated by hake and their principal prey, euphausiids.

In 1985, the Pacific Biological Station and the Institute of Ocean Sciences began a joint, decade-long investigation on the effects of oceanic variability on fish stocks on La Pérouse Bank (Ware and Thomson 1986, 1987). The program was initiated partly in response to the lack of fishery-oceanography data for the west coast following the 1982/83 El Nino-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) event and partly in response to a need for improved regional oceanographic data in the important fishing zones off southern Vancouver Island. The La Pérouse Bank region was chosen for this investigation for several reasons. To begin with, it is a major fishing zone comprising a variety of important fish stocks including Pacific herring, sablefish, Pacific hake, and Pacific salmon. Secondly, the region is fairly well defined (encompassing an area of roughly 100 sq. km at the southwestern end of the Vancouver Island continental margin) and lies entirely within the Coastal Upwelling Domain. Thirdly, the region is one of the most thoroughly studied and best understood physical oceanographic regions on the west coast. Results from a variety of major oceanic programs such as CODE, SuperCODE and the Vancouver Island Coastal Current Experiment have provided us with considerable background information on the major processes affecting the water properties and circulation along the southern continental margin.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE

Prior to 1955, much of the regional fishery-oceanography research concentrated on the large-scale oceanic properties in the Gulf of Alaska, with few attempts to investigate the variability of coastal oceanic properties pertinent to fisheries productivity (Fleming 1955). Noteable exceptions for the British Columbia coast include the studies by Tully (1942), Tully and Doe (1953), Pickard and McLeod (1953), Doe (1955) and Hollister (1964). For example, Doe (1955) presented a detailed study of the coastal water properties for the period 1950-51 and concluded that the vertical structure could be divided into a surface zone (0 - 100m depth), a halocline (100 - 150 m depth) and a deep zone (below 150 m depth). The temperature at the top of the lower zone could be considered a conservative property of the lower zone with a

salinity of around 33.8 ppt. Fleming's 1955 summary of the physical oceanography of the northeast Pacific appears in Bulletin No. 2 of the International North Pacific Fisheries Commission. The brevity of the document attests to the limited extent of the observed oceanographic data available at the time. Actual time-series information in this document is limited to sea surface temperature and sea level heights obtained from coastal light-stations. This lack of data led Fleming to lump the entire coastal regime from northern California to Kodiak Island into an "American Coastal Region".

Although oceanic research over the following decade continued to concentrate on the Gulf of Alaska, considerably more data were collected on the structure and variability of water properties along the continental margin of British Columbia. In April 1959, the Weathership program at Ocean Station PAPA was extended to include "Line P" oceanographic stations en route to and from PAPA, including three locations over the continental margin of southern Vancouver Island. By early 1969, the program had been upgraded to encompass expendable BT (XBT) and salinity- temperature-depth (STD) observations at the Line P stations. These data, combined with the NORPAC data sets collected through the auspices of the International North Pacific Fisheries Commission (INPFC) and through individual research projects, are summarized by Dodimead et al. (1963). Summarized results revealed seasonal and interannual changes in the complex eddy-like structure in the temperature, salinity and geostrophic velocity fields along the eastern oceanic boundary. The continental margin was still considered part of an extensive "Coastal Domain" but with suggestion of a poleward extension of the California Undercurrent along the coast of British Columbia.

The next in the series of summary reports by the INPFC (Favorite et. al. 1976) summarized the oceanographic information from 1960-71. In addition to observations from the open ocean, the document contains detailed information on the time series variability of coastal sea levels, sea surface temperatures and salinities, atmospheric pressure and large-scale circulation. Moreover, the Coastal Domain was now separated into an "Upwelling Domain" extending from California to southern Vancouver Island and a "Dilute Domain" lying seaward of the British Columbia Coast. A recent summary of the general oceanography of the continental waters off British Columbia is provided by Dodimead (1984). Details of all aspects of the water properties are presented in this comprehensive study, including oceanographic data to 1979 and sea surface conditions at coastal lightstations.

Recent Oceanographic and Recruitment Programs

The first major investigation of the currents and water properties along the southwest coast of Vancouver Island (the Coastal Oceanic Dynamics Experiment, CODE) was undertaken during 1979-81 by the Institute of Ocean Sciences (Freeland 1983, 1987; Thomson et al. 1985a, 1985b, 1986; Huggett et al. 1987). Data from the three cross-shelf mooring lines and more than thirteen CTD/hydro surveys provided new insight into the seasonal variability and mesoscale dynamics of the continental margin flow regimes and paved the way for further research initiatives on the continental margin. Particular aspects of the coastal circulation revealed by this program include: a description of the Juan de Fuca Eddy and associated time-variable upwelling (Freeland and Denman 1982), a detailed analysis of baroclinic diurnal period continental shelf waves

(Crawford and Thomson 1982, 1984), an analysis of mesoscale eddy formation and dissipation (Thomson 1984) and a description of the monthly mean flow structure (Freeland et al. 1984). Data from the SuperCODE program considered the propagation of low-frequency coastal trapped waves along the entire central coast of North America (Yao et al. 1984). A separate study of the vorticity dynamics of the Juan de Fuca Eddy was conducted in 1985 by the Institute of Ocean Sciences.

A study of the Vancouver Island Coastal Current -- a persistent, poleward flowing buoyancy-driven current along the west coast of Vancouver Island -- was initiated in 1984 (LeBlond et al. 1985; Thomson et al. 1985b, 1988). Based on observations from this program, we now have considerable information on the structure, dynamics and seasonal variability of the flow structure over the continental margin of southern Vancouver Island. The North Coast Oceanic Dynamics Experiment (NCODE) for the period 1983 to 1985 is providing similar information concerning the oceanography of the waters adjacent to the Queen Charlotte Islands (cf. Crawford et al. 1985; Thomson 1987; Thomson and Wilson 1987; Thomson et al. 1988).

Since 1982 a number of major research programs in the Pacific Region have been designed to address the recruitment problem in specific fisheries (Table 1). The Hecate Strait program is a multi-disciplinary study which is developing a multi-species approach for managing the complex assemblage of groundfish in Hecate Strait and is attempting to clarify the impacts of oceanic factors on Pacific herring, Pacific cod and rock sole recruitment. Between 1983-86 a companion study of pink and chum salmon surival was conducted in Masset Inlet on the Queen Charlotte Islands. In 1985, the La Pérouse Project was designed to determine what was responsible for the significant fluctuations in herring, sablefish, Dungeness crab and Pacific cod recruitment. This is a multi-disciplinary study designed to identify the dominant physical processes affecting the circulation and water property structure; to quantify the low-frequency, non-periodic variability of the zooplankton; and to formulate and test specific hypotheses concerning how interannual oceanic fluctuations affect recruitment. The Marine Survival of Salmon Project (MASS) was undertaken to investigate the interrelationships between biophysical events and salmon distribution and survival on an annual and interannual time scale. The major objectives of the Project are: 1) to measure the residence time and survival of Barkley Sound sockeye smolts in relation to food, predators, and wind-driven circulation, and to track their northward dispersal along the southwest coast of Vancouver Island; and 2) to measure the residence time and survival of chinook and coho on the offshore banks in relation to local tidal rectification, topographic eddies, and cross-shelf exchange mechanisms that may create favourable feeding conditions. Other recent programs on salmon have focused on the importance of the estuarine phase of the life cycle of chinook on marine survival, and the effect of changes in oceanic conditions on the migration routes and arrival times of maturing salmon in the coastal fisheries.

Annual and Interannual Variability

Until the initiation of the joint PBS/IOS La Pérouse Bank project most modern oceanographic programs on the west coast of Canada have been primarily concerned with understanding the mechanisms affecting the spatial and temporal variability of the coastal ocean. As a consequence, project durations are typically shorter than a few years and provide little insight into possible

long-term effects of oceanic factors on fisheries distribution and recruitment. Some long-term data are provided by the Line P data set. However, in general, the stations are too far offshore and widely separated to provide information on the coastal ocean. The most complete records of long-term coastal oceanic variability continue to be sea surface temperature, salinity and sea level from lightstations (Hollister 1964; Hollister and Sandnes 1972; Giovando 1985). These data are supplemented by long-term records of coastal river runoff, atmospheric pressure, precipitation and winds. For the most part, the increase in noise in the salinity data following the change in type of sensor in 1979 has prevented the use of these data for climate-scale investigations.

Lane (1963) presented a detailed analysis of the seasonal cycle in vertical temperature and salinity structure for the region seaward of Amphitrite Point on Vancouver Island. As indicated by Dodimead (1984), this study marked the first attempt to characterize the seasonal variability in the water properties off the outer coast. Fofonoff and Tabata (1966) used the oceanographic time series from Line P to describe long-term fluctuations in temperature and salinities off the west coast. Although mainly concerned with offshore conditions, the study revealed distinct interannual variability in the coastal regime associated with wind-forced upwelling/downwelling dynamics. Using data from coastal oceanic surveys, Dodimead and Pickard (1967) presented evidence for marked year-to-year variability in the "relative area" of coastal water off Vancouver Island whose temperature at the top of the halocline was greater than 7°C in summer. Thomson (1972) suggested that the interannual variations in these intrusions are linked to the average of the meridional wind stress (and, hence to the onshore component of Ekman transport) during the preceeding winter. Ekman transport dynamics forms the basis of the upwelling indices for the west coast of North America published by Bakun (1973) for the period 1946-71. Derived from the longshore component of the frictionally-modified, geostrophic coastal winds, the indices have become an integral factor in determining relationships between oceanic conditions and fish recruitment. Upwelling indices for subsequent years have found general widespread application and have been published on a regular basis for the west coast (e.g. Bakun 1975). Transport computations for the North Pacific provide similar information though on a less detailed scale (cf. Wickett et al. 1977).

Davis (1976) found a significant correlation between the monthly mean anomally patterns of sea surface temperature (SST) and sea level pressure (SLP) in the North Pacific. Regions of anomalously cold (warm) surface temperature tended to coincide with anomalous southward (northward) surface winds. On this basis, it would appear that monthly variations in SST are largely controlled by meridional advection in the surface Ekman layer. Haney (1980) has identified both advection and surface wind-mixing as important factors to the formation of SST anomalies.

Enfield and Allen (1980), Thomson et al. (1984) Emery and Hamilton (1985) and Hamilton (1986) have used long-term lightstation temperature records to investigate El Nino-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) events along the west coast of North America. Oceanic and atmospheric mechanisms affecting these events are summarized in Mysak (1986). Thomson et al. (1984) used nine observation sites on the British Columbia coast dating back more than forty years to investigate the occurrence of ENSO events and long-term warming/cooling periods. Major ENSO events in the equatorial Pacific were found to be strongly correlated with coastal warming along the coast with a return period of 15 to 25 years, although

persistent and marked warming can also occur in the absence of equatorial warming events. Similar results are reported by Hamilton (1986) for the coast of northern California to Oregon. The data also reveal pronounced slowly varying, decadal-scale cycles in the water temperatures along the coast. In particular, the years 1925-46, 1957-68 and 1976-present appear to mark periods of anomalous warming while years 1947-56 and 1969-75 mark periods of anomalous cooling.

A study of long-term coastal temperature variability at 100 m depth is presented by Brainard and McLain (1985). Using monthly mean temperature measurements from the U.S. Master Oceanographic Observations data set, they were able to show that the subsurface temperature anomalies of major ENSO events for the period 1951-84 propagate poleward from the northwest coast of South America along the coast of North America at speeds ranging from 10 to 50 km/day. These speeds are comparable to longshore propagation speeds determined for sea level height anomalies and are slower than the theoretical speeds for coastal Kelvin waves (coastally-trapped waves). Unlike surface temperature anomalies for the coastal region, only the 1982/83 warm event and the strong 1954/56 cold event could be traced along the entire length of the observational area from Chile to British Columbia. Major events in 1957/58, 1972/73 and 1976/77 appeared to propagate only as far as northern California. Royer and Xiong (1984) analyzed long-term temperature records from a site off Seward Alaska and found that the subsurface waters of the northeast Pacific have warmed at about 0.1°C per year between 1972-85. The data also indicate that the upper 250 metres at the Seward site warmed in response to the 1977 and 1983 ENSO events.

Long-term variations in coastal sea levels have been studied by a variety of authors including Enfield and Allen (1980), Chelton (1980), Barnett (1984). Sea level fluctuations associated with ENSO events are seen propagating poleward along the entire coast of North America at speeds of several tens of kilometres/day and there is evidence for 5-6 year oscillations in sea level due to long-term variations in atmospheric pressure. Trends in sea level along the British Columbia coast are found to be linked to tectonic processes associated with continental drift and with glacio-isostatic rebound originating with the slow viscous response of the earth to melting of glaciers during the last ice-age (e.g. Barnett 1984; Aubery and Emery 1986; Thomson 1986; van de Plassche 1986).

A study of long-term (twenty-five year) steric sea levels from the Line P data set (Tabata et al. 1986) indicates that salinity effects dominate steric height variations near the coast whereas temperature effects prevail in the offshore region. Near the coast, annual variations in steric sea level are governed by the cycle of winter dilution by precipitation and runoff and summer concentration by upwelling. Local currents such as the Vancouver Island Coastal Current appear to be the primary factor affecting variations in coastal sea level, not variations in the offshore current system. A study of long-term sea level trends in the northeast Pacific is given by Thomson and Tabata (1987).

Using monthly SST and SLP data for the period 1946-82, Emery and Hamilton (1985) have been able to establish a link between atmospheric circulation and interannual variability in SST and coastal sea levels in the northeast Pacific Ocean. In particular, the occurrence of anomalously warm water along the British Columbia coast in winter is coincident with an anomalously intense Aleutian Low in the Gulf of Alaska. These results are

consistent with the notion that SST anomalies on seasonal time scales are largely maintained by wind-driven advection in the near-surface waters of the ocean. The results further show that long-term sea level heights along the coast are controlled by large-scale atmospheric circulation in the North Pacific. The authors also argue for an atmospheric link ("telecommunication") between the equatorial region and mid-latitudes during ENSO events. In general, "warm" equatorial winters (strong El Nino episodes) are accompanied by vigorous atmospheric circulation in the North Pacific while "cold" equatorial winters are accompanied by weak mid-latitude atmospheric circulation. Weak winter SLP patterns often precede tropical El Nino events. If an El Nino event is then accompanied by strong North Pacific atmospheric circulation, there is invariably a strong warming of the surface waters in the eastern North Pacific and an increase in sea level along the west coast of North America, such as in 1958 and 1983. However, some ENSO events are accompanied by weak atmospheric circulation and anomalously cold SST along the coast of North America. Conversely, there can be strong winter-time circulation and very warm SST in the northeast Pacific without the occurrence of anomalous conditions in the tropics (e.g. 1961). The mechanism proposed by Emery and Hamilton (1985) did not predict the moderate 1987/88 El Nino event (W. Emery, personal communication).

Recruitment Studies

A variety of studies have suggested links between interannual variability in oceanic conditions and recruitment of west coast fish stocks. For example, Walters et al. (1978) developed a model simulating the first 6 months of ocean life of Pacific salmon. They hypothesized that mortality rates should decrease with body size, so any density-dependent mechanism producing slower growth should result in higher mortalities. They concluded that juvenile salmon are unlikely to be food-limited: there appears to be enough plankton production to support the existing abundance of juvenile salmon without measurable effects on their growth and survival, so the explanation for the observed dependence of marine survival must be sought elsewhere. They suggested density-dependent predation. Recently, Peterman (1987) found some statistical evidence for density-dependent marine survival and growth in some salmonid species; it seems to occur most strongly in the first 14-18 months of ocean life. His analysis of Fraser River pink salmon revealed a significant negative correlation between adult body weight and number of fish per unit zooplankton at ocean station P (in the central subarctic). Contrary to the conclusion reached by Walters et al. (1978), Peterman showed that there may be a period of food limitation during the oceanic phase of the life cycle which has a significant effect on fish weight, and hence the biomass of the returning stock. He also suggested that the form of the relationship describing predation mortality on juvenile salmon may produce complex stock-recruitment curves with multiple equilibria. This possibility has some important management implications in terms of how the stocks should be harvested.

Mysak et al. (1982) conducted a cross-spectral analysis of sea level, sea surface temperature (SST) and salinity off British Columbia with annual Fraser River sockeye catch and west coast of Vancouver Island herring. The cross-spectra indicated that the fisheries time series were highly coherent with the physical data at a period of 5-6 years. Since there are large-scale atmospheric variations and transpacific fluctuations in SST at this period, it seems that these fluctuations may affect the number and average weight of fish through some of the processes hinted at by Peterman (1987). Ware and McFarlane

(1986) extended the work of Mysak et al. (1982), and confirmed that west coast of Vancouver Island herring year-class strength shows a strong negative correlation with annual SST, they also found a negative correlation with the estimated biomass of Pacific hake, which is the key predator of juvenile and adult herring during the summer, when both the predator and prey distributions overlap on the continental shelf. Since both correlations were highest with a zero year lag (for SST), and zero and 1 year lag (for hake biomass), as a working hypothesis this analysis suggests that temperature may reflect the influence of oceanic conditions on herring survival during the first 5-6 months of life, while the predator effect appears to operate most strongly on late age 0+ and 1+ juveniles which are distributed offshore.

In northern British Columbia, Walters et al. (1986) found that Hecate Strait herring have fluctuated in a manner which suggests that their recruitment rates are being forced by Pacific cod predation. In the 1960's and 70's, both populations experienced what appears to be a classical predator-prey oscillation; however, this relationship broke down in the late 1970's indicating the involvement of other, overriding factors. For example, year-class strength of Pacific cod in Hecate Strait is also strongly correlated with water transport and water temperature (Tyler and Westrheim 1986). Poor year-classes tended to be associated with strong northward transport and low temperatures.

With respect to other groundfish species, McFarlane and Beamish (1986) found that good sablefish year-classes tended to occur when spring onshore Ekman transport is strong and water temperatures are high. In British Columbia poor sablefish year-classes predominate during periods of low temperature and reduced onshore transport. Their interpretation of this tendency is that favourable oceanographic conditions may increase the amount of food available to the early larval stages at depth (possibly as early as the half yolk-sac utilization stage) and increase their survival rate. In another statistical study, Fargo and McKinnel (1988) performed a response surface analysis of Rock sole abundance and found a significant dome-shaped relationship between year-class strength and March SST (the period of peak spawning). The optimal temperature was in the range of 5.5-6.5°C, and is believed to reflect optimal hatching success in this species. The response surface analysis also suggested that the stock-recruitment curve for Rock sole resembles a Beverton and Holt asymptotic curve.

A common limitation of the foregoing studies is that the conclusions are derived almost exclusively from correlations; little or no direct, or independent, evidence is presented to support the proposed mechanisms. These exploratory studies therefore mark the first step in the search for understanding, since they attempt to reduce the infinite number of possible factors that may affect recruitment into a smaller set that can be tested directly by making appropriate measurements in the field.

PHYSICAL OCEANOGRAPHY

The purpose of section is to review the key seasonal and interannual variations in water properties and circulation in the La Pérouse Bank region of southwestern British Columbia. Emphasis is on the major temporal changes in the spatial structure and the possible mechanisms affecting these changes. Results

rely heavily on the observations obtained from oceanographic field programs conducted over the past decade.

The La Pérouse Bank region falls into the Coastal Upwelling Domain which extends from northern California to northern Vancouver Island (Fig. 1) and is characterized by marked summer upwelling and the presence of a buoyancy-driven coastal current along the inner shelf. Winds in this region are predominantly to the south in summer and to the north in winter. A Coastal Transition Zone separates the upwelling domain from the Coastal Downwelling Domain extending poleward along the Alaska coast from roughly 54°N off Dixon Entrance. The Transition Zone extends from the northern tip of Vancouver Island to Dixon Entrance and is distinguished by low coastal runoff, the absence of an offshore continental shelf and a strong offshore oceanic influence. The Downwelling Domain is characterized by strong downwelling coastal winds, marked land-derived runoff and strong longshore coastal currents (e.g. Royer 1981a, b).

Spring Transition: February-April

The Spring Transition is an annual event that marks a relatively abrupt change from winter to summer water properties and circulation over the continental margin. According to Strub et al. (1987), the transition is a large-scale feature extending from California to southern British Columbia with longshore scales of 500 to 2000 km. The transition coincides with the reversal from southeasterlies to northwesterlies in the prevailing winds and typically propagates from south to north over a period of 3 to 10 days. This poleward propagation is expected to take the form of long coastally-trapped waves or may arise through atmospheric teleconnections. In the former case, estimated propagation speeds range from 50 to 150 km/day. On the coast of British Columbia, the transition occurs over a one- to two-week period sometime between late February to early May with considerable year-to-year variability in the timing and intensity of the reversal. For example, in 1987, observations suggest that the transition occurred in mid-April while in 1983 the transition appears to have taken place in early February.

In addition to the reversal in the prevailing longshore winds, the Spring Transition is accompanied by a reversal in the prevailing shelf-break currents, a lowering of mean coastal sea level, a re-stratification of the shelf/slope waters and the onset of upwelling favourable conditions over the outer shelf (Thomson et al. 1988). The annual cycle in the shelf-break current, from northwestward in winter to southeastward in summer, is quite pronounced and is observed in direct current meter measurements, in surface drogue studies and in calculated geostrophic velocity fields. Typical seasonal variations in mean sea level are of order 10 cm. The Spring Transition also marks an increase in the buoyancy flux from the entrance of Juan de Fuca Strait and an alteration in the primary buoyancy source driving the Vancouver Island Coastal Current. In winter, the coastal current receives relatively low density water from both Juan de Fuca Strait and runoff from the mountain ranges of Vancouver Island; in summer, only Juan de Fuca Strait contributes significantly to the buoyancy flux.

Based on the above summary, it is clear that the Spring Transition delineates an important change in the fundamental structure of the coastal ocean. The timing and intensity of the onset of upwelling favourable winds combined with the establishment of an intense southeastward flowing current centered over the shelf-break and outer shelf could have a significant effect on

the currents and water property distribution, and therefore on the regional fisheries. This effect could occur directly through changes in the oceanic environment or indirectly through effects on the distribution of zooplankton and predator populations.

Summer Circulation: May-October

Following the Spring Transition, there is a rapid weakening of the Aleutian Low in the Gulf of Alaska and strengthening of the North Pacific High off California. This leads to prevailing northwesterly winds along central North America and to the establishment of a summer circulation pattern along the coast of Vancouver Island. Increased solar heating leads to increased warming and stratification of the upper 100 m of the water column over the continental margin. Upwelling results in the onshore movement of subsurface slope water onto the outer shelf, leading to an decrease (increase) in near-bottom temperatures (salinity) with an accompanying decrease in dissolved oxygen levels. The combination of shelf-break upwelling and nearshore downwelling (due to the presence of the poleward flowing coastal current) gives rise to a banded longshore structure in the subsurface water properties over the continental margin (Leblond et al. 1986 and Thomson et al. 1988). In particular, the water properties over the shelf take on a bowed appearance, with relatively high salinity, low temperature (high density) water centered along the 100 m depth contour flanked by relatively low salinity, high temperature (low density) water over the outer and inner portions of the shelf.

The prevailing summer circulation over the continental margin of Vancouver Island is characterized by four main features (Fig. 4; see also Thomson et al. 1988): (1) The poleward flowing inner-shelf Vancouver Island Coastal Current extending from Juan de Fuca Strait to Brooks Peninsula (or beyond to Queen Charlotte Sound); (2) The equatorward flowing Shelf-break Current extending along the entire coast from northern Vancouver Island to northern California; (3) The cyclonic (counterclockwise rotary) Juan de Fuca Eddy situated over the central portion of Juan de Fuca Canyon to the south of La Pérouse Bank; and (4) The generally weak clockwise circulation centered over the central portion of the La Pérouse Bank region. In addition, there appears to be a significant mean flow component generated through rectification of the strong diurnal and semidiurnal tidal currents that dominate the high-frequency variability over the continental margin. Mesoscale eddies with lifespans of a few days to weeks are also common features of the coastal circulation (Mysak 1977; Ikeda et al. 1984a, b,; Thomson 1984; Thomson and Gower 1985; Denman and Freeland 1985; Denman and Mackas, personal communication).

The Vancouver Island Coastal Current is a narrow (15 to 25 km wide), baroclinic current flowing over the inner half of the continental shelf north of Juan de Fuca Strait. The current has typical time-averaged speeds in excess of 10 cm/s and longshore extent of over 150 km. Although it persists throughout the year, the current is most noticeable in summer when it flows poleward counter to the prevailing winds from the northwest. Except over La Pérouse Bank, the core of the current appears to be centered near the 50 m depth contour. In summer, the current is forced primarily by buoyancy flux from Juan de Fuca Strait while in winter it is forced by both coastal precipitation and Juan de Fuca discharge. Since it opposes the prevailing winds in summer, the maximum speed of the coastal current is typically found at depths of a few tens

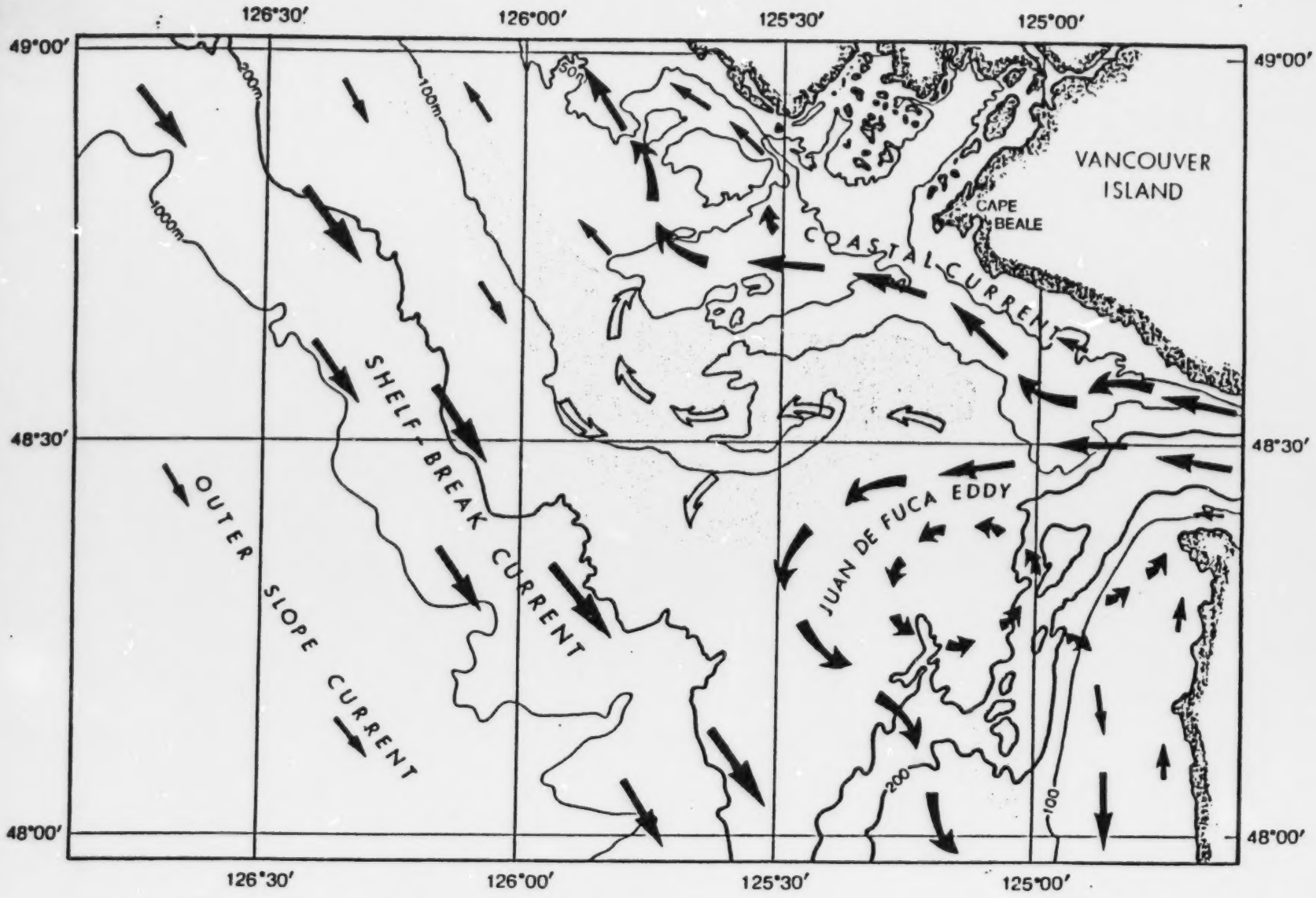


Fig. 4. General summer circulation pattern on La Perouse Bank and surrounding waters. Stippled region denotes an area of confused flow (from Thomson et al. 1988).

of metres rather than at the surface (Thomson et al. 1988). Especially strong northwesterlies (speeds in excess of 15-20 m/s) are capable of reversing the coastal current to considerable depth for periods of a few days.

Throughout its length, the coastal current is separated from a seasonally-reversible Shelf-break Current by an alongshore transition region of relatively weak and variable flow. The transition region is most pronounced in summer and is most extensive over the broad shelf seaward of Barkley Sound. It is assummed that the transition region marks a divergence of the upper layer waters. The Shelf-break Current is an intense wind-driven southeastward flow confined to the upper 150 m with core speeds of order 50 cm/s centered over the outer shelf. In contrast to the coastal current, the shelf-break current reverses seasonally in response to the prevailing winds along the outer coast. The flow is predominantly to the southeast in summer and to the northwest in winter. Flow beneath the shelf-break current appears to be principally to the north in response to oceanic flow conditions over the continental slope. It is assumed that this subsurface poleward flow over the continental slope represents the California Undercurrent Extension, the northward branch of the California Undercurrent thought to carry relatively warm, low dissolved oxygen water northward over much of the slope of North America (Hickey 1979; Mackas et al. 1987).

In addition to the marked cross-shore structure of the shelf circulation, there is an obvious distinction between the circulation to the south and north of Barkley Sound. This spatial distinction is emphasized in summer when the wind and runoff mechanisms produce flows in opposite directions. The buoyancy driven flow emenating from Juan de Fuca Strait loops seaward over La Pérouse Bank before turning northward to form the relatively confined nearshore current north of the Sound. A second branch of this outflow curls southward to form the Juan de Fuca Eddy situated to the south of the La Pérouse Bank region. Looping of the current exiting from Juan de Fuca Strait leads to a weak clockwise eddy centered over the bank. Current meter records from the La Pérouse Bank project indicate that near-surface cross-bank currents gradually intensify through the summer suggesting that the northern boundary of the Juan de Fuca Eddy shifts northward or that there is an intensification of outflow from the strait.

Fall Transition: October-November

The transition from the summer to winter oceanic regime takes place sometime between October and November during the first major autumn storm. As with the Spring Transition, the actual timing and intensity of this event varies interannually. In certain years, the transition can occur as early as late September while in others (e.g. 1987) the transition may take place as late as mid-November. Differences in timing are clearly related to the degree of storm activity in the North Pacific and to positions of storm tracks relative to the coast of North America. In contrast to coastal regions to the south, the Fall Transition along the coast of British Columbia appears to be a reasonably well-defined event.

The Fall Transition is marked by a reversal in the prevailing winds along the coast and is accompanied by a reversal in the Shelf-break Flow, an approximately 10 cm rise in mean coastal sea level, enhanced wind and convective mixing of the surface waters and the cessation of upwelling. Though data are

limited, the transition appears to coincide with decreased integrity of the Juan de Fuca Eddy and enhanced strength of the nearshore poleward flow. Currents over La Pérouse Bank are directed more toward the northwest and there is less likelihood of weak, confined circulation over the bank as in summer. Runoff from Vancouver Island begins to contribute to the coastal current which is expected to be more confined to the nearshore regions along the island.

Winter Circulation: November - April

During winter months, the flow is typically to the northwest over the entire continental margin in response to the prevailing southerly winds. Increased runoff from the mountainous regions of Vancouver Island strengthens the buoyancy-driven Vancouver Island Coastal Current while vigorous wind-mixing and convective overturning leads to a deepening and de-stratification of the upper 100 m of the water column. Deceleration of the winter flow regime occurs during brief mid-winter periods when local high pressure systems and accompanying northwesterly winds build over the outer coast. This also leads to strong outflow winds from inlets and channels adjoining the coast and to enhanced cooling of the oceanic surface waters.

ENSO Variability

A variety of studies for the west coast confirm the existence of long-term variability in the water properties and circulation that are partly linked to El Nino-Southern Oscillation events (Enfield and Allen 1980; Thomson et al. 1984; Emery and Hamilton 1986; Mysak 1986; Tabata et al. 1986). All investigations confirm the presence of long-term 15-25 year cycles in the water properties and the influence of major equatorial events on the mid-latitude oceanography (e.g. 1941/42, 1957/58 and 1982/83). In addition, atmospheric pressure and adjusted sea level data suggest the presence of a quasi-six year cycle in the mid-latitude variability (Thomson and Tabata, 1981; Mysak et al. 1982; Tabata et al. 1986). The temperature fluctuations at this period are marginally significant and it is doubtful if there are significant changes in the flow structure at these periods.

Major ENSO events are accompanied by strengthened (weakened) southerly (northerly) winds and a greater bias to poleward transport of upper ocean water along the coast. The combined effect of the modified winds and poleward flow is to diminish the upwelling response and to enhance the integrated temperature of the upper layer. Sea levels rise as a result of the tendency to poleward flow and southerly winds. Depending upon the amount of time-integrated runoff entering the coastal zone, surface salinities can be expected to increase as more saline water is moved northward with the mean circulation.

FISHERIES OCEANOGRAPHY

This section reviews the biological production characteristics and seasonal movements of some of the dominant fish and invertebrate species off the lower west coast of Vancouver Island, and considers how interannual variations in the intensity and timing of seasonal events, and changes in predator and prey distributions may affect marine survival and, hence, recruitment.

SPRING TRANSITION PERIOD

The extant data on phytoplankton and zooplankton biomass are not extensive enough to clearly define the seasonal variability, let alone the interannual variability of the production cycle off the west coast of Vancouver Island. One of the key objectives of the La Pérouse Project is to assemble such a time series. The fragmentary bits of information that exist indicate that the spring phytoplankton bloom begins in late March-early April. The nutrients supporting this bloom tend to be exhausted quite quickly, but are replenished by upwelling which begins in late May. Consequently there may be two peaks in zooplankton abundance: one following the spring bloom and a second in June (Fig. 5). The most abundant copepods in the area in the spring are large bodied forms such as Calanus and Neocalanus spp.; in summer, the dominant copepods are neritic forms like Acartia and Centropages spp. Euphausiids are also locally abundant (3 to 80 g/sq. m). E. pacifica is the dominant species off the west coast of Vancouver Island; it is an oceanic form which tends to spawn intermittently from early May to September in response to plankton blooms (Fulton et al. 1982). E. pacifica grows rapidly following the spring bloom at a rate of about 1.5% of the body weight per day.

The spring transition marks a period when Pacific herring, Pacific hake, and sablefish spawn and the adults of the two former species begin migrating back to the summer feeding grounds. Herring reach their lowest level of abundance on the offshore banks in March; only the pre-recruits occupy the banks then since the adults are inshore near the spawning grounds (Fig. 6). Pacific hake spawn off southern and Baja California from January to March, and then begin their poleward migration back to the rich feeding grounds off the lower WCVI. By early March the main body of hake is off San Francisco (37°N), and progresses northward at an average speed of 16-18 km/day. At this rate of advance hake would not keep pace with the spring transition (which propogates poleward at a rate of 50 -150 km/d) but would lag behind allowing the development of euphausiid stocks along the route. Sablefish spawn from January-March over the continental slope. Their eggs and larvae are most abundant at depths greater than 400 m; hatching and initiation of feeding occurs at depth in late February to mid-March. The larvae migrate to the surface waters late in the yolk sac stage (mid-late March). Measurements are currently being made to test the possibility that favourable oceanographic conditions enhance the amount of food available to sablefish larvae, and increases their survival rate (McFarlane and Beamish 1986).

The seaward migration of Pacific salmon begins around the time of the Spring Transition. On the West Coast of Vancouver Island, sockeye smolts enter Alberni inlet and first appear in Barkley Sound in late April. By mid-June they have largely left Barkley Sound and have begun their poleward migration along the eastern boundary of the Gulf of Alaska. In contrast to the sockeye and coho juveniles, which move out of Barkley Sound quickly, juvenile chinook remain inshore throughout the summer and move to the offshore banks in November. This chinook stock may have sustained heavy predation losses from Pacific mackerel, which were unusually abundant in Barkley Sound in the summers of 1983 and 1984 (Ashton et al. 1985).

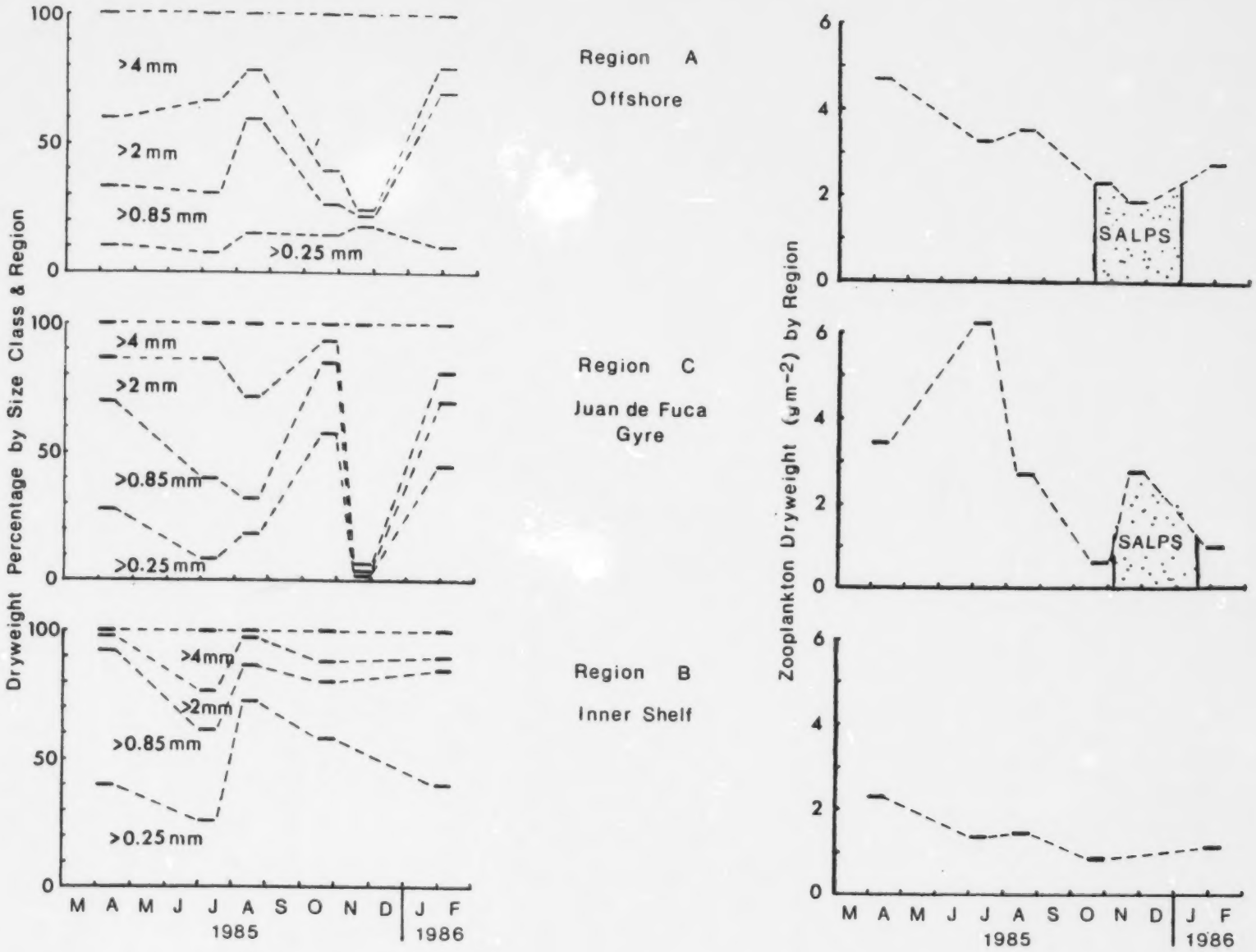


Fig. 5. Zooplankton concentrations, and dry weight percentage by size class in the offshore, inner shelf and Juan de Fuca eddy regions (courtesy of D. Mackas, Institute of Ocean Sciences, Sidney, British Columbia).

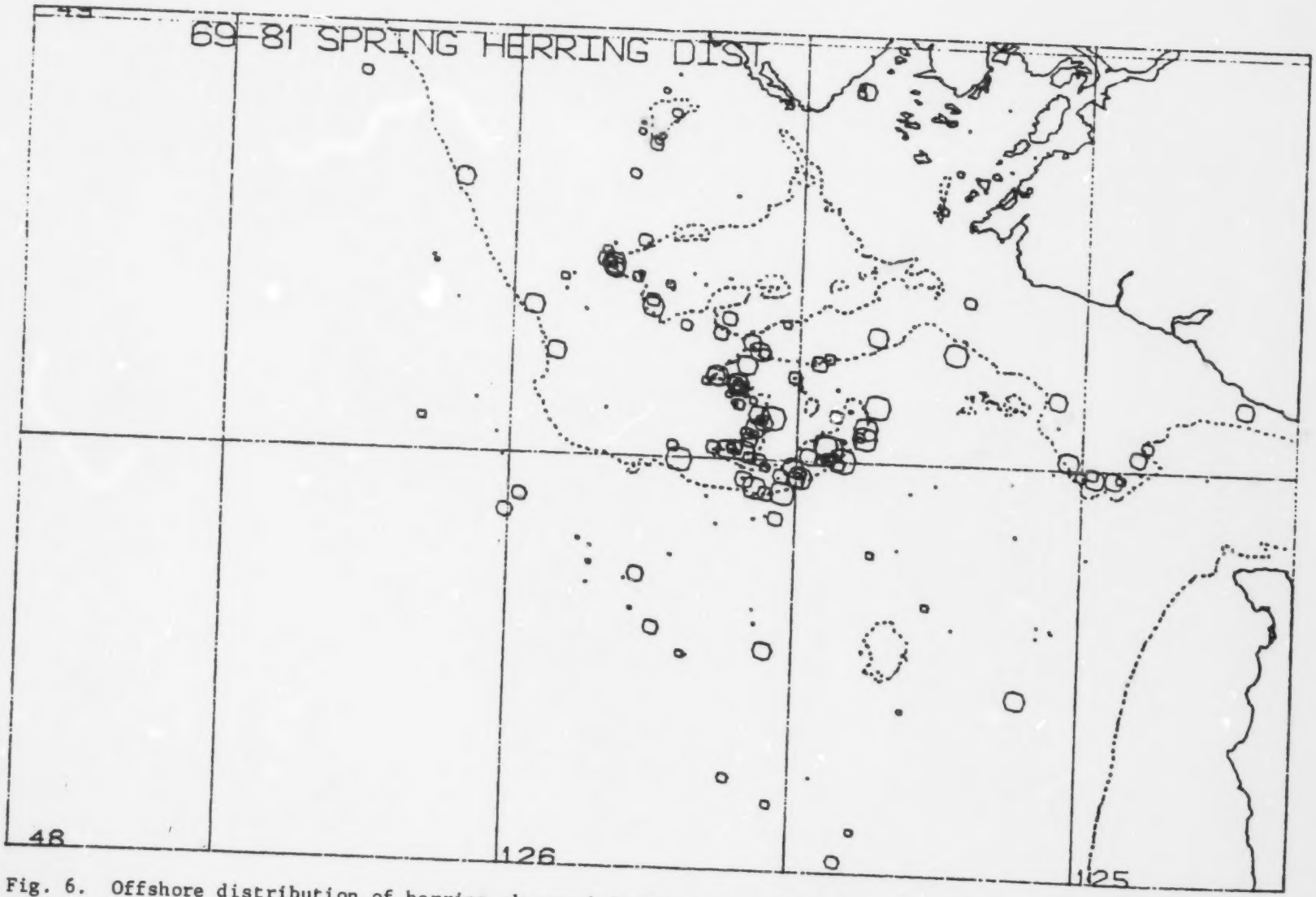


Fig. 6. Offshore distribution of herring observed during spring (March-May) surveys between 1969-81. The size of the octagon is proportional to the logarithm of the catch rate (kg herring/min). The 100 m isobath is shown.

SUMMER PERIOD

Continental Shelf

The summer circulation period (May-October) is characterized as a time of moderate to high zooplankton biomass and production, and is the main feeding period for most offshore fish species, particularly herring and hake. During May, June and July the highest average biomass of zooplankton is associated with the Juan de Fuca Eddy (Fig. 5). Zooplankton concentrations decline sharply in this region in August, thereafter, the highest zooplankton concentrations are found on the outer shelf (Region A, Fig. 5). Euphausiids are particularly abundant along the northern flank of the Juan de Fuca eddy and the shelf-break. In contrast, zooplankton concentrations tend to be low over the inner banks and consist of a high proportion of small bodied forms.

In summer, herring from the lower west coast of Vancouver Island stock are distributed primarily over La Pérouse bank and the nearby basins, out to the shelf-break (200 m isobath). They are particularly abundant along the eastern edge of the 100 m isobath (Fig. 7). Some components of this stock may remain offshore until a just a few weeks before spawning (March). In contrast, herring spawning in the lower Strait of Georgia (lower east coast stock), tend to be distributed south of the US-Canada border (Tester 1948). This stock leaves the summer feeding grounds for overwintering areas in the lower Strait of Georgia in November. Juvenile herring (0+) begin moving out of Barkley Sound for the offshore banks and basins in late summer (Hart 1973).

Pacific hake begin arriving off the lower west coast Vancouver Island (WCVI) in June when the summer circulation pattern is well established. The migratory stock of hake is normally present in large quantities from mid-June to late October; the highest catches typically occur in August (Beamish 1981). Major concentrations are found along the northern edge of the Juan de Fuca Eddy and from the 100 m isobath out to the shelf-break (Fig. 8). Both areas have high standing stocks of euphausiids and smaller zooplankton, so the summer distribution of hake tends to match the distribution of euphausiids. The hake distribution also overlaps components of the offshore herring stocks that are scattered over the inner basins and outer shelf.

With respect to the theme of this recruitment workshop, one of the main ideas being tested within the context of the La Pérouse Project is that the survival of both pre-recruit and adult herring is determined largely by the amount of spatial and temporal overlap in the herring distribution field with the fields of their main offshore predators, like hake, during the summer and fall. Interannual variations in the amount and duration of overlap in the prey andpredator fields are probably related to oceanic conditions and are believed to be responsible for significant variations in predation losses. Preliminary estimates by Ware and McFarlane (1986) indicate that offshore predators have the potential to remove considerable numbers of pre-recruit herring and, on average, between 30-50% of the biomass of adult herring. Within this range there is some circumstantial evidence that the predation rate may be higher in warm summers.

Two specific avenues are being explored to evaluate this idea: The first question is why is there a significant biomass of hake off the lower WCVI? We believe the answer is because the surface outflow from Juan de Fuca tends to concentrate significant numbers of euphuasiids in a band between the

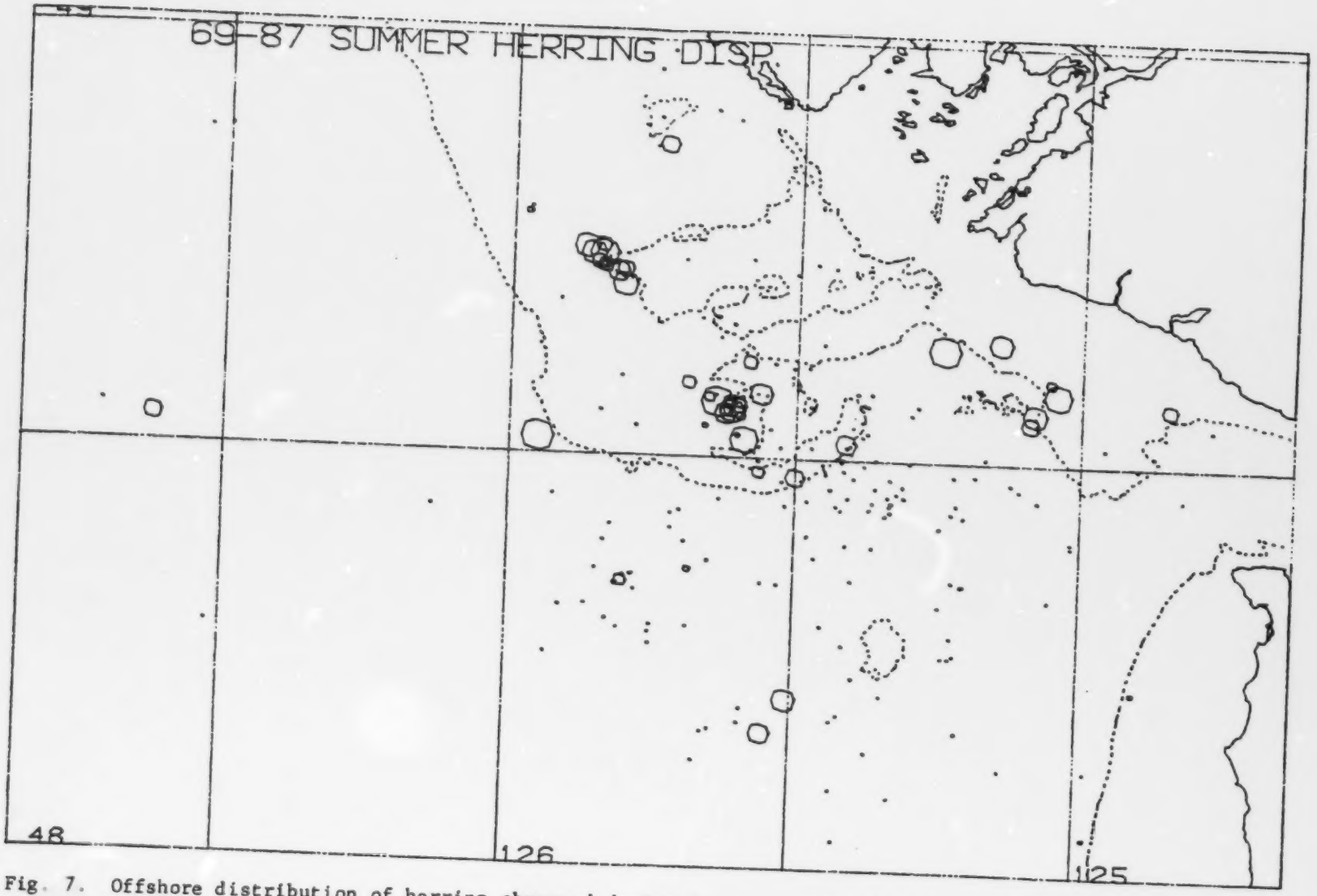


Fig. 7. Offshore distribution of herring observed during summer surveys (June-August) between 1969-1987. The symbols are defined in Fig. 6.

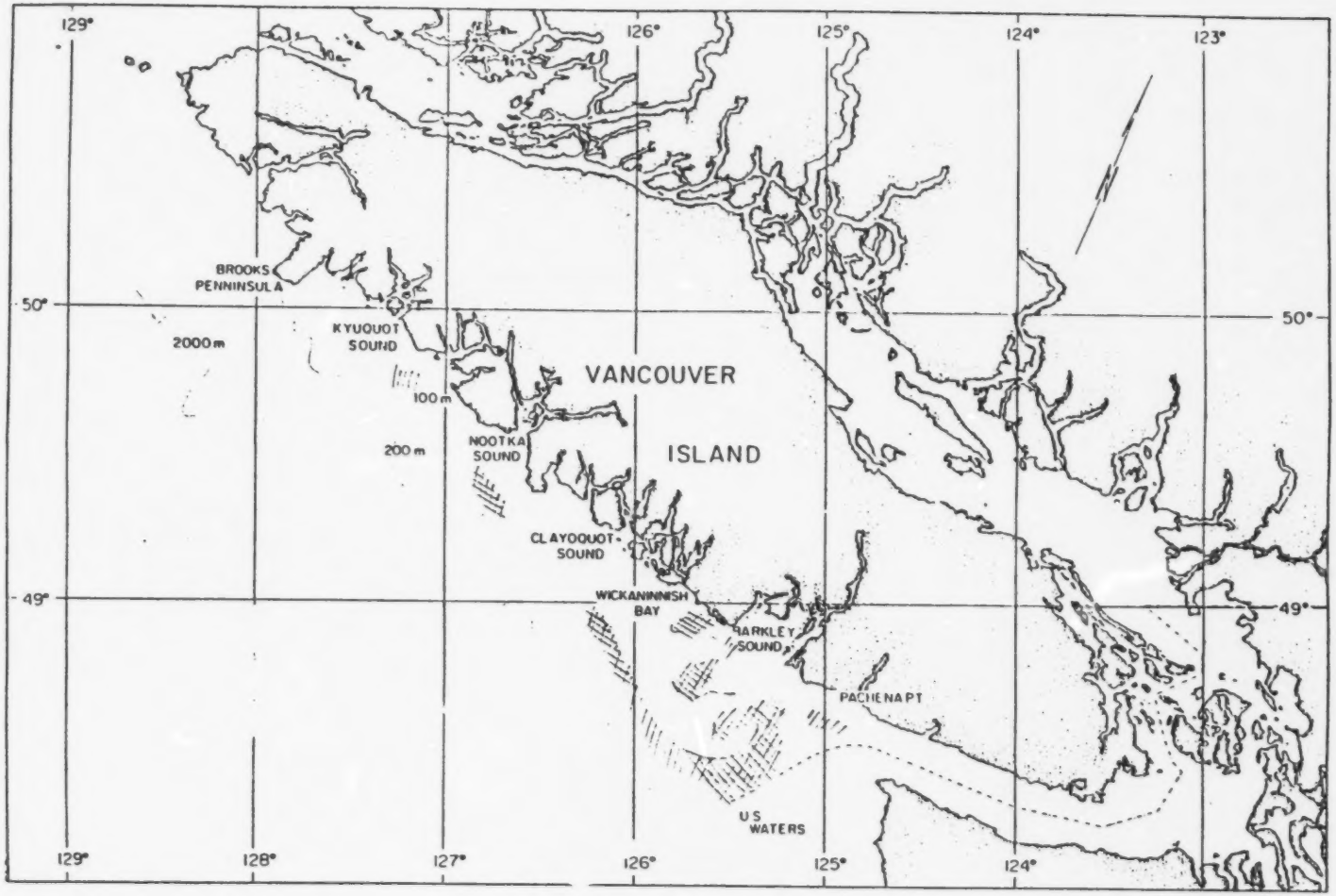


Fig. 8. Distribution and relative concentration patterns of Pacific hake off the west coast of Vancouver Island between 1967-87. Areas with cross-hatching indicate where hake have been found every year; areas with diagonal lines indicate where hake have been observed, but not consistently (courtesy of W. Shaw, Pacific Biological Station, Nanaimo, B.C.).

edge of the inner banks (100 m isobath) and the outer edge of the Juan de Fuca Eddy. A hydro-acoustic survey by Yvan Simard and Dave Mackas in June and August, 1986 established that there were high concentrations of euphausiids in this area which extended across the shelf, and then northward in a narrow band along the shelf break. Dave Mackas has suggested that the equatorward flow of the Shelf-break Current may transport euphausiids from the northern part of Vancouver Island, along the shelf-break and into the vicinity of the Juan de Fuca Eddy (the latter part of this transport mechanism has yet to be clarified). As we noted above there seems to be almost a perfect overlap in the euphausiid and hake distribution fields. This oversimplified picture, however, is complicated by variations in the speed and direction of the cross-bank currents which may move, or temporarily break up the euphausiid concentrations. This may explain why the hake concentrations periodically "melt away" during the summer and become highly dispersed in aggregations that cannot be fished profitably. During this dispersed phase hake may be actively searching for food. Measurements will be made to see if herring have a higher risk of hake predation when the direction and intensity of the cross-shelf currents changes.

The second question is why are herring concentrated along the southern and eastern edges of the inner banks? Surveys are being designed to determine if the cross-shelf currents tend to concentrate copepods and euphausiids along the southern edges of the banks. In addition, it seems possible that under favourable conditions upwelling may lift zooplankton up onto the eastern margins of the banks. Part of the reason why herring are distributed the way they are in the summer, therefore, may be determined by the distribution of the plankton, (Fig. 5); another piece of the puzzle may involve offshore predators. Since both the plankton and predators are more abundant over the inner shelf basins, the summer distribution of herring may reflect a trade-off that has been selected to provide adequate feeding opportunities with minimal predation risk.

The processes that we suspect are important for concentrating plankton along the edges of the inner banks, may also explain the offshore distribution of juvenile coho and chinook salmon. The distribution of large chinook, not suprisingly, seems to match some of the main concentrations of herring.

Coastal Current

The Vancouver Island Coastal Current is a narrow, poleward flowing region of low density water, bounded by a zone of downwelling at the inner edge of the shelf. This may be an important feature which blocks the cross-shelf transport and successful recruitment of Dungeness crab off the lower west coast of Vancouver Island. Jamieson et al. (1988) found that crab megalopae were abundant along the outer boundary of the coastal current and seaward out to 180 km in May and June 1985; but were not abundant in nearshore waters. They speculate that successful recruitment (i.e. settlement) of crab larvae along the lower west coast may only occur when the coastal current is weak. When the coastal current is strong, which it normally seems to be, they speculate that in summer the Shelf-break Current may carry crab megalope southward off Washington where some may eventually settle. There is no coastal current off Washington and the megalopae are abundant there right to the coast. The reason why major crab recruitments seem to occur following ENSO periods off the lower WCVI may be associated with an increased northerly transport of crab larvae from Washington. Some of these larvae may be entrained by the coastal current and

consequently make their way shoreward. The strength of the coastal current varies interannually in response to variations in winds, coastal runoff and the outer shelf-slope circulation.

The coastal current may also be an important transportation conduit for juvenile sockeye salmon (Thomson et al. 1988). Hartt and Dell's (1986) analysis of purse-seine catches indicates that juvenile sockeye, chum and pink salmon were caught in the Strait of Juan de Fuca and off the WCVI from June-Sept/Oct. The data are not extensive enough to resolve the offshore distribution, but the MASS Project is testing the possibility that the coastal current may be used preferentially by northward migrating sockeye salmon juveniles. It is not clear what happens to the coastal current in the vicinity of Brooks Peninsula which presents a major barrier to the flow. Cross-shelf filaments are formed intermittently by upwelling north of Brooks Peninsula and tend to move offshore or southward along the outer shelf at speeds of 15-70 cm/sec. These features interrupt the coastal current and may pose a significant barrier to migrating juvenile salmon. Most marine mortality of salmon is believed to occur in the first 6-18 months of sea life, and is highly size-selective. The most probable sources of mortality of migrating juvenile sockeye salmon are marine fish (like hake, dogfish, salmon, rockfish etc.), and birds. Sockeye salmon are a common prey of Rhinocerous auklets in the summer near the northern tip of Vancouver Island (Vermeer and Westrheim 1982). A major objective of the MASS Project is to identify the significant sources of mortality, and to quantify the relative losses sustained during the 1-2 months sockeye juveniles take to migrate along the WCVI.

The coastal current may also be a significant factor determining which route Fraser River Sockeye salmon take into the Strait of Georgia. This is an important concern of DFO personnel responsible for managing the commercial fisheries. The problem is that there is significant interannual variability in the fraction of Fraser River Sockeye that return around the northern end of Vancouver Island through Johnstone Strait (the northern diversion) compared to the fraction that normally returns via the southern route through Juan de Fuca Strait. What is particularly disturbing is that the diversion rates have been unusually high since 1978 (Fig. 9). In a comprehensive study, Hamilton (1985) found a significant correlation between the northern diversion rate and the temperature change in the coastal waters off the WCVI during the last 18 months of the salmon's ocean residence. Strong temperature changes normally accompany large ENSO events, and large northern diversions have occurred after these events (e.g. 1915, 1926, 1958, 1983). Hamilton speculated that ocean temperatures could affect the distribution of salmon, and if the number of fish using the northern route is enhanced under these conditions then warmer temperatures would lead to a high diversion through Johnstone Strait. This explanation accounts for about 33% of the variance, which is encouraging, but it does not explain why the diversion rate was low during the warm years of 1941, 1963 and 1967; nor why it was so high during 1972, which was more or less a normal year. Another factor that might explain these anomalies is the integrity of the Vancouver Island Coastal Current, which in summer is frequently prevented from rounding Brooks Peninsula by the equatorward-flowing Shelf-break Current. The large cross-shore current shears created in this narrow shelf region by the opposing shelf-break and coastal current regimes leads to flow instability and the formation of seaward penetrating filaments. Assuming that this blockage of the coastal current is a quasi-permanent feature of the Brooks Peninsula region in summer, then in warm ENSO event years when the sockeye make a landfall north

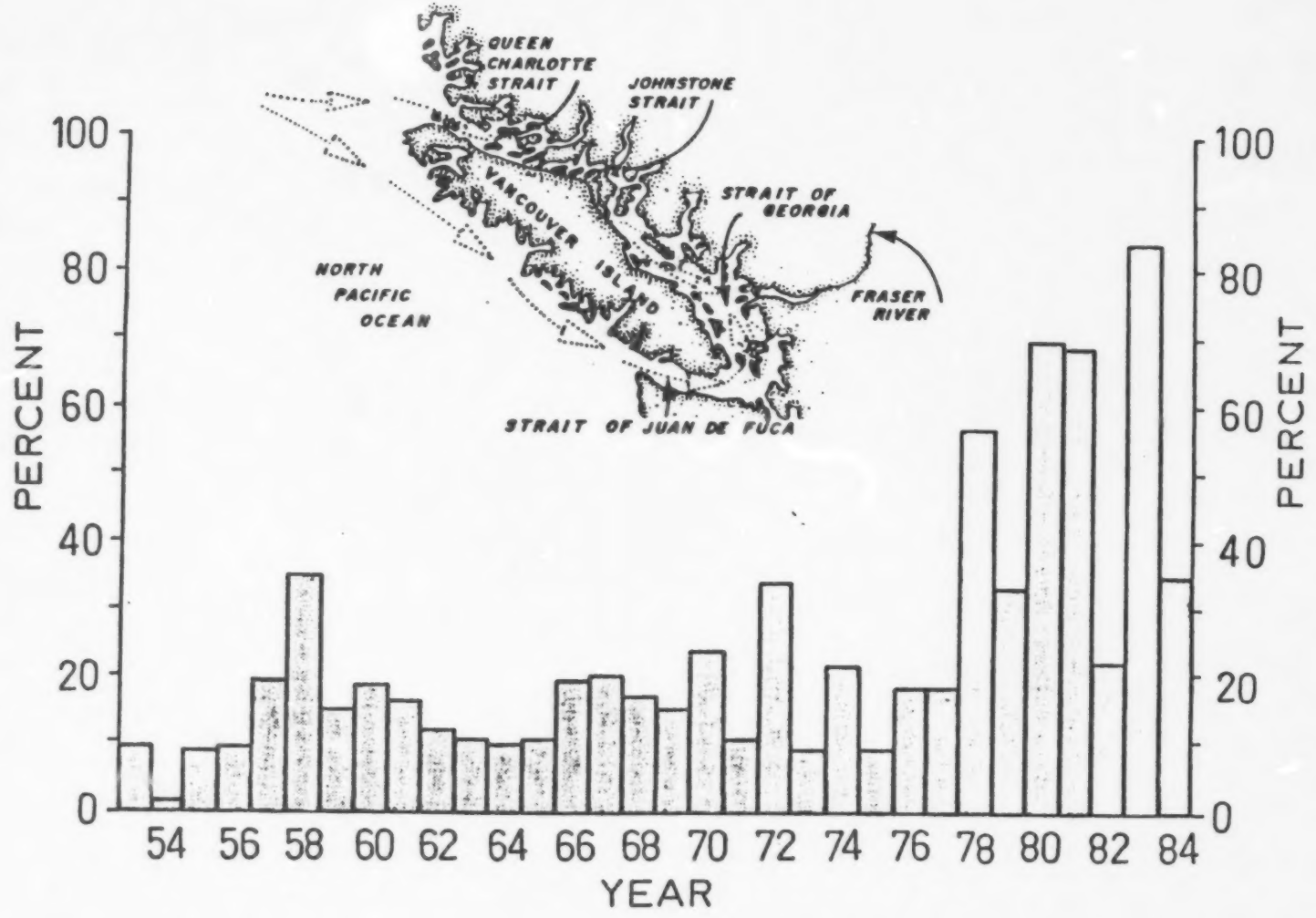


Fig. 9. Percentage of sockeye salmon approaching the Fraser River through Johnstone Strait during 1953-84. The inset shows the migratory routes of adult sockeye bound for the Fraser River and other southern British Columbia rivers (from Mysak 1985).

of the peninsula they may sense a weak Fraser River signal coming out of Queen Charlotte Sound and follow it through Johnstone Strait. Conversely, in normal years when they make a landfall south of the peninsula or in years when the coastal current is particularly successful in negotiating Brooks Peninsula, sockeye may sense Fraser River water in the coastal current and follow it southward through Juan de Fuca. Although the northern diversion problem doesn't appear to affect the marine survival and recruitment of Fraser River sockeye, it merits mentioning here because it provides a clear example of how changes in oceanic conditions can alter salmon migration routes.

FALL TRANSITION PERIOD

The Fall Transition may be a southward progressing event corresponding with a reversal of the coastal wind patterns, which marks the end of the upwelling season and the beginning of the downwelling season. During this period both the zooplankton (Fig. 5) and herring (Fig. 10) seem to be more abundant on the outer shelf than they were in the summer. This tendency may be related to the fact that the strength of the cross-shelf flow increases throughout the summer and reaches maximum strength just prior to the Fall Transition. There is some indication that hake are also more concentrated along the outer shelf in the fall. Thus herring may be particularly vulnerable to hake predation in the late summer-fall period, when there is potentially the greatest overlap in their distributions. Some hake begin migrating south in October but the availability of hake to bottom and mid-water trawls does not usually drop sharply until November (Alverson and Larkins 1969), when the main body of fish migrates southward, presumably in the equatorward flowing California Current (Bailey et al. 1982). In 1987, the Fall Transition was delayed until November and could account for the extended hake fishery off British Columbia. Adult herring begin leaving the offshore banks and move to overwintering areas in the lower Strait of Georgia. Juvenile herring remain on the offshore banks throughout the winter.

SUMMARY

Until recently most oceanographic programs on the west coast of Canada have been concerned with understanding the mechanisms affecting the spatial and temporal variability of the coastal ocean. These short-term projects have provided little insight into the long-term effects of oceanic factors on fisheries distribution and recruitment patterns. The plankton data are in the same state: the existing time series are barely long enough to define seasonal changes, let alone the amount of interannual variability in species composition and biomass. Long-term sea surface temperature records indicate that there pronounced, decadal-scale cycles along the coast. The years 1925-46, 1957-68, and 1976-present mark periods of anomalous warming, while the years 1947-56 and 1969-75 mark perious of anomalous cooling. Both these slowly varying and higher frequency cycles appear to affect the distribution and recruitment of major commercial fish stocks. However, the processes are poorly understood. As a consequence, two multi-disciplinary research programs involving oceanographers at the Institute of Ocean Sciences and fisheries biologists at the Pacific Biological Station were designed to clarify the effects of ocean variability on west coast fish stocks. The MASS project was undertaken to investigate the interrelationships between biophysical events and salmon distribution and survival, on an annual and interannual time scale. The major theme being

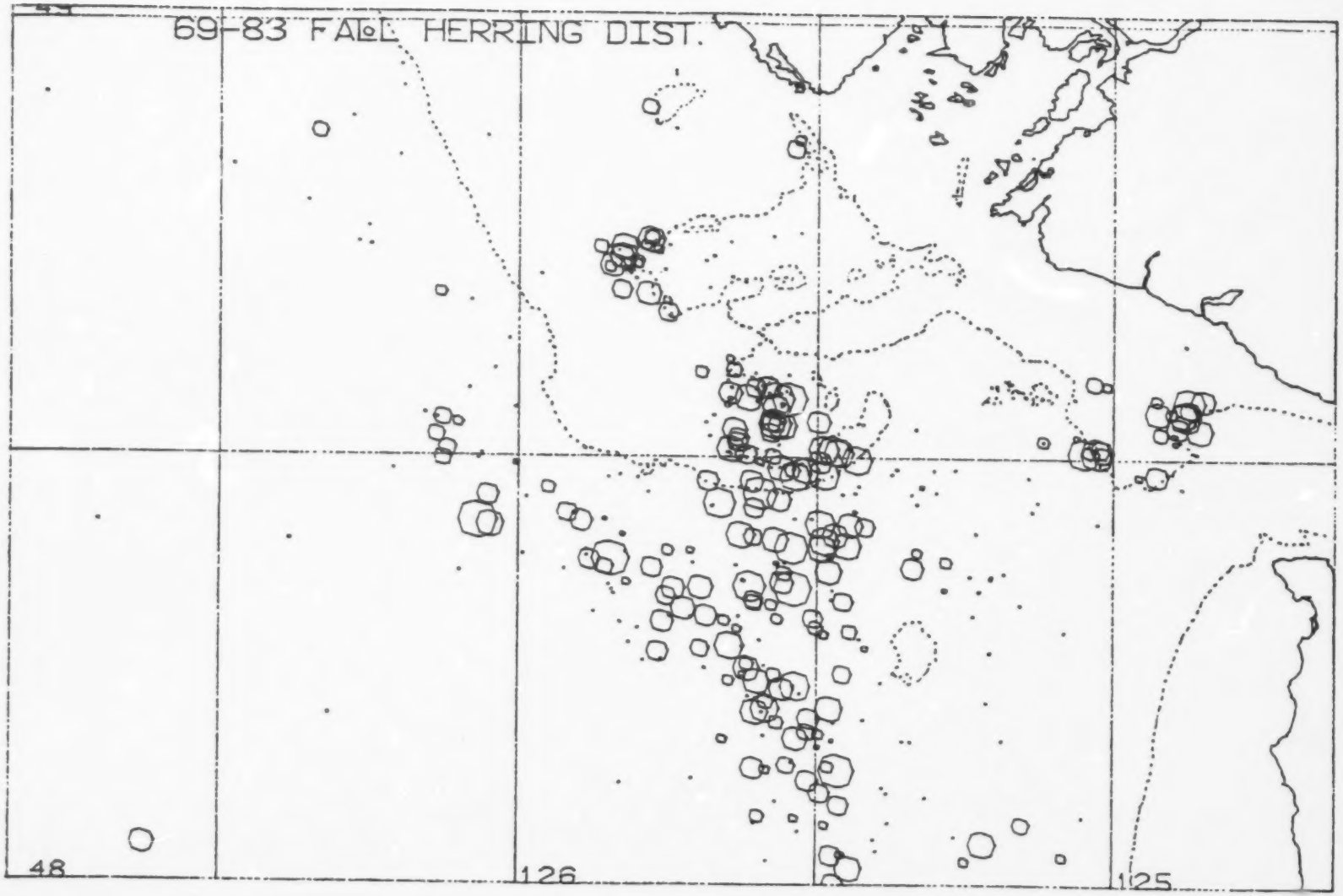


Fig. 10. Offshore distribution of herring observed during fall (September-November) surveys between 1969-83. The symbols are defined in Fig. 6.

investigated is that local circulation patterns affects the seaward migration routes and consequently the survival rate of juvenile salmon.

The La Pérouse project is a decadal-scale, multispecies study designed to identify the dominant physical processes that affect the circulation and water property structure; the low frequency variability in the zooplankton; and to formulate and test specific hypotheses concerning how interannual oceanic fluctuations affect fish distributions and survival. A major theme of current studies is that biophysical events affect the amount, and duration, of overlap in the prey and predators distribution fields, which in turn affects the survival rate of important commercial species like Pacific herring, and sablefish.

REFERENCES

Alverson, D. L. and H. A. Larkins. 1969. Status of knowledge of the Pacific hake resource. Calif. Mar. Res. Comm. CalCOFI Rept. 13: 24-31.

Ashton, H. J., V. Haist, and D. M. Ware. 1985. Observations on abundance and diet of Pacific mackerel (Scomber japonicus) caught off the west coast of Vancouver Island, September 1984. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. No. 1394: 11 p.

Aubrey, D. G. and K. O. Emery. 1986. Relative sea levels off Japan from tide-gauge records. Geolog. Soc. America Bull., 97: 194-205.

Bakun, A. 1973. Coastal upwelling indices, west coast of North America, 1946-71. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS SSRF 671: 103 p.

Bakun, A. 1975. Daily and weekly upwelling indices, west coast of North America, 1967-73. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS SSRF-67: 103 p.

Bailey, K. M., R. C. Francis, and P. R. Stevens. 1982. The life history and fishery of Pacific Whiting, Merluccius productus. CalCOFI Rept. XXIII: 81-98.

Barnett, T. 1984. The estimation of "global" sea level change: A problem of uniqueness. J. Geophys. Res. 89: 7980-7988.

Beamish, R. J. 1981. A preliminary report of Pacific hake studies conducted off the west coast of Vancouver Island. Can. MS Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1610: 43 p.

Brainard, R. E. and D. R. McLain. 1985. Subsurface temperature variability along the west coast of North and South America. Trop. Ocean-Atmosphere Newsletter, 31: 1-2.

Chelton, D. 1980. Low-frequency sea level variability along the west coast of North America. Ph.D. Thesis, Univ. of California, San Diego: 212 p.

Crawford, W. R. and R. E. Thomson. 1982. Continental Shelf waves of diurnal period along Vancouver Island. J. Geophys. Res. 87: 9516-9522.

Crawford, W. R. and R. E. Thomson. 1984. Diurnal-period continental shelf waves along Vancouver Island: A comparison of observations with theoretical models. J. Phys. Oceanogr. 14: 1629-1646.

Crawford, W. R., W. S. Huggett, M. J. Woodward, and P. E. Daniel. 1985. Summer circulation of the waters in Queen Charlotte Sound. Atmosphere-Ocean, 23: 393-413.

Davis, R. E. 1976. Predictability of sea surface temperature and sea level pressure anomalies over the Pacific Ocean. J. Phys. Oceanogr., 6: 249-266.

Denman, K. L., D. L. Mackas, H. J. Freeland, M. J. Austin and S. H. Hill. 1981. Persistent upwelling and meso-scale zones of high productivity off the west coast of Vancouver Island, Canada. p. 514-521. In: F. Richards [Ed.]. Coastal Upwelling, American Geophys. Union, Wash. D.C.

Denman, K. L. and H. J. Freeland. 1985. Correlation scales, objective mapping, and statistical test of geostrophy over the continental shelf. J. Mar. Res. 43: 517-539.

Dodimead, A. J. and G. L. Pickard. 1967. Annual changes in the oceanic coastal waters of the eastern Subarctic Pacific. J. Fish. Res. Board Canada 24: 2207-2227.

Dodimead, A. J. 1984. A review of some aspects of the physical oceanography of the continental shelf and slope waters off the west coast of Vancouver Island, British Columbia. Can. MS Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sc. No. 1773: 309 p.

Dodimead, A. J., F. Favorite, and T. Hirano. 1963. Salmon of the North Pacific Ocean - Part II. Review of oceanography of the subarctic Pacific region. Int. North Pac. Fish. Comm. Bull. 13: 195 p.

Doe, L. A. 1955. Offshore waters of the Canadian Pacific coast. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 12: 1-34.

Emery, W. J. and L. A. Hysak. 1980. Dynamical interpretation of satellite-sensed thermal features off Vancouver Island. J. Phys. Oceanogr. 10: 961-970.

Emery, W. J. and K. Hamilton. 1985. Atmospheric forcing of interannual variability in the northeast Pacific Ocean, connections with El Nino. J. Geophys. Res. 90: 857-868.

Enfield, D. B. and J. S. Allen. 1980. On the structure and dynamics of monthly mean sea level anomalies along the Pacific coast of North and South America. J. Phys. Oceanogr. 10: 557-578.

Fargo, J. and S. McKinnell. 1988. Effects of environment and stock size on year-class production for Rock sole (Lepidopsetta bilineata) in northern Hecate Strait, British Columbia. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 45: ***-***.

Favorite, F., A. J. Dodimead, and K. Nasu. 1976. Oceanography of the subarctic Pacific region, 1960-72. Int. North Pac. Fish. Comm. Bull. 33: 187 p.

Fleming, R. 1955. Review of oceanography of the northern Pacific. Int. North Pac. Fish. Comm. Bull. 2: 43 p.

Fofonoff, N. P. and S. Tabata. 1966. Variability of oceanographic conditions between Ocean Station P and Swiftsure Bank off the Pacific coast of Canada. J. Fish. Res. Board. Can. 23: 825-868.

Freeland, H. J. 1983. Low frequency currents observed off southern Vancouver Island. Can. Data Rep. Hydrog. Ocean Sci. 7: 80 p.

Freeland, H. J. 1987. Long time-series of filtered current records for the B.C. coast, 1979-1982. Can. Data Rep. Hydrog. Ocean Sci. 52: 75 p.

Freeland, H. J. and K. L. Denman. 1982. A topographically controlled upwelling center off southern Vancouver Island. J. Mar. Res. 40: 1069-1093.

Freeland, H. J., W. R. Crawford, and R. E. Thomson. 1984. Currents along the Pacific Coast of Canada. Atmosphere-ocean, 22: 151-172.

Fulton, J., M. N. Arai, and J. C. Mason. 1982. Euphausiids, coelenterates, ctenophores, and other zooplankton from the Canadian Pacific Coast Ichthyoplankton Survey, 1980. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. No. 1125: 75 p.

Giovando, L. F. 1985. Observations of seawater temperature and salinity at british Columbia shore stations, 1984. Can. Data Rep. Hydrogr. Ocean Sci. 41: 102 p.

Halliwell, G. R. Jr. and J. S. Allen. 1984. Large-scale sea level response to atmospheric forcing along the west coast of North America, summer 1973. J. Phys. Oceanogr. 14: 864-886.

Hamilton, K. 1985. A study of the variability of the return migration route of Fraser River sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka). Can. J. Zool. 63: 1930-1943.

Hamilton, K. 1986. The southern oscillation and coastal sea surface temperature variability off Oregon and northern California. Trop. Ocean-atmosphere Newsletter, 34: 6-7.

Haney, R. L. 1980. A numerical case study of the development of large-scale thermal anomalies in the central North Pacific. J. Phys. Oceanogr. 10: 541-556.

Hart, J. L. 1973. Pacific fishes of Canada. Fish. Res. Board Can. Bull. 180: 740 p.

Hartt, A. C. and M. B. Dell. 1986. Early oceanic migrations and growth of juvenile Pacific salmon and steelhead trout. Int. North Pac. Comm. Bull. 46: 105 p.

Hickey, B. M. 1979. The California Current system-hypotheses and facts Prog. in Oceanogr. 8: 191-279.

Hollister, H. 1964. Classification of monthly mean sea surface temperatures and salinities at shore stations along the British Columbia and adjacent American coasts, 1915-1962. Fish. Res. Board Can. MS Rep. Ser. 177: 123 p.

Hollister, H. and A. M. Sandnes. 1972. Sea surface temperatures and salinities at shore stations on the British Columbia coast, 1914-1970. Pac. Mar. Sci. Rep. 72-13: 93 p.

Huggett, W. S., W. R. Crawford, R. E. Thomson, and M. V. Woodward. 1987. Coastal Ocean Dynamics Experiment (CODE) Part 1. Data record of current observations, volume XIX. Institute of Ocean Sci., Sidney, 77 p.

Ikeda, M., L. A. Mysak, and W. J. Emery. 1984a. Observations and modelling of satellie-sensed meanders and eddies off Vancouver Island. J. Phys. Oceanogr. 14: 3-21.

Ikeda, M., L. A. Mysak, and W. J. Emery. 1984b. Seasonal variability in meanders of the California Current System off Vancouver Island. J. Geophys. Res. 89: 3487-3505.

Jamieson, G. S., A. C. Phillips, and W. S. Huggett. 1988. Effects of ocean variability on the abyndance of Dungeness crab larvae. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 45: (in press)

Lane, R. K. 1963. A model of seawater structure near the west coast of Vancouver Island, British Columbia. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 20: 939-967.

LeBlond, P. H., B. M. Hickey, and R. E. Thomson. 1986. Runoff driven coastal flow off British Columbia. p. 309-317. In: S. Skreslet [Ed.]. The role of freshwater outflow in coastal marine ecosystems. NATO AST Series, Vo. G7, Springer-Verlag.

Mackas, D. L., K. L. Denman, and A. F. Bennett. 1987. Least squares multiple tracer analysis of water mass composition. J. Geophys. Res. 92: 2907-2918.

McFarlane, G. A. and R. J. Beamish. 1986. Production of strony year-classes of sablefish (Anoplopoma fimbria) off the west coast of Canada. Int. N. Pac. Fish. Comm. Bull. 47: 191-202.

Mysak, L. A. 1977. On the stability of the California undercurrent off Vancouver Island. J. Phys. Oceanogr. 7: 904-917.

---------- 1986. El Nino, interannual variability and fisheries in the northeast Pacific Ocean. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 464-497.

Mysak, L. A. and F. Schott. 1977. Evidence for baroclinic instability of the Norwegian Current. J. Geophys. Res. 82: 2087-2095.

Mysak, L. A., W. W. Hsieh, T. R. Parsons. 1982. On the relationship between interannual baroclinic waves and fish populations in the Northeast Pacific. Biol. Oceanogr. 2: 63-103.

Peterman, R. M. 1987. Review of the components of Recruitment of Pacific Salmon. Amer. Fish. Soc. Symposium 1: 417-429.

Pickard, G. L. and D. McLeod. 1953. Seasonal variation of the temperature and salinity of surface waters of the British Columbia coast. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 10: 125-145.

Royer, T. C. 1981a. Baroclinic transport in the Gulf of Alaska. Part I. Seasonal variations of the Alaska Current. J. Mar. Res. 39: 239-250.

---------- 1981b. Baroclinic transport in the Gulf of Alaska. Part II. A fresh-water driven coastal current. J. Mar. Res. 39: 251-266.

Royer, T.C. and Q. Xiong. 1984. A possible warming in the Gulf of Alaska due to the 1982-83 el Nino-Southern Oscillation. Trop. Ocean. Atmos. Newsletter 24: 4-5.

Strub, P. T., J. S. Allen, A. Huyer, and R. L. Smith. 1987. Large-scale structure of the spring transition in the coastal ocean off western North America. J. Geophys. Res. 92: 1527-1544.

Tabata, S. 1984. Oceanographic factors influencing the distribution, migration and survival of Salmonids in the northeast Pacific Ocean - a review. p. 128-160. In: W. G. Pearcy (Ed.). The influence of ocean conditions on the production of salmonids in the North Pacific, a workshop. Oregon State Univ. Sea Grant College program ORESU-W-83-001, 327 p.

Tabata, S., B. Thomas, and D. Ramsden. 1986. Annual and interannual variability of steric sea level along line P in the northeast Pacific Ocean. J.Phys. Oceanogr. 16: 1378-1398.

Taylor, F. H. C. 1964. Life history and present status of British Columbia herring stocks. Fish. Res. Board Can. Bull. 143: 1-81.

Tester, A. L. 1948. The efficacy of catch limitations in regulating the British Columbia herring fishery. Trans. Royal Soc. Can. XLII: 135-163.

Thomson, R. E. 1972. An explanation for the warm water intrusion off the British Columbia coast. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 29: 103-107.

---------- 1981. Oceanography of the British Columbia Coast. Can. Spec. Publ. Fish. Aquat. Sci.: 56, Ottawa, 291 p.

---------- 1984. A cyclonic eddy over the continental margin of Vancouver Island: evidence for baroclinic instability. J. Phys. Oceanogr. 14: 1326-1348.

---------- 1986. Annual Report (1985) on Working Group "Ocean/Climate Changes and Sea Level", CCCO Meeting, Paris, WCP 1986: 34 p.

---------- 1987. The Queen Charlotte Islands: Physical Oceanography. In: G. Scudder and N. Gessler. (Eds.). Proc. Queen Charlotte Islands Symposium, August 1984. Agency Press, Vancouver, B.C.

Thomson, R. E., H. J. Freeland, and L. F. Giovando. 1984. Long-term seasurface temperature variations along the British Columbia coast. Trop. Ocean-Atmos. Newslett. 26: 9-11.

Thomson, R. E., W. R. Crawford, and W. S. Huggett. 1985a. Water property observations off the west coast of Vancouver Island during CODE: May 1979 to September 1980. Can. Data Rep. Hydrog. Ocean Sci. 33: 110 p.

Thomson, R. E., W. R. Crawford, H. J. Freeland, and W. S. Huggett. 1985b. Low-pass filtered current meter records for the west coast of Vancouver Island: Coastal Oceanic Dynamics Experiment, 1979-81. Can. Data Rep. Hydrog. Ocean Sci. 40: 102 p.

Thomson, R. E., B. M. Hickey, and P. LeBlond. 1988. The Vancouver Island Coastal Current: fisheries barrier and conduit. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 45: (in press).

Thomson, R. E. and J. F. R. Gower. 1986. A wind-induced mesoscale eddy over the Vancouver Island continental slope. J. Geophys. Res. 90: 8981-8993.

Thomson, R. E. and S. Tabata. 1987. Steric sea level trends at Ocean Station PAPA in the northeast Pacific Ocean. Marine Geodesy 11: 103-113.

Thomson, R. E. and R. E. Wilson. 1987. Coastal counter current and mesoscale eddy formation by tidal rectification near an oceanic cape. J. Phys. Oceanogr. 11: 2096-2126.

Tulley, J. P. 1942. Surface non-tidal currents in the approaches to Juan de Fuca Strait. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 5: 398-409.

Tulley, J. P. and L. A. Doe. 1953. Surface waters off the Canadian Pacific coast. Pac. Oceanogr. Group, File No. 7-20-4.

Tyler, A. V. and S. J. Westrheim. 1986. Effects of transport, temperature, and stock size on recruitment of Pacific cod (Gadus macrocephalus). Int. N. Pac. Fish. Comm. Bull. 47: 175-190.

Van de Plassche, O. 1986. Sea-level Research. Geo Books, Norwich, Great Britain. 618 p.

Vermeer, K. and S. J. Westrheim. 1982. Fish change in diets of Rhinocerous Auklets and their implications. In: D. N. Nettleship, G. A. Sanger, and P. F. Springer (Eds.). Marine Birds: their feeding ecology and commercial fisheries relationships. Can. Wildl. Serv. Spec. Publ.: 96-105.

Walters, C., M. Stocker, A. V. Tyler, and S. J. Westrheim. 1986. Interactions between Pacific cod (Gadus macrocephalus) and herring (Clupea harengus pallasi) in the Hecate Strait, British Columbia. Int. N. Pac. Fish. Comm. Bull. 47: 87-100.

Walters, C. J., R. Hilborn, R. M. Peterman, and M. Staley. 1978. Model for examining early ocean limitation of Pacific salmon production. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 35: 1303-1315.

Ware, D. M. and G. A. McFarlane. 1986. Relative impact of Pacific hake, sablefish and Pacific cod on west coast of Vancouver Island herring stocks. Int. N. Pac. Fish. Comm. Bull. 47: 67-77.

Ware, D. M. and R. Thomson. 1986. La Pérouse project: first annual progress report 1985. 25 p.

---------- 1987. La Pérouse project: second annual progress report 1986. 31 p.

Ware, D. M. and G. A. McFarlane. 1988. Fisheries Production Domains in the Northeast Pacific Ocean. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 45: (in press).

Wickett, P., J. Thomson, and A. Ballantyne. 1977. Transport computations for the North Pacific Ocean, 1976. Fish. and Mar. Serv. Data Rep. 34: 127 p.

Yao, T., H. J. Freeland, and L. A. Mysak. 1984. A comparison of low-frequency current observations off British Columbia with coastally-trapped waves. J. Phys. Oceanogr. 14: 22-34.

Table 1. Summary of recent studies investigating effects of oceanic factors on recruitment of B.C. fish stocks. Code indicating type of study: S = Statistical analysis of time series; ELH = Early life history studies; JLH = Juvenilie life history studies; RB = Reproductive biology.

Species	Duration of program		Principal investigators
A. Hecate Strait/Queen Charlotte Sound			
Pacific cod	1984	S	A. TYLER (Coordinator), W. CRAWFORD
Pacific herring	1984-1987	S	M. STOCKER, D. NOAKES
Rock sole	1985-1987	S	J. FARGO, S. McKINNELL
Pink and chum	1983-1986	JLH	R. LeBRASSEUR, B. HARGREAVES
B. West Coast Vancouver Island/Strait of Georgia			
LaPerouse Project			
Pacific herring	1985	S, JLH, RB	D. WARE, R. THOMSON (Coordinators) K. DENMAN, D. MACKAS
Sablefish	1984	S, ELH	G. McFARLANE, R. BEAMISH
Dungeness crab	1986	ELH	G. JAMIESON, W. HUGGETT W. CRAWFORD
Pacific cod	1988	S, RB	A. TYLER, J. FARGO, R. FOUCHER
MASS Project			
Sockeye, coho, chinook salmon	1986-1989	S, JLH	M. HEALEY (Coordinator), K. DENMAN A. GARGETT. K. GROOT, B. HARGREAVES H. FREELAND, K. HYATT, D. MACKAS R. THOMSON, K. VERMEER, J. GALLOWAY
Chinook salmon (Campbell River)	1982-1986	JLH	C. LEVINGS, C. McALLISTER
Pink, sockeye, chum	1976	S	D. BLACKBOURN

V REVIEWS OF DEPARTMENT OF FISHERIES AND OCEANS PROGRAMS ON RECRUITMENT

B. A REVIEW OF RECRUITMENT RELATED STUDIES AND RELEVANT PHYSICAL OCEANOGRAPHY PROGRAMS RECENTLY UNDERTAKEN BY THE DEPARTMENT OF FISHERIES AND OCEANS IN THE NEWFOUNDLAND AND SCOTIA-FUNDY REGIONS

by

K.T. Frank
Scotia-Fundy Region

INTRODUCTION

This paper is a synopsis of the major recruitment related studies undertaken by scientific staff of the Department of Fisheries and Oceans that are currently in progress or have been recently completed in the Newfoundland and Scotia-Fundy Regions. Relevant physical oceanographic studies are also reviewed. The paper fullfills a request by the Steering Committee for the National Workshop on Recruitment. This document is largely a compilation of summaries provided by the principal investigators of each study. I wish to thank them all for a rapid and concise response to the request for input to this document.

1. NEWFOUNDLAND REGION

A. FRESHWATER AND ANADROMOUS FISHES

Optimum Spawning Requirements and Juvenile Production Studies

This project involves a number of research studies on several Atlantic salmon stocks in insular Newfoundland.

The focus of salmon research is in two areas:

1. Investigate optimum spawning requirements to maximize smolt output as it relates to carrying capacity of different habitats and environmental conditions. This involves increasing egg deposition until carrying capacity is reached. From these data a stock-recruitment relationship will be developed.

2. Investigate salmonid biomass production capacity of different habitats as it relates to biological, physical, chemical, and climatic parameters.

The research is conducted on four river systems. A systematic approach has been taken to study the entire freshwater ecosystem in two of these streams. In a third river, adult salmon stocks are monitored and brood stock are removed for experimental stocking. A fourth river provides control stations for interaction studies with brook trout. An inventory of the biological, physical, and chemical parameters has been undertaken. Emmigrating and immigrating salmon are monitored near the outlet of two streams. Egg deposition undergoes natural

variation on one stream at approximately 600 eggs/100 mp^{-2} and is fixed at 240 eggs/100 mp^{-2} on another stream. Changes in smolt and adult production are observed. Juvenile production is monitored in representative types of habitat, and changes in growth, proportion of maturing male parr, and year-class interactions in relation to parr densities and habitats are monitored using electroseining and underwater observations. Competitive interactions with brook trout are being followed. Collaborative research is encouraged with researchers from Memorial University of Newfoundland to investigate aspects of the ecosystem which would not be studied by DFO (eg. in areas of hydrology, geomorphology, primary and secondary production, benthic studies and fish biology; investigations are coordinated by DFO).

I. NEWFOUNDLAND REGION RECRUITMENT RELATED STUDIES

A. Freshwater and Anadromous Fishes

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
1. Optimum Spawning Requirements and Juvenile Production Studies	1985-2000	Ongoing	Trepassey Bay, S.E. Newfoundland	Atlantic Salmon (juvenile)	Stocking of adult salmon to enhance egg deposition, population estimates of juveniles using depletion and mark-recapture techniques, measurement of habitat variables and potential competitors, survival analysis.	R. John Gibson
2. Optimum Spawning Requirements and Juvenile Production Studies	1985-2000	Ongoing	Trepassey Bay, S.E. Newfoundland	Atlantic Salmon (adults)	Fecundity estimates.	M.F. O'Connell

B. Develop and Apply New Methods for Projection of Recruitment from Stock

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
1. Development of Estimation Algorithms	N/A	1986-	N/A	N/A	Non-parametric statistics and simulation modelling; project long series; try to reconstruct series with various estimation algorithms applied to data subsets; test fits of projection to series.	G. Evans, J. Rice
2. Application of Algorithms to Management of Stocks	N/A	1986-	2J+3KL	(Northern) Cod	Pose a series of typical management questions about the stock; apply non-parametric estimation algorithms and project the probability distributions of future recruitment and/or stock sizes; use probability distributions to evaluate management options.	J. Rice, G. Evans
3. Application of Algorithms to Investigating Impact of Environmental Attributes on Recruitment	N/A	1986-	2J+3KL	(Northern) Cod	Extract major tends from Station 27 data; relate these environmental attributes to gross recruitment and residuals from stock analysis (above) using non-parametric estimation algorithms; interpret results.	J. Rice, G. Evans, S. Akenhead

Associated Publications:

Evans, G.T., and J.C. Rice. 1988. Predicting recruitment from stock size without the mediation of a functional relation. J. Cons. int. Explor. Mer, 45: 15-26.

Rice, J.C., and G.T. Evans. In Press. Tools for embracing uncertainty while managing cod in NAFO Divisions 2J+3KL. J. Cons. int. Explor. Mer, (14 p + 5 Fig.). (Accepted March 1988)

C. REPRODUCTIVE ECOLOGY OF HERRING AND CAPELIN

Trinity Bay Recruitment Study

From 1982 to 1986 a series of spring-fall surveys, aimed at herring and capelin larvae, were carried out in Trinity Bay. Prey for larvae were evaluated by sampling zooplankton with a fine mesh net, and measures of dry weight biomass of 5 size fractions were obtained. Temperature and salinity profiles were collected at each station. Correlation analysis is being carried out to examine assocations between larval abundance and measures of the biological and physical environment. Preliminary results are quite variable. Some significant assocations were identified although trends are not consistent throughout the data sets. Further analysis will focus on aspects of the environmental and meteorological conditions prevalent during the sampling period when significant assocations were identified.

The project is also concerned with biases in estimation of larval population parameters. A manuscript has been submitted for publication on changes in length of larval capelin due to preservation in formalin and anhydrous alcohol. Another manuscript is in preparation pertaining to estimates of larval population size frequency distributions using two different types of sampling gear. In 1987 field sampling was aimed at identifing patterns of vertical distribution, and also at ascertaining diel variability in standard oblique bongo tows. This information will be used in interpreting data collected during the surveys. No data collections are being made in 1988.

In 1984 a study of Trinity Bay was contracted to describe circulation and other aspects of the physical oceanography. This description is intended to aid in the interpretation of larval distribution and abudance data particularly as it relates to dispersal/retention.

C. Reproductive Ecology of Herring and Capelin

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
1. Trinity Bay Recruitment Study	1982-1987	Ongoing	Trinity Bay	Herring/Capelin	Larval fish surveys, coincident monitoring of biological and physical environmental; juvenile survival.	Edgar Dalley

D. FLEMISH CAP PROJECT

Feeding and Growth of Redfish Larvae in Relation to Survival and Timing of Production

Planning began for these projects in the mid-1970s and initial field sampling began in October 1977, with the final directed studies ending in July 1983. Field sampling was most intensive during 1979-81. This was a joint project between Canada and the U.S.S.R. carried out under the auspices of ICNAF/NAFO with preliminary results being reported each year through NAFO. Recent results of the project were discussed during the NAFO Special Session on recruitment (Lilly 1987) and a major review of the project was summarized by Grosslein and Lilly (1987). Presently, data collected as part of the project are being analyzed with completion expected within two years.

The major findings of the project to date centre on the growth and survival of redfish larvae. Larval survival between April and August 1978-81 varied widely and initially this can be linked directly to growth rate. Modelled estimates of physical dispersal can account for approximately one half of the average estimated larval mortality, but yearly comparisons have not been done. Analyses are presently underway summarizing the chlorophyll and nutrient relationships on Flemish Cap, analyzing the differences in larval redfish feeding between years. Future work planned includes: analysis of regional differences in feeding, growth and condition of larval redfish in relation to physical and biological factors; analysis of prey availability on the production of the cod stock, analysis of the influence of predation by cod on mortality of juvenile redfish and cod; information on fecundity and the percentages of females which spawned each year; and a more accurate estimate of the cod spawning stock size.

Physical Oceanographic Component of Flemish Cap International Experiment

The Flemish Cap International Experiment was an ICNAF study aimed at identifying the relationships of currents, water temperature, and of the environmental factors with the year-class strengths of cod and redfish on the Cap. The physical oceanographic component of the study was crippled by the loss of moored equipment. Preliminary analyses of most of the current and hydrographic data have been published, and more detailed interpretation of the hydrographic data and their implications for larval dispersion is underway as part of a doctoral thesis (Akenhead 1988).

D. Flemish Cap Project

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
1. Feeding and Growth of Redfish Larvae in Relation to Survival	1977-1983	1980-	Flemish Cap	Redfish	Field collections of food, feeding, size, growth and condition in relation to zooplankton community structure, physical oceanography, predators and corrected for physical advective losses. Relationships analyzed statistically and through simulations.	J. Anderson
2. Timing of Production	1977-1983	1985-	Flemish Cap	Cod and Redfish	Analysis of chlorophyll, nutrients, T-S and invert. zooplankton to examine timing of spring production in relation to survival and eventual recruitment.	J. Anderson, J. Booth, R. Keeley
3. Physical Oceanographic Component of Flemish Cap International Experiment	1979-1981	1979-	Flemish Cap	N/A	Hydrographic surveys; moored current and hydrographic measurements, drifter tracking.	S. Akenhead, C.K. Ross

E. RECRUITMENT STUDIES ON SQUID AND CRAB

Squid Recruitment Studies

Studies of squid recruitment in Newfoundland consist of two annual surveys, both of which are aimed at developing time series of recruitment indices based on catch rates. The earlier annual survey was initiated in 1984. It is carried out during February-March, about 2 months later than when the peak winter spawning activity is believed to take place. Sampling with midwater trawl is carried out in the northern Gulf Stream and Slope Water between 55°W and 60°W. The index of pre-recruit abundance is an overall catch rate of juveniles which at the time, range in size between 1-3 cm mantle length. To date, four annual surveys have been completed (1984-87), all of which occured during years of very low squid abundance at Newfoundland.

A second annual survey occurs during early June on the southwest slope of the Grand Bank. Squid are sampled by bottom trawling within Slope Water, which intrudes into the survey area during spring. The catch rate abundance index is generated only about one month before the inshore fishery commences. This survey was initiated in 1978 but incidental catches from groundfish surveys are available from the survey area as early as 1947. It is apparent that large concentrations on the Grand Bank in June do not always appear later inshore.

Crab Recruitment Studies

Attempts to develop a means of assessing snow crab biomass in Conception Bay using photographic techniques were initiated in May 1987. A portion of the commercial biomass results from within-season molting and recruitment. Prediction of absolute recruitment is attempted by enumerating the immediate pre-recruits from bottom photography. Molt-stages of biological samples are determined using mouthpart-staging techniques to estimate the proportion of immediate pre-recruits which would molt and recruit within the current fishing season.

E. Recruitment Studies on Squid and Crab

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
1. Squid Recruitment Studies	1978-	1985-	Northern Gulf Stream and Slope water between 55°W and 60°W S.W. Slope of Grand Bank	Squid	Midwater trawl, index of pre-recruit abundance, hydrographic data.	E. Dawe
2. Crab Recruitment Studies	1987-	1987-	Conception Bay	Snowcrab	In situ photography for pre-recruit enumeration, index of pre-recruit abundance, molting rate determination.	E. Dawe

II. SCOTIA-FUNDY REGION

A. POPULATION STUDIES OF HERRING IN GULF OF MAINE/BAY OF FUNDY

Bay of Fundy Larval Herring Survey

A survey of approximately 150 stations in the Bay of Fundy and eastern Gulf of Maine has been undertaken annually (Oct./Nov.) since 1972. Oblique bongo tows (0.505 and 0.333 mesh) provide a synopsis of the distribution of larval herring and of associated macrozooplankton abundance. An annual larval abundance index has been used in comparison with spawning stock biomass (i.e. hindcast) to tune the VPA in assessments since 1981 (Iles et al. 1985, Stephenson et al. 1987). The autumn larval herring abundance has shown little relationship with eventual recruitment. The persistence of annually predictable patches of larvae, observed in this survey, was key evidence in the development of the larval retention hypothesis (Iles and Sinclair 1982).

Site-Specific Studies of Larval Herring

The coastal waters of southwest Nova Scotia support a large herring population which is the basis for the largest herring fishery in the western Atlantic. The patch of larvae which results from spawning of this population is the largest and best defined of those in the Bay of Fundy and Gulf of Maine. Observations on this group of larvae were critical to development of the larval retention hypothesis, and annual surveys of abundance are used to tune stock assessments. This larval patch has been observed for site-specific studies to test portions of the larval retention hypothesis and other aspects of larval herring dynamics of relevance to recruitment. A study in November 1985 involving repetitive discrete depth samples (using MININESS) at 3-h intervals over 49 h indicated a definite semidiel vertical movement of herring larvae through as much as 50 m. A recent study (November 1987) sampled herring larvae in a similar manner over 6 depths to test further aspects of vertical movement, including timing and the relationship with prey and potential predators. Additional samples were designed to define the scale of horizontal patchiness of larvae.

Recovery of Georges Bank Herring

Spawning Atlantic herring (Clupea harengus L.) have been recorded on Georges Bank for the first time since the collapse in 1977 of what had once been the largest herring fishery in the northwest Atlantic. The reappearance after almost a decade raises the question of whether there has been resurgence of a residual extant Georges Bank population or recolonization by fish from neighbouring spawning groups. Three independent lines of evidence (biochemical attributes, age composition, and timing) indicate resurgence and support the discrete population concept in herring. There is no indication that stochastic events influenced the genetic structure of the herring population at Georges Bank after the collapse. The period directly after collapse, with the Georges Bank population showed no evidence of recovery, coincided with several years of low or average recruitment in neighbouring populations; only recently has there been generally good recruitment (as documented in neighbouring SW Nova Scotia) providing a chance for the Georges Bank population to recover. Larval abundance data (autumn surveys) are being collected to monitor recovery.

II. SCOTIA-FUNDY REGION RECRUITMENT RELATED STUDIES

A. Population studies of Herring in Gulf of Maine/Bay of Fundy

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
1. Bay of Fundy Larval Herring Survey	1972-	Ongoing	Bay of Fundy/ eastern Gulf of Maine	Atlantic Herring (larvae)	Annual synoptic field survey of approximatly 150 stations using oblique bongo.	R. Stephenson, T.D. Iles
2. Site-Specific Studies of Larval Herring	Nov. 1985 Nov. 1987	1986-1988	S.W. Nova Scotia	Atlantic Herring (larvae)	Repetitive depth stratified sampling in relation to time, tide, and prey.	R. Stephenson
3. Recovery of Georges Bank Herring	1977-	1987-	Georges Bank	Atlantic Herring (spawning stock)	Research surveys (Oct/Nov) define larval abundance and distribution, and sample spawning adults for age structure and stock identification.	R. Stephenson, T.D. Iles
4. Stock Recruitment Theory	N/A	Ongoing	General	Atlantic Herring	Comparative studies of Atlantic herring and other marine fish stocks. Historical analysis of the dynamics of recruitment in the 4WX herring stock.	T.D. Iles

B. ST. GEORGES BAY (SGB) FISHERIES AND ENVIRONMENTAL OCEANOGRAPHY PROGRAM

Reproductive Strategies of Marine Fishes

Studies of the early history of pelagic fish species were initiated in St. Georges Bay (SGB), Nova Scotia, in the early 1970s. As a study site this bay showed great potential in that it appeared reasonably representative of the southern Gulf of St. Lawrence yet was a manageable size from the point of view of sampling. More importantly there was evidence in the form of post-storm suspended sediment trails of a clockwise circulation within the bay. Such a circulation could act as a retention mechanism which would greatly increase the accuracy of estimates of larval growth and mortality. Subsequent physical oceanographic studies confirmed the presence of a semi-permanent gyre within St. Georges Bay (Petrie and Drinkwater 1977). In the absence of low frequency events such as storms, flushing time for the bay is about a month (Petrie and Drinkwater 1978); about the time required for a mackerel to hatch and attain a size of 25 mm.

a) Ichthyoplankton studies aimed at Atlantic mackerel (Scomber scombrus) revealed a close coupling between size and abundance of zooplankton and larval mackeral (Ware 1977). In addition to information on distribution of eggs and larvae, larval diet and timing of spawning, estimates of egg and larval mortality and of larval growth were made for four years.

   Mackerel egg production estimates within St. Georges Bay for six years indicated the possibility of using the bay as a proxy for total southern Gulf of St. Lawrence egg prodution, for the bay seems to regularly receive a proportional (based on area) share of total Gulf production. A 10 year time series of data is now being examined to see if this trend continues.

b) The presence of larval cohorts in the plankton (Lambert 1984) stimulated a study of reproductive strategies of marine fish (Lambert and Ware 1984) and led eventually to a detailed study of the spawning dynamics of Atlantic herring (Figures 6 and 7, Lambert 1987). At present a manuscript is being prepared detailing a hypothesis which links age structure and pattern of spawning to recruitment.

Larval Lobster Ecology

In addition, larval lobster studies begun in St. Georges Bay (Harding et al. 1982) led to a general recruitment model for Nova Scotia Atlantic coast lobster stocks (Harding et al. 1983).

Physical Oceanographic Component of SGB Program

Physical oceanographic investigations were undertaken concurrently with the biological studies in SGB. Early measurements included extensive temperature and salinity data as well as moored current meter arrays in the summers of 1974 and 1975 (Petrie and Drinkwater 1977a, b). Initial analyses of these data indicated a mean clockwise eddy with velocities near 0.1 m/s in the surface waters (Petrie and Drinkwater 1978a). Although energy was equally partitioned between the mean circulation, the tidal currents and the low-frequency velocity events, the latter determines the rate of exchange between the Bay and the Gulf

of St. Lawrence. Estimates of the flushing time for the tides and mean circulation is of the order of a month while low-frequency events could flush the Bay on a time scale of days. Petrie andDrinkwater (1978b) developed a numerical model of the mean circulation whichsuggested that the eddy was driven by a steady northeastward flow past the mouth of the Bay.

The dynamics of wind-forced motions in the Bay have been investigated by Drinkwater (1987, 1988) based on the 1974-75 current meter data and additional thermistor and current data collected in 1979. Wind events have been shown to influence the biological processes, e.g. a 2-fold decrease in lobster larvae abundance observed between successive ichthyoplankton surveys of the Bay in July, 1975, was attributed to wind-induced advection (Petrie and Drinkwater 1978). Also, lobster catches appear to be affected by wind driven temperature fluctuations (Drinkwater 1987).

B. St. Georges Bay (SGB) Fisheries and Environmental Ocenography Program

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
1. Reproductive Strategies of Marine Fishes	1973-1978 1981-1986	Ongoing	St. Georges Bay, N.S.	Mackerel	Egg and larval survey.	D.M. Ware, T.C. Lambert
	1973-1976	1976-1980	St. Georges Bay, N.S.	Herring	Egg and larval survey.	T.C. Lambert
2. Larval Lobster Ecology	1978	1981-1982	St. Georges Bay, N.S.	Lobster	Egg and larval survey.	G.C. Harding
3. Physical Oceanographic Component of SGB Program.	1973-1980	1980-	St. Georges Bay, N.S.		Hydrographic survey, moored current and hydrographic measurements, event analysis.	K. Drinkwater, B. Petrie

C. SCOTIAN SHELF ICHTHYOPLANKTON PROGRAM (SSIP)

Scotian Shelf Ichthyoplankton Survey Results

The intitial objectives of the Scotian Shelf Ichthyoplankton Program (SSIP) were:

(a) to discriminate the seasonal and geographic distribution of eggs and larvae of fish stocks on the Scotian Shelf;

(b) to estimate fish larval growth and mortality rates and how these change with developmental stage, season, and area; and

(c) to collect a wide spectrum of both physical and biological oceanographic parameters upon which to construct predictive stock-recruitment models.

Over the period 1977-82, objectives (a) and (c) were addressed by means of ichthyoplankton surveys using a grid of 150 stations covering the Scotian Shelf. A total of 34 surveys were conducted over this period so that there was an accumulated coverage of at least two surveys for each month of the year. In addition, three larval silver hake patch study surveys were conducted as part of objective (b). Further work towards objectives (b) evoloved into species specific process-oriented studies such as the Fisheries Ecology Program (FEP).

Stock Structure of Scotian Shelf Flatfish as Inferred from Examination of Ichthyoplankton Survey Data and Distribution of Mature Females

Data on egg distributions and timing of appearance of maximum egg densities were examined to determine the stock structure of three commercially important flatfish occurring on the Scotian Shelf: American plaice (*Hippoglossoides platessoides*), yellowtail flounder (*Limanda ferruginea*), witch flounder (*Glyptocephalus cynoglossus*). Distributions of sexually mature females obtained from research vessel surveys were used to further support inferences concerning spawning location. Using such information, more than one stock of both American plaice and yellowtail flounder appear to occur on the Scotian Shelf, but no conclusions could be drawn concerning witch flounder. In the case of American plaice and yellowtail flounder, the existing means of geographic aggregation of data do not appear to adequately represent stock structure. Little or no advection of eggs and larvae of those species appear to occur on the Scotian Shelf, supporting the hypothesis that current-driven retention areas promote stock discreteness in that region.

C. Scotian Shelf Ichthyoplankton Program (SSIP)

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
1. Scotian Shelf Ichthyoplankton Survey Results	1977-1982	Ongoing	Scotian Shelf	Marine fish species with planktonic egg and larval stages	Ichthyoplankton surveys using bongo, IKMT, neuston and meter net samplers; physical and chemical oceanography sampling on most surveys.	R. O'Boyle, Y. deLafontaine, P. Hurley, P. Kohler, P. Lett, J. Gagné
2. Stock Structure of Scotian Shelf Flatfish as Inferred from Examination of Ichthyoplankton Survey Data and Distribution of Mature Females	1979-1983	Completed	Scotian Shelf	American Plaice, Yellowtail, Witch Flounder	Examination of SSIP database for distribution and abundance of flatfish eggs and larvae. Also examination of MFD groundfish surveys database for distributions of mature flatfish.	J. Neilson, E. deBlois, P. Hurley

D. SOUTHWESTERN NOVA SCOTIA FISHERIES ECOLOGY PROGRAM

The common goal of this program is improved management advice through the study of factors affecting the productivity of an economically important groundfish stock. The haddock and, secondarily, the cod stock of the Southwest Scotian Shelf was considered most appropriate for this study. Some studies initiated during this program are continuing to evolve and are detailed below. The choice of the area and stocks is based on several reasons:

1. There are a number of interacting fisheries for haddock, cod, pollock, herring, scallop, and lobster allowing for consideration of multispecies approaches to research problems.
2. Baseline data existed for ichthyoplankton, circulation, and primary productivity.
3. Fish and shellfish stocks in the region are economically very important to the Nova Scotian fishing industry.
4. The history of the stocks (especially haddock) is well defined.

Fine Scale Analysis of Larval Survival

Analysis of the fine-scale vertical distribution of haddock eggs and larvae has revealed that: 1) density (sigma-t) characteristics of the water column determine the depth and vertical variance of late stage (=Stage IV) haddock eggs; 2) the centre of mass (depth, m) of the vertical distribution of haddock eggs increases with age such that Stage II eggs occur in the upper 20 m and Stage IV eggs occur between 30 and 40 m, this may explain the tendency for early stage haddock larvae to be associated with the depth range associated with the pycnocline; 3) age-dependent increases in the centre of mass do not produce divergent spatial distributions among eggs and larvae, rather temperature acting on development rate provides a simple explanation for the observed distributional patterns of haddock eggs and larvae from year-to-year; 4) food abundance and the intensity of stratification determines the condition of haddock larvae and possibly survival; 5) larvae in poor condition tend to show either bi-modal or surface-skewed depth distributions whereas larvae in good condition show a spiked, uni-modal depth distribution centred about the pycnocline; 6) pro-rating of larval abundance data by a proxy variable such as a stratification index (= suitability of the larval feeding environment) may yield a better projection of recruits than unadjusted, early larval abundance data commonly used to estimate spawning biomass; and 7) variability of the spring stratification may be a leading candidate in explaining interannual variability in larval survival and, possibly, recruitment.

Dispersal Strategies of Marine Fish Larvae

Broad-scale, horizontal patterns of distribution of the egg larval, and pelagic juvenile stages of cod and haddock have revealed that: 1) the early life stages of cod and haddock larvae originating from Browns Bank appear to be transported northwards along the 100 m isobath towards the Bay of Fundy; 2) the transport of larvae may result in enhanced feeding conditions for larvae because food concentrations are higher nearshore compared to food availability on the bank. This interpretation was supported by the tendency for larval haddock condition to be relatively high in the nearshore and lower in the offshore; 3) although very high densities of larval haddock were evident in 1986, their condition was low compared to 1985 and this mirrored the low microzooplankton

levels measured at the same time; 4) use of a single, small gear type precludes the quantitative assessment of larval drift during the entire pelagic phase because of net avoidance by the larger, rarer and more evasive larvae and pelagic juveniles; 5) pelagic juvenile cod, originally spawned offshore, are commonly found in the nearshore, shallow waters off southwestern Nova Scotia whereas haddock juveniles remain further offshore; 6) variable displacement from the spawning site from year-to-year is a characteristic of haddock egg and larval distributions and this applies to cod as well, and 7) other species, (such as Liparis, sculpins, gunnels, etc.) having spawning times similar to haddock in the region but differing in their location of spawning and egg type (demersal vs pelagic eggs) show strongly overlapping larval and juvenile patterns of distribution in direct contrast to those of haddock and cod.

Fisheries Ecology Program: Physical Oceanographic Component

The primary goal of the Browns Bank physical oceanographic study was to investigate physical processes influencing haddock recruitment. Emphasis was placed on the egg and larval stages of haddock. Earlier studies (The Cape Sable Experiment, 1978-80; Cape Sable Extension, 1980-83) had determined that a permanent clockwise gyre, driven by non-linear tidal forces, exists over the western cap of Browns and that the inshore currents off Cape Sable are directed into the Gulf of Maine, with a maximum in winter and strong seasonal cycle. The hypothesis guiding the initial steps of the Browns Bank study (based on SSIP conclusions) was that retention of haddock eggs and larvae on the Bank by the gyre is conducive to their survival, or conversely, that breakdown of the gyre and consequent loss of eggs and larvae from the Bank leads to poor haddock year classes.

The major elements of the physical oceanographic field experiment were: 1) year-long moored current meter measurements at three levels (mid-depth and 10-15 m from surface and bottom) centred around the western cap; and 2) a series of surface-layer dispersion studies using clusters of satellite- tracked drogues deployed at various locations on the Bank (eg. western cap, saddle). As expected, the moored measurements revealed a mean circulation consistent with a closed clockwise gyre in the upper layers over the western cap, but with strong low-frequency variability, driven by wind and tide, superimposed. The trajectories of the satellite-tracked drifters generally supported the gyre circulation, but also showed a high degree of temporal and spatial variability. In April and November, 1983, these observations suggest that the gyre may be broken down by wind-forced currents. In the absence of strong wind events (July/September 1983), drogues placed on the western cap were found to exit the Bank from the northern flank after an average "residence" time of 14 days and subsequently follow the coastal flow into the Gulf of Maine. This estimate of the "residence" time is roughly comparable to the time required for a drifter to circulate around the western cap in the gyre (10-20 days). On the other hand, estimates of the isotropic dispersion coefficient from the drogue cluster experiments are in the range of 100 m^2/s, which suggests that the time scale for horizontal dispersion processes alone to remove particles from the Bank is 25 to 45 days.

Spring Distributions of Plankton in the Browns Bank Area

The purpose of this project is to determine the general temporal and spatial pattern of the spring phytoplankton bloom in waters off southwest Nova

Scotia, and to determine possible underlying mechanisms for these observed patterns. This analysis includes data from Feb.-June 1983 and 1984; a final paper will include data from 1985.

The peak in chlorophyll biomass (based on monthly cruises) occurred at the end of March and beginning of April in both 1983 and 1984. It was followed by a decrease in May, coinciding with a maximum in zooplankton displacement volume, and an increase in June. There was little difference in timing across the area, although the magnitude of the bloom was greatest over Browns Bank and its northern flank. It had been expected that variations in bottom depth would serve to initiate the bloom earlier in shallow areas. However, a model of the vertically averaged mean light intensity suggested the bottom depth even in the shallowest regions was generally too deep, and that stratification was required to initiate a bloom. This condition was met in 1983 by early April.

Rapid changes in water masses on the order of a few days were also noted in late April 1983. The area underwent changes from warm to cold to much warmer (6°C) water over a period of 14 days, with a possible intrusion of oceanic water into the trough north of Browns Bank causing upward doming of isohalines. The result was a rapid decrease in chlorophyll biomass and increase in NO_3. Reasons for the water mass replacement are unknown at present.

Larval Drift

Drift vs retention of larval cod and haddock is the research topic under consideration. Through use of extensive collections of ichthyoplankton made off of SW Nova Scotia in 1985, a test of the competing hypotheses concerning larval drift/retention is nearing completion. Both cod and haddock are suspected to spawn offshore, on or around Browns Bank. The age of each of the larvae collected was estimated through the use of validated otolith microstructure techniques, which produces an age (in days) of extreme accuracy and precision. The distribution of these aged larvae is now being mapped and analyzed with spatial autocorrelation models. If the larvae do indeed drift inshore to a "nursery ground", the age-structured distributons should show a preponderance of younger larvae offshore, and older larvae inshore. The age-structured maps are just now being prepared.

Cohort Survival

The current paradigm suggests that year class strength is determined in the first year of life. As a first step towards testing this hypothesis, an entire year class of cod has been monitored successively from the egg stage through to the settled juveniles. The study was conducted off of SW Nova Scotia in 1985. Indices of relative egg and larval abundance are available from a variety of surveys, as are abundance indices for the pelagic and settled stages. Hatch date distributions have been calculated for each of the life history stages through otolith microstructure examination. Variations through time in the hatch date distribution of the cohort survivors will indicate the presence of a size- or age-selective mortality process. The relative abundance indices will then be used to infer the date and age at which the mortality events occurred.

D. Southwestern Nova Scotia Fisheries Ecology Program

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
1. Fine Scale Analysis of Larval Survival	1983-	1984-	SW Scotian Shelf, Gulf of Maine, Browns Bank	Haddock (egg-juvenile)	Empirical, diet analysis, egg staging, quantititave sampling of microzooplankton and macro-zooplankton, development of proxy variabiles for suitability of feeding environment.	K. Frank, J. McRuer
2. Dispersal Strategies of Marine Fish Larvae	1985-	1985-	SW Scotian Shelf, Gulf of Maine, Browns Bank	Haddock, Cod, Sand Lance, forage fish (egg-juvenile)	Concurrent nearshore/offshore sampling, BIONESS and TUCKER trawl, flourensce, morpnometric and biochemical conditions indices, age and growth based on otolith microstructure analysis.	K. Frank, J. McRuer, I. Suthers
3. Fisheries . .ology Program: Physical Oceanographic Component.	1983-1985	1984-	SW Nova Scotia	Haddock	Moored current meter measurements, satellite tracked drogues, hydrographic surveys, doppler current profile, physcal modelling.	P. Smith
4. Spring Distributions of Plankton in the Browns Bank Area	1983-1985	1986-1988	Browns Bank, SW Nova Scotia	Phytoplankton and Zooplankton (related to haddock ecology)	Hydrographic and plankton data were collected in conjunction with sampling for larval haddock. Comparisons will be made of timing and distributions of plankton and larval fish production.	I. Perry, P. Hurley, T. Koslow R. Fournier

D. Southwestern Nova Scotia Fisheries Ecology Program (Continued)

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
5. Larval Drift	1983-1985	1984-	SW Nova Scotia, Browns Bank	Cod, Haddock	Otolith microstruture: Spatial autocorrelation models.	S. Campana, P. Hurley, S. Smith
6. Cohort Survival	1984-1985	1984-	SW Nova Scotia, Browns Bank	Cod	Otolith microstructure: Hatch date distribution.	S. Campana, P. Hurley, I. Suthers

E. LARVAL AND JUVENILE GADID POPULATION STUDIES

Juvenile Fish Surveys on the Scotian Shelf: Implications for Year-Class Size Assessments

The potential for using juvenile fish surveys to estimate year-class strength was assessed from data collected during midwater trawl surveys in the Northwest Atlantic for cod, haddock, silver hake, and herring. Problems encountered in the development of juvenile fish abundance estimators included changes in availability to survey gear caused by diel or ontogentic vertical migrations. Data on the vertical and geographical distribution of juvenile fish illustratees the need for careful, species-specific survey design based on adequate knowledge of juvenile fish behaviour. For example, a change in methodology of a juvenile silver hake survey on the Scotian Shelf predicated on the results of a diel distribution study was associated with an increase in the precision of the abundance estimates. While the use of midwater trawl surveys for abundance estimates must be approached with caution, their use in general biological studies of distribution, behaviour, and even stock structure is advocated. In fact, such preliminary investigations are prerequisite to their practical application in juvenile abundance estimation.

Condition of Atlantic Cod After Transition to Exogenous Feeding: Morphometrics, Buoyancy and Predator Avoidance

The condition of Atlantic cod Gadus morhua L. larvae reared under food densities of 0, 2, 5, and 10 zooplankton m^{-1} was examined after the transition to exogenous feeding. Fulton's K (weight/length3) was not correlated with prey density in which larvae were reared, indicating that this index of condition is inappropriate for larvae immediately after yolk sac absorption. Fulton's K was also not positively correlated with the ability to avoid a simulated predator. However, predation avoidance was positively correlated with higher prey density. A second measure of condition, body height standardized for length, appeared to be a more sensitive indicator of condition but also did not correlate with the ability of larvae to avoid predation. The results of a buoyancy experiment indicated that poorly fed larvae may occur higher in the water column, and thus may be more vulnerable to predation or cause a sampling bias in ichthyoplankton studies.

Assessment of Histological/Biochemical Indices of Condition for Larval Gadids

Using a microbomb calorimeter capable of measuring the energy content of larvae weighing as little as 0.1 g dry weight, and histological techniques developed for Pacific coast species, the condition of gadid larvae reared under various prey regimes in the laboratory is being assessed. Preliminary histological results indicate that of 13 structures examined, the hindgut (the criterion for healthy larvae was a large portion of cells containing one to a few spheriod eosinophilic bodies) is the most sensitive indicator of nutritional well-being in haddock larvae. While the proportion of fed vs starved larvae correctly classified was high using such criteria, considerably lower success was obtained in differentiating larvae fed varyng densities of prey. Using the techniques developed in the laboratory, the study is being extended to include larvae caught in the field (Georges Bank).

Interactions of Caligid Ectoparasites and Juveniles Gadids on Georges Bank

The role of the ectoparasite (Caligus sp. Copepoda: Caligidae) in the northeast Georges Bank cod-haddock ecosystem was examined. The vertical distribution of the free-living adult stage and host-parasite relationships was described at two sites of contrasting hydrographic conditions, one being thermally stratified and the other isothermal. Cod had both a greater prevalence and number of Caligus sp. ectoparasites than did haddock. Preferred sites of ectoparasite attachment also differed. While no evidence of reduced fish condition was found as a function of parasite burden, circumstantial evidence is offered in support of the hypothesis that Caligus sp. ectoparasitism is a source of mortality for young haddock.

ELH Growth and Year-Class Strength

This project was designed to be a direct test of the relationship between early life history growth and year-class strength. For each of 5 years, samples of juvenile cod have been collected from Georges Bank. The otolith microstructure has been used to reconstruct the age and relative growth rate of each of the fish. Estimates of year-class strength will be derived from VPA after the year-classes enter the commercial fishery. If year-class strength is found to be correlated with larval and/or juvenile growth rate, the relationship could be used to predict recruitment to the fishery at a very early stage.

Diet Changes in Scotian Shelf Haddock During the Pelagic and Demersal Phases of the First Year of Life

The diet of haddock Melanogrammus aeglefinus from the southern Scotian Shelf was studied during their first year of life. While haddock were pelagic, copepods were the numerically dominant component in the diet, with a significant benthic contribution (amphipods, polychaetes) first ocurring in late summer. Examination of gut contents indicated that the transition from pelagic to demersal life occurred relatively suddenly. Catch rates did not vary with diel periodicity and gut contents of demersal fish had few occurrences of pelagic prey, indicating that diel migration was likely not an important aspect of the ecology of age-0 fish during the demersal phase of their lives. Dietary changes during the months subsequent to the pelagic- demersal transition were minor relative to those associated with the transition itself, although some trends in importance of dietary items were observed, notably with copepods and mysids. Such trends did not appear to be related to the size of age-0 haddock.

Comparison of Distributions of Age-0 Groundfish with Benthic Food Resources

Using data from MFD groundfish surveys, the distributions of age-0 groundfish will be compared with those of benthic invertebrates known to be of significance in fishes' diets. The area of concern will be Browns Bank.

Age-0 Silver Hake Feeding Ecology

The feeding of age-0 silver hake, a numerically dominant member of the juvenile fish community on the Scotian Shelf, was examined with respect to fish length, time of day and depth caught. Feeding patterns were also used to substantiate patterns of vertical migration previously postulated to occur.

Juvenile Fish in Scotian Shelf Basins

Previous investigations (Sameoto, Herman) of zooplankton productivity on the Scotian Shelf have indicated that basins supported denser populations of zooplankton than did banks, a result contrary to previous beliefs. Acoustic studies associated with those investigations indicated that small fish were also present in large numbers. The intent of this investigation is to identify the species of fish residing in these comparatively deep habitats and to ascertain the trophic interactions with the high concentrations of zooplankton found there.

Trawl Surveys for Juvenile Groundfish in the Sable Island Area

Annual groundfish trawling surveys for juvenile (two year old or less) fish in the shallow waters around Sable Island from 1981-1985 yielded 36 fish species of which the combined totals of haddock, silver hake, cod, and yellowtail flounder alone comprised 98, 95, 90, 96, and 78% or the total catches in the respective years. 0-group haddock, abundant in 1981 and 1982, were virtually absent from 1983-1985. This corresponded to diminution of abundance of age-1 and age-2 fish in the subsequent years. Juvenile cod were also an important constituent of catches but 0-group cod were rare in all years. Silver hake, yellowtail flounder and winter flounder were common but not as juveniles. Length-frequency distributions showed year-to-year changes in relative year-class strength and were also used with catch rates to show that there was no absolute segregation of age-groups in relation to depth or geographic sector but catch rates indicated differences in geographic distributions between age-groups, which varied in most cases from year to year.

Catch rates of 0-group haddock did not show good correlation with estimated population size from independent sources, but age-1 haddock and age-2 cod catches did. Such correlation indicates the value of the surveys as a possible means of providing indices of abundance of haddock and cod stocks of the central Scotian Shelf.

Ecology of Age-0 Cod and Haddock on Georges Bank

Diel changes in the vertical distributions of age-0 pelagic cod and haddock were examined in isothermal and stratified waters of Georges Bank in June 1985. Discrete depth collections every 4-hr indicated cod had more extensive changes in depth than haddock. At both sites, cod were predominately near bottom during the day and in midwater at night, although at the stratified site this upward migration may have been limited by the thermocline. Age-0 haddock occurred about the thermocline at the stratified site, with little diel change of depth. At the mixed site, haddock were distributed near bottom, but were caught throughout the water during the periods before noon and midnight. For both cod and haddock, small fish (30 mm standard length for cod, 40 mm for haddock) were also distributed at shallower depths and undertook less extensive migrations than larger fish. Time-dependent vertical distributions clearly demonstrate overlap at the mixed site, and the separation of distributions at the stratified site. To investigate factors potentially contributing to these diel changes in depth, distributions of temperature, salinity, light, preferred zooplankton prey, and tidal current speed were examined. Vertical migrations of

cod were related to the diel light cycle at both sites. At the mixed site, the number of haddock caught, a function of their distribution off the bottom, was inversely related to the mean tidal current speed during the sampling period. This relationship may have been mediated through the effect of current speed on the distribution of the preferred prey.

Physiological condition of cod and haddock, and zooplankton biomass, was significantly greater at the mixed site. Electivity indices indicated Neomysis americana, which ocurred at high densities, was the preferred prey of both fish species at this stie. At the stratified site, cod overlapped in deep water with the distribution of its preferred prey Tisbe sp., while distributions of haddock and its preferred prey Limachina sp. overlapped in upper waters. The ability of cod and haddock to co-occur when prey are plentiful, and separate when prey are scarce, may provide a means to reduce interspecific competition. It also implies that prediction of haddock vertical distributions for survey purposes may depend on the thermal structure, distributions of prey, and tidal current speed.

E. Larval and Juvenile Gadid Population Studies

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
1. Juvenile Fish Surveys on the Scotian Shelf: Implications for Year-Class Assessments	1978-1986	Complete	Scotian Shelf, Bay of Fundy, Georges Bank	Cod, Haddock, Silver Hake, Herring	Examination of time series of surveys.	P. Koeller, P. Hurley, P. Perley, J. Neilson
2. Condition of Atlantic Cod After Transition to Exogenous Feeding: Morphometrics, Buoyancy and Predator Avoidance.	1985	Complete	Biological Station, St. Andrews	Cod	Laboratory-based study.	J. Neilson, I. Perry, P. Valerio, K. Waiwood
3. Assessment of Histological Biochemical Indices of Condition for Larval Gadids	1986-1988	Ongoing	Georges Bank	Cod, Haddock	Combination laboratory/field study.	J. Neilson, I. Perry, K. Waiwood
4. Interactions of Caligid Ectoparasites and Juvenile Gadids on Georges Bank	1985	Complete	Georges Bank	Cod, Haddock	Field study reporting serendipitous findings.	J. Neilson, I. Perry, J. Scott, P. Valerio
5. ELH Growth and Year-Class Strength	1984-1988	Ongoing	Georges Bank	Cod	Otolith microstructure and time series analysis.	S. Campana
6. Diet Changes in Scotian Shelf Haddock During the Pelagic and Demersal Phases of the First Year of Life	1983-1985	Complete	Scotian Shelf	Haddock	Field study.	R. Mahon, J. Neilson

E. Larval and Juvenile Gadid Population Studies (Continued)

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
7. Comparison of Distributions of Age-0 Groundfish with Benthic Food Resources	1978-1982	1988	Browns Bank	Cod, Haddock, Plaice, Yellowtail, Pollock	Field study.	D. Wildish, J. Neilson
8. Age-0 Silver Hake Feeding Ecology	1980-1983	1988	Scotian Shelf	Silver Hake	Field study.	P. Koeller, J. Neilson, D. Markle
9. Juvenile Fish in Scotian Shelf Basins	1988-	1988-	Scotian Shelf (Emerald, LaHave basins)	Gadids	Two-vessel study.	D. Sameoto, A. Herman, J. Neilson
10. Trawl Surveys for Juvenile Groundfish in the Sable Island Area	1981-1985	Complete	Sable Island area	Groundfish	Multi-year survey.	J. Scott
11. Ecology of Age-0 Cod and Haddock on Georges Bank	1985-1987	1985-1989	Georges Bank	Cod, Haddock	Investigates the distributions relative to tidal fronts, vertical migratory behaviour, and trophic interactions of age-0 pelagic phase cod and haddock. This information is crucial to the design of surveys for advance estimates of abundance and recruitment.	J. Neilson, I. Perry

F. SHELLFISH RECRUITMENT STUDIES

Recruitment into the Coastal Lobster Fishery Along the Atlantic Coast of Nova Scotia

The lobster landings along the Atlantic coast of Nova Scotia, from Richmond to Lunenburg County, have fluctuated drastically since the turn of the century with a periodicity of approximately 20 years. The most recent decline bottomed-out in the late 1970s with landings 1 to 10% of those during the previous peak years in the mid-1950s and the subsequent recovery in the mid-1980s.

There have been a number of hypotheses proposed on the causes behind this cyclical fishery (eg. construction of Canso Causeway, fishing pressure, various predator/prey hypotheses, climatic changes). Our approach to studying recruitment along the Atlantic coast of Nova Scotia has concentrated on the larval ecology. Huntsman observed that warm water (16°C) stimulates rapid growth of the planktonic larvae, and he proposed that this is necessary for successful molt completion and bottom settlement before cooler temperatures slow or halt development in the fall. Optimal temperatures of sufficient duration for the successful completion of larval developmnt are probably only found in inlets along this coast. Furthermore, the appropriate prey spectra for larval survival is also only found in coastal waters (Harding et al. 1983). Larval lobster surveys were undertaken in and slightly offshore of St. Margaret's Bay, N.S., with the ultimate goal of estimating production and mortality for comparison with the well-studied and stable lobster fishery in the southern Gulf of St. Lawrence.

During the period of the lobster larvae studies (1982-84) a physical oceanographic study was undertaken which included moored thermistor chains in 1984. The data reveal periods of intense upwelling when the upper layer waters were completely replaced. Comparison with temperature data collected as part of a long-term monitoring program using Ryan thermographs (Dobson and Petrie 1985) shows that these upwelling events occurred simultaneously along most of the Atlantic coast of Nova Scotia. This is driven by the alongshelf wind stress in the classical Ekman sense (Petrie et al. 1987). We are presently developing an Ekman model using geostrophic wind data from 1946 to 1986 to test the hypothesis that increased alongshelf winds may reduce lobster recruitment along the Atlantic coast through greater offshore transport.

Recruitment of Larval Lobsters Along SW Nova Scotia, Bay of Fundy, and Gulf of Maine

In a recent reinterpretation of Stasko and Gordon's (1983) larval surveys, it was calculated that between 92 and 97% of the larval recruitment off southwest Nova Scotia occurred in the offshore region from Stage I and IV production estimates, respectively (Harding and Trites 1988).

Lagrangian measurements (from surface and bottom drifter releases) were taken at the same time as the larval surveys. To investigate the hypothesis that inshore stocks receive larval recruits from the offshore we estimated current patterns and velocities (3-16 cm/s) from these drifter releases(Harding and Trities 1988). Limits of larval dispersion were then estimated from surface

currents and the physiological and ecological traits of the larval lobster. It would appear that offshore lobster could make an importantcontribution to recruitment throughout the eastern sector of the Gulf of Maine.

Studies planned in the near future will examine the degree of retention of larvae on offshore banks by physical forces or a combination of the interactions between physical oceanography and the behavioural traits of the larvae. Larval release seems to be largely confined to shoal waters. Substaging of molts will be used to improve estimates of larval drift time from the banks. Changes in survival from the condition of these expatriates, using either total lipid content or lipid types as an indicator will be examined. A more comprehensive estimate or larval production off southwest Nova Scotia will be undertaken given the improved knowledge of the vertical distribution of the four planktonic stages of the lobster and more sophisticated collecting gear (Harding et al. 1987).

Scallop Population Studies

The spatial and temporal distribution of sea scallop larvae in relation to (i) concentrations of recruited scallops; and (ii) the physical and biological environment is presently under investigation. The study has evolved considerably since 1984 when the horizontal and vertical distribution of sea scallop larvae was studied in three fall cruises.

In 1986 and 1987 the horizontal and vertical distribution of larvae on Georges Bank was studied and the analysis is in progress. The vertical distribution of larvae was shown to be a function of water column stability in 1986; whether or not this is food related was investigated in 1987.

In October of 1988, larval sea scallop distribution in the frontal zone on the northern flank of Georges Bank will be studied. This is in conjunction with a physical oceanographic study taking place on cross-frontal exchange.

Simultaneous to the field studies, methods to assess larval age and condition in animals from nature have been developed in the laboratory. Initial results of using growth rings to age the larvae were promising (see Hurley et al. 1988) but further lab study indicated that the rate of growth line deposition is a function of temperature and recent feeding history. It may still be possible to assess the relative growth rates of larvae in nature but estimating the true age of the larvae remains problematic.

A lipid index to assess the energy stores of sea scallop larvae in nature appears more promising. In 1987 larvae from different food regimes were stained and prelimianry results suggest that there is food limitation of energy storage.

The Role of the Georges Bank Tidal Front on Plankton Dispersal or Retention

Tidal mixing fronts in continental shelf areas are regions of strong gradients in physical properties and currents. Variations in physical and transport processes in such regions may define recruitment of marine species by influencing the distributions of early life-history stages in relation to the appropriate location for the population. A study of the relative roles of physical and biological/behavioural processes that determine zoo- and

ichthyoplankton distributions and physiological condition about the strong tidal front on the northern flank of Georges Bank is proposed. The hypothesis to be tested is that physical processes, and differences in biological processes such as vertical migration or water mass preferences, are responsible for potential dispersal of lobster larvae to southwest Nova Scotia, and retention of scallop and fish larvae on Georges Bank. The generally strong convergence at tidal fronts will also allow us to test whether elevated concentrations of potential zooplankton prey lead to enhanced physiological condition of fish larvae. This program will be closely coordinated with a detailed physical oceanographic study of this front to be conducted by Physical Chemical Sciences Branch at BIO.

F. Shellfish Recruitment Studies

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
1. Recruitment into the Coastal Lobster Fishery Along the Atlantic Coast of Nova Scotia	1982-1984	1984-	Atlantic coast of Nova Scotia	Lobster	Larval survey, moored thermistor, hydrographic survey, spectral analysis of temperature and wind data.	G. Harding, K. Drinkwater, J. Pringle
2. Recruitment of Larval Lobsters Along SW Nova Scotia, Bay of Fundy, and Gulf of Maine	1984-	1984-	Gulf of Maine	Lobster	Analysis of historical data, larval survey, and depth distribution. Lagrangian studies based on drift bottles and satelite tracked drogues.	G. Harding, J. Pringle, R. Trites, K. Drinkwater
3. Scallop Population Studies	1983-1988	1990-1992	Gulf of Maine, especially Georges Bank and Bay of Fundy	Sea Scallops	Discrete depth sampling (i.e. pump), hydrographic data, laboratory age and growth studies, lipid index evaluation.	M.J. Tremblay, M.M. Sinclair
4. The Role of the Georges Bank Tidal Front on Plankton Dispersal or Retention	1988-1989 summer	1988-1991	Georges Bank (northern flank)	Lobster, Scallop, Finfish (silver hake, redfish, yellowtail founder)	In close cooperation with a detailed physical oceanograhic study of the tidal front on northern Georges Bank, this study will examine along-front and cross-frontal distributions of zoo- and ichthyo-plankton. It will examine the relative roles of physical and biological processes in the frontal region on the retention or dispersal of larvae on Georges Bank or into the Gulf of Maine.	I. Perry, G. Harding, J. Tremblay, M. Sinclair, J. Pringle, K. Drinkwater

III. INTER-REGIONAL AND MULTI-NATIONAL STUDIES

A. INTER-REGIONAL

Labrador Shelf Fish Production Studies

The eastern entrance to Hudson Strait is characterized by intense tidal mixing which reduces stratification and results in nutrient-enriched surface waters during the summer (Drinkwater and Jones 1987). Sutcliffe et al. (1983) found evidence that these surface waters are advected onto the Labrador Shelf by the residual circulation and hypothesized that the resultant nutrient influx leads to increased primary production on the shelf. This, in turn, drives a developing food chain as the watermass is carried further southward by the mean currents. The abundance of the 2J3KL cod stocks was related to changes in salinity with higher salinity promoting increased production. It was argued that in years of high freshwater-outflow from Hudson Bay, the increased stratification suppresses mixing in eastern Hudson Strait which reduces nutrients and lowers the salinity of the water on the Labrador Shelf. The reduction in nutrients results in lower primary production and eventually less food for the cod. The significance of Hudson Strait outflow on the Labrador Shelf food chain as proposed by Sutcliffe et al. (1983), if true, suggests a relative increase in the biomass of larger-sized organisms from north to south along the Labrador Shelf. In 1985 a cruise was dedicated to testing this hypothesis by measuring particle-size spectra over the Shelf. The sampling grid was designed to evaluate not only the along-shelf gradients in particle size spectra but also cross-shelf gradients and the influence of bathymetric variations. The particle-size range included bacteria and phytoplankton (measured with a Coulter Counter), zooplankton (from vertical net hauls), and fish (estimated using ECOLOG). Additional information was collected on the benthos, bird distributions, temperature-salinity characteristics, currents, nutrient concentrations and chlorophyll. Processing of the data is near completion and the detailed analysis is ongoing.

Warm-Core Ring and Ekman Transport Effects on Fish Recruitment

Warm-core rings formed from meanders in the Gulf Stream can entrain large volumes of water off of the continental shelf between the Grand Banks and the mid-Atlantic Bight. Several authors have suggested that the shelf water entrained by these rings may transport enough fish eggs and larvae to significantly reduce marine fish recruitment. This hypothesis has recently been tested by Myers and Drinkwater (1986, 1987, 1988) using entrainment indices derived from 14 years of satellite imagery and recruitment indices for 25 commercially important stocks of fish and shellfish. The Slope Water area adjacent to the continental shelf was divided into nine regions which were chosen to correspond to the approximate limits of the fish stocks. An entrainment index including the position and number of warm-core rings was derived for each of these regions from weekly satellite images during the period 1973 through 1986. These data were then combined with estimates of spawning time and the duration of the larval stages to create stock-specific annual indices of ring activity. The results showed strong evidence that a reduction in recruitment of groundfish in the Northwest Atlantic is associated with warm-core ring activity. Recruitment variation in 15 of the 17 groundfish stocks examined was negatively related to ring activity. There was, however, no

consistent relationship between recruitment of pelagic stocks and warm-core ring activity. Some of the pelagic species that wereincluded in the analysis spawned sufficiently far from the edge of the shelf that they may not be susceptible to the effects of the rings.

Recently efforts have been directed towards an investigation of the hypothesis that offshore Ekman transport reduces recruitment on the Scotian and Labrador shelves. Data-driven simulations are being carried out of egg and larval cross-shelf transport for the years 1946-86 on 10 separate stocks and will be compared with the observed recruitment. In the model, eggs are released on the spawning grounds each day during the spawning season. The cross-shelf position of the eggs and subsequent larvae are tracked assuming advection through alongshelf wind-generated Ekman transport. The stress estimates are based on six hourly geostrophic winds. Eggs or larvae that are transported beyond the continental shelf are assumed to die. The result from each years simulation will be the integral of each individual day, weighted by the proportion of eggs estimated to be spawned on that day. The model also includes the influence of vertical migration of the larvae and the time-dependent nature of the Ekman layer depth.

Climate Variability and Recruitment

The physical oceanographic effects of the freshwater discharge from the St. Lawrence River are not limited to the Gulf of St. Lawrence but were shown from temperature and salinity data to extend to the Scotian Shelf and into the Gulf of Maine (Sutcliffe et al. 1976, Drinkwater et al. 1979). Sutcliffe et al. (1977) investigated the catches of 17 commercial marine species of fish and shellfish from the Gulf of Maine and found through exploratory analysis that 10 were significantly correlated with local coastal sea surface temperatures as well as the St. Lawrence River discharge. Maximum correlations again occurred when the fish was lagged by a time approximately matching its age at commercial size. Northern-oriented species were found to be negatively correlated to temperature while southern species were positively correlated. Recently the time series used by Sutcliffe and co-workers in their correlative studies were updated and the relationships re-examined (Drinkwater 1987, Drinkwater and Myers 1987). Using linear regressions based on data from the earlier work, predictions of fish catch or abundance were calculated for the intervening years and compared to the actual catch data. For 6 of the 13 stocks investigated correlations over the 9-14 yr of new data remained high and of the same sign; however, individually none was found to be statistically significant after accounting for the loss of degrees of freedom due to the high autocorrelation in the data (Drinkwater and Myers 1987). The hypothesis of an overall environmental effect on landings in general could not be substantiated as the correlation coefficient for 5 of the 13 stocks reversed sign using the new data, but changes in fishing effort are believed to mask detection of environmental effects in the landings of several stocks. The use of landings, uncorrected for fishing effort, in correlative studies with environmental variables can cause problems in interpretation and later confirmation of relationships (Drinkwater and Myers 1987), however, it is encouraging to note that environment-fish relationships also exist using VPA estimates (Drinkwater 1987).

Northwest Atlantic Capelin Recruitment Studies

Large-scale wind forcing events are known to affect recruitment in beach-spawning capelin and it is hypothesized that similar events affected recruitment of capelin spawned on the SE Shoal of the Grand Bank, a discrete spawning area 350 km from the nearest spawning beach. Specifically we are testing the hypothesis that larvae required a destabilization of the density stratification from storms for effective transport from the spawning beds to the surface waters.

Results of ichthyoplankton surveys conducted in September of 1986 and 1987 were similar in several respects: 1) high concentrations of capelin larvae occured in areas where dense spawning concentrations were observed by hydroacoustic methods in June/July; 2) a mixture of different sizes of larvae (range: 4-26 mm) was observed indicating that larvae hatching at different times were retained in the spawning area; 3) Nov./Dec. surveys conducted in both years showed the concentration of larvae had remained stationary but increased in size consistent with known growth rates; and 4) all sizes of larvae showed evidence of vertical migration behaviour, the daily range increasing with larval size. The dominant larval cohort formed in 1986 coincided with the passage of Tropical Storm Charley which had a pronounced affect on the hydrographic structure of the water column. Other, less abundant cohorts were formed in the absence of such events and what, if any, ecological advantages larvae might accrue from a selective emergence timing mechanism are being investigated. The study in ongoing and several cruises are planned for 1988 and 1989 to address the problem.

SE Shoal Capelin Recruitment Study: Physical Oceanographic Component

The physical oceanographic component of the SE Shoal larval capelin study originated as the SE Shoal Exchange Study. Its aims were to determine the origin and temporal variablity of the relatively-warm bottom water on the Shoal, and infer horizontal and vertical exchange rates from the warm water, seasonal evolution. The field program consisted of hydrographic observations (largely on a ship-of-opportunity basis) in 1985-87, pilot moored measurements in 1986, and detailed moored measurements in 1987. The preliminary results indicate substantial interannual variability in hydrographic properties on the Shoal, and significant influences on currents and water temperatures by atmospheric forcing.

Continued physical oceanographic field measurements on SE Shoal are planned for 1988 and 1989 as part of the larval capelin study, in collaboration with McGill University and the Biological Sciences Branch of Newfoundland and Scotia-Fundy Regions.

Greenhouse Effect on Canadian Atlantic Fisheries

In a scenario with a doubling of present day atmospheric CO_2 concentrations, Wright et al. (1986) predicted several qualitative changes in the physical oceanographic features and properties of the continental shelf waters off eastern Canada. In turn, we have speculated on the impact of such changes on the location, composition, and recruitment of fish populations inhabiting the Gulf of Maine to the Labrador Shelf. For example, a general

warming and freshening of the continental shelf waters is anticipated. This may lead to shifts in the geographic distribution of several commercially important groundfish stocks that are presently at the limit of their range. Earlier arrival times and later departures are expected for pelagic speices, which undergo extensive seasonal migrations, under a warmer oceanic regime. Temperature dependent changes in the relative magnitudes of energy flux through the planktonic and benthic components of the food web is one possible mechanism underlying structural changes in fish stock composition. Higher temperatures and increased stratification may result in lesser amounts of organic material reaching the bottom and tend to favour the proliferation of a pelagic fish community. Several published studies exist that use physical data as proxy variables for nutrient flux, advection, and stratification to predict species recruitment patterns in the Northwest Atlantic. These models are being used in conjunction with the specific physical oceanographic sceanario devised to speculate on the most probable consequences to the fisheries of Atlantic Canada.

Time-Scale Characterization of Circulation and Mixing Over Submarine Banks

A time-scale characterization of circulation and mixing is being used to intercompare and interpret physical oceanographic observations from Atlantic coast banks where the Department of Fisheries and Oceans has conducted or is conducting recruitment studies. The characterization consists of intergral time scales for passive-scalar exchange in three orthogonal directions: a residence time (TR) for cross-bank exchange, a recirculation time (TG) for advection by any residual around-bank gyre, and a vertical diffusion time (TV) for the water column. The absolute and relative magnitudes of these times can then be used to estimate changes in scalar distributions on specified biological time-scales, and identify the relative importance of exchange in particular directions. For example, the significance of a residual gyre should be assessed by comparing the associated recirculation time with the bank's residence and vertical diffusion times.

The characterization has been applied to Browns Bank, Flemish Cap, Georges Bank, and the SE Shoal of the Grand Bank, primarily using moored current and drifter measurements. The results for horizontal exchange are shown in Table 1. In general, the residence times are less than (but of the same order of magnitude as) the recirculation times, implying a limited (but some) significance for the gyres. The ratio of residence to recirculation time is largest for Georges Bank and the western cap of Browns Bank, suggesting that the gyres on those banks have the greatest influence on the spatial distribution of properties. The residence and recirculation times are shortest for the smaller Browns Bank, but the greatest interbank difference is in the vertical diffusion time: on the tidally-energetic Browns and Georges Banks, properties are vertically redistributed much more quickly than horizontally exchanged, whereas the reverse is true on Flemish Cap.

It is suggested that the characterization could be extended to describe temporal (eg. interannual) variability in circulation and mixing on banks, as well as expected distributional changes of organisms with simple behavioural patterns (eg. vertical migration).

III. INTER-REGIONAL STUDIES

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
1. Labrador Shelf Fish Production Studies	Sept. 1985	1986-1988	Labrador Shelf, 2J3KL	Cod	Particle-size spectra, Coulter Counter, zooplankton net hauls, ECOLOG, nutrients, CTD, BIONESS.	K. Drinkwater, G. Harding, L. Dickie, R. Sheldon, D. Schneider
2. Warm-Core Rings and Ekman Transport Effects on Fish Recruitment	N/A	1987-1988	NW Atlantic	Many species of commercial value	Statistical analysis of recruitment, wind, and thermal imagery data.	R. Myers, K. Drinkwater
3. Climate Variability and Recruitment	N/A	1972-1987	NW Atlantic	Many species of commercial value	Statistical analysis of catch, SST, and river discharge data.	W. Sutcliffe, K. Drinkwater, R. Myers
4. Northwest Atlantic Capelin Recruitment Studies	1985-	1986-	Southern Grand Bank, SE Shoal	Capelin (larval stage: 4-50 mm)	BIONESS, Tucker trawl, IYGPT, Pisces (submersible), optical plankton counter, fine-scale sampling in frontal region, otolith microstructure analysis.	K. Frank, J. Carscadden, J. Loder, J. McRuer, W. Leggett, C. Taggart
5. SE Shoal Capelin Recruitment Study: Physical Oceanographic Component	1985-1989	1987-	Southern Grand Bank, SE Shoal	Capelin	Hydrographic surveys, moored current and hydrographic measurements, analysis of historical hydrogrpahic data, heat budget computation, meterological data.	J. Loder, C. Ross, S. Akenhead

III. INTER-REGIONAL STUDIES (Continued)

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
6. Greenhouse Effect on Canadian Atlantic Fisheries	N/A	1985-1988	Continental Shelf waters from Gulf of Maine to Labrador Shelf	Several finfish and shellfish species of commercial value in NW Atlantic	Application of several published models that use physical data as proxy variables for nutrient flux, advection, and stratification to predict recruitment patterns from physical changes resulting from doubling of atmospheric CO_2	K. Frank, I. Perry, K. Drinkwater, H. Lear, G. Conan
7. Time-Scale Characterization of Circulation and Mixing Over Submarine Banks	1977-1986	1987-1988	Browns Bank, Georges Bank, SE Shoal, Flemish Cap	Possible extension: a posteriori matching of physical description to biological pattern and structure	Inter-bank comparison based on characterization of time-scales for residence, recirculation, and vertical mixing.	J. Loder, C. Ross, P. Smith

Table 1.

SUMMARY OF RESIDENCE (T_R) AND RECIRCULATION (T_G) TIME ESTIMATES FOR NEAR-SURFACE WATER

	T_R (days)	T_G (days)	
	Lagrangian	Lagrangian	Eulerian
FLEMISH CAP	32 ± 17	67 ± 20	
SOUTHEAST SHOAL	>28 ± 10	56	
BROWNS BANK			
- whole bank	12 ± 9	25 ± 12	>40
- western cap	9 ± 5	8 ± 5	10
GEORGES BANK	54 ± 26	44 ± 11	56

B. MULTI-NATIONAL

Georges Bank Larval Herring Study: Physical Oceanographic Component

As part of the ICNAF-sponsored Gulf of Maine herring program, a larval patch study was planned for the fall of 1978 on Georges Bank. Its aims were to understand the circulation and diffusive processes above a spawning area, and follow a patch of larvae to determine the physical and biological factors influencing its evolution. In collaboration with American physical oceanographers, preliminary physical oceanographic observations were collected in 1977 and more detailed measurements taken in the fall of 1978, focussing on the northern side of the Bank.

Eight research vessels from several countries participated in the patch study. However, larval herring were not sufficiently abundant on Georges Bank to allow successful execution of the program. Some of the biological effort was diverted to larval herring studies on Nantucket Shoals, and the focus of the Georges Bank study switched to a patch of chaetognaths. This patch was found to have a relatively persistent location in spite of the strong residual current, apparently because of the chaetognath's vertical migration in the presence of the vertically-sheared tidal current.

Juvenile Herring Recruitment Studies

Juvenile herring in the coastal waters of eastern Maine (USA) and southwestern New Brunswick (Canada) pose a unique set of management problems. First, the persistent transboundary movements of these fish have made it difficult to establish management authority. Second, landings from the traditional fixed weir and stop seine catch in the area have recently declined, raising questions about the continued viability of the fishery and emphasizing the need to determine the stock origin of the fish on which this fishery has been based. Finally, there is the question of the relationship between these aggregations of juveniles and recruitment to adult spawning stocks of the Bay of Fundy and Gulf of Maine. A variety of studies are underway. Coastal surveys of larvae and juveniles in waters of Maine and New Brunswick (with the Maine Department of Marine Resources; see Chenoweth et al. MS) are addressing the abundance and movements of the juvenile stage. Historical analysis of weir records is being analyzed with the view to understanding fluctuations in juvenile abundance and the relationship with recruitment to adult fisheries. Finally, a stock identification program is comparing spawning populations in the hope of being able to establish the stock affinity of juveniles from mixed schools.

Short-Finned Squid Recruitment Dynamics

Until 1979, little was known of the early life of the short-fined squid Illex illecebrosus or of the role played by the Gulf Stream in transporting the larval and juvenile stages. In the winter of 1979, a series of Canadian/USSR cooperative research cruises discovered and mapped the distribution of large concentrations of small juveniles (15-80 mm dorsal mantle length) and a number of larvae between the Gulf Stream and the edge of the Scotian Shelf (Amaratunga et al. 1980, Fedulov and Froerman 1980). This was the first strong evidence that the Gulf Stream might play a major role in the life-cycle of I.

illecebrosus. Trites (1983) developed a larval dispersion model that would predict an idealized distribution of larval and early juvenile stages over a 1-2 month period after spawning. Under this model, egg massess, larvae, and possibly juveniles are entrained by the Gulf Stream and transported at variable speed northeastward to areas seaward of the Continental Shelf along the northeastern USA, the Scotian Shelf, and Grand Banks. Between January 1983 and February 1986, Canada conducted a series of four research cruises to examine this advection scenario as a mechanism for the transport of larvae and juveniles from areas over the Blake Plateau or areas further to the south (Rowell et al. 1985, Trites and Rowell 1985, Rowell and Trites 1985). Analysis of data from the 1986 cruise is still underway. The results of the previous cruises in this series are summarized by Rowell and Trites (1985), the primary conclusions being:

1. Larvae and early juveniles are caught mainly in a narrow but very long strip of water centred in the Slope Water/Gulf Stream Frontal Zone extending from Floria to an beyond Cape Hatteras.

2. The presence of newly hatched larvae south of Miami, indicates that spawning also ocurs south of the Cape Canaveral area.

3. The physical environment is probably a major factor determining larval/juvenile distribution in that: a) the Gulf Stream provides a rapid transport system (as much as 1000 km/week); b) Frontal Eddies eject surface-layer Gulf Stream Water shoreward into Slope Water, which is subsequently re-entrained into the Stream; c) Frontal Eddies produce upwelling of nutrient-rich water between the filament and the Gulf Stream proper, which in turn increases primary production in the Slope/Gulf Stream Frontal Zone; and d) downstream from Cape Hatteras the formation of Warm-Core Gulf Stream Eddies eject large quantities of Gulf Stream Water into the Slope Water area south of Nova Scotia and the Grand Branks with eddy duration times typically of several months.

4. Recruitment success of failure may be critically dependent on the timing, location, and number of Gulf Stream frontal eddies and warm-core eddies developing when larvae and/or juveniles are present.

It is anticipated that enhanced oceanographic sampling during the 1986 cruise will further clarify some elements noted in the above summary.

Habitat Associations of Age-0 Gadids on Georges Banks

Using a submersible and surface vessels, a detailed investigation of age-0 gadid habit preferences, vertical distributions, and feeding was completed on Georges Bank in 1987. The project was a joint investigation of staff of National Marine Fisheries Service (Woods Hole) and Department of Fisheries and Oceans (MFD, St.^Andrews). Further aspects of the joint work have included a comparison of the two principal nets used by Canada and the United States (International Young Gadid Pelagic Trawl and MOC-10 opening/closing net, respectively).

IV. MULTI-NATIONAL STUDIES

Title	Duration		Study Area	Target Species	Techniques/Approaches	Principal Investigator
	Field	Analysis				
1. Georges Bank Larval Herring Study: Physical Oceanographic Component	1977-1978	1977-1986	Georges Bank, Nantucket Shoals	Herring	Hydrographics surveys, moored current and hydrographic measurements, drifter and dye tracking.	R. W. Trites
2. Juvenile Herring Recruitment Studies	1986-1988	1986-	Bay of Fundy, Gulf of Maine	Atlantic Herring (Juveniles)	Analysis of historcial catch data (weir fishery). Coastal surveys. Stock identification of herring spawning populations.	R. Stephenson, DMR Maine
3. Short-Finned Squid Recruitment Dynamics	1979-1986	Ongoing	North and South Atlantic	Short-Finned Squid	Larval and juvenile surveys, hydrographic surveys, integrated biological and physical modelling, extensive university based laboratory research on reproductive biology (O'Dor, Balch, et al.), remote sensing.	T. Rowell, R. Trites, T. Amaratunga, M. Roberge, R. O'Dor
4. Habitat Associations of Age-0 Gadids on Georges Bank	1986-1987	1987-1988	Georges Bank	Silver Hake	Field study using a submersible.	J. Neilson, I. Perry, U.S. National Marine Fisheries Service staff

ASSOCIATED PUBLICATIONS

Akenhead, S.A. 1981. Local sea-surface temperature and salinity on Flemish Cap. NAFO SCR Doc. 81/IX/120, Ser. No. N426: 7 p.

Akenhead, S.A. 1986. Water retention over Flemish Cap. pp. 283-293. In: S. Skreslet [ed.] The Role of Freshwater Outlfow in Coastal Marine Ecosystems. NATO Adv. Sci. Inst. Ser., No. G7: 453 p.

Akenhead, S.A. 1988. Ph.D. Thesis, Dalhousie Univeristy (in preparation).

Amaratunga, T., T. Rowell, and M. Roberge. 1980. Summary of joint Canada/USSR research program on short-finned squid (Illex illecebrosus), 16 February to 4 June 1979: Spawning stock and larval survey. Northwest Atl. Fish. Organ. Sci. Coun. Res. Doc. 80(II/38): 36 p.

Anderson, J.T. 1984. Early life history of redfish (Sebastes spp.) on Flemish Cap. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 41: 1106-1116.

Anderson, J.T. (In Press). A review of size dependent survival during pre-recruit stages of fishes in relation to recruitment. J. Northw. Atl. Fish. Sci.

Anderson, J.T., and S.A. Akenhead. 1981. Distribution and abundance of redfish and cod larvae on Flemish Cap in 1978 and 1979. NAFO Sci. Coun.Stud. 1: 57-63.

Chenoweth, S.B., R.L. Stephenson, M.J. Power, and D.A. Libby. MS. Origin and dispersion of larval herring (Clupea harengus) in coastal waters of eastern Maine and Southwestern New Brunswick. Submitted to Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.

Dalley, E.L. In Preparation. Comparison of larval capelin (Mallotusvillosus) catches using paired Bongos and the RMT-8, with examples of potential biases in growth calculation.

Dobson, D., and B. Petrie. 1985. Long-term temperature monitoring program 1984, Scotia-Fundy, Gulf Regions. Can. Data Rep. Hydrogr. Ocean Sci. 35: 691 p.

Drinkwater, K.F. 1987. The response of an open, stratified bay to wind forcing. Ph.D. Thesis, Dalhousie University: 184 p.

Drinkwater, K.F. 1987. Sutcliffe Revisited: Previously published correlations between fish stocks and environmental indices and their recent preformance. pp. 41-61. In: R.I. Perry and K.T. Frank [eds.] Environmental Effects on Recruitment to Canadian Atlantic Fish Stocks. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1556.

Drinkwater, K.F. 1988. The response of an open embayment to near hurricane-force winds. Continental Shelf Research. (Accepted for Publication).

Drinkwater, K.F., and E.P. Jones. 1987. Density stratification, nutrient, and chlorophyll distributions in the Hudson Strait region during summer and their relation to tidal mixing. Cont. Shelf Res. 7: 599-607.

Drinkwater, K.F., and R.A. Myers. In Press. Testing predictions of marine fish and shellfish landings from environmental variables. Can. J. Fish.Aquat. Sci. 44: 000-000.

Drinkwater, K.F., B. Petrie, and W.H. Sutcliffe, Jr. 1979. Seasonal geostrophic volume transports along the Scotian Shelf. Est. Coast. Mar.Sci. 9: 17-27.

Fedulov, P.P., and Y.M. Froerman. 1980. Effect of abiotic factors on distribution of young shortfin squids, Illex illecebrosus (LeSueur, 1821). Northwest Atl. Fish. Organ. Sci. Coun. Res. Doc. 80/VI/98): 22 p.

Fowler, G.M., and S.J. Smith. 1983. Length changes in silver hake (Merluccius bilinearis) larvae: Effects of formalin, ethanol, and freezing. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 40: 866-870.

Frank, K.T. 1986. Ecological significance of the ctenophore Pleurobrachia pileus. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 211-222.

Frank, K.T. 1988. Independent distributions of fish larvae and their prey: Natural paradox or sampling artifact? Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 45: 48-59.

Frank, K.T., and J.E. Carscadden. 1987. Factors affecting recruitment variability of capelin (Mallotus villosus) in the Northwest Atlantic. ICES CM 1987/Mini No. 1.

Gagné, J.A., and R.N. O'Boyle. 1984. The timing of cod spawning on the Scotian Shelf. pp. 501-517. In: E. Dahl, D.S. Danielsen, E. Moksness, and P. Solemdal [eds.] The propagation of Cod, Gadus morhua L., Flodevigen rapportser. 1.

Gibson, R.J. 1988. A review of behavioural mechanisms and habitat preference regulating species composition, population structure, and production of fluvial salmonids. Polskie Archivum Hydrobiologii 35: In Press.

Gibson, R.J., and R.A. Myers. 1988. Influence of seasonal river discharge on survival of juvenile Atlantic salmon, Salmo salar. Can. J. Fish Aquat. Sci. 45: 344-348.

Gibson, R.J. and R.A. Myers. 1987. A comparative review of juvenile Atlantic salmon production in North America and Europe. pp. 14-48. In: W.W. Crozier and P.M. Johnston [eds.] Proceedings of the 17th Annual Study Course, 9-11 September 1986, Institute of Fisheries Management, University of Ulster at Coleraine.

Grosslein, M.D., and G.R. Lilly. 1987. Summary report of the special session on recruitment studies. NAFO Sci. Coun. Studies 11: 83-90.

Harding, G.C., W.P. Vass, and K.F. Drinkwater. 1982. Aspects of larval American lobster (Homarus americanus) ecology in St. Georges Bay, Nova Scotia. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 39(8): 1117-1129.

Harding, G.C., K.F. Drinkwater, and W.P. Vass. 1983. Factors influencing the size of American lobster (Homarus americanus) stocks along the Atlantic coast of Nova Scotia, Gulf of St. Lawrence, and Gulf of Maine: A new synthesis. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 40(2): 168-184.

Harding, G.C., J.D. Pringle, W.P. Vass, S. Pearre, Jr., and S. Smith. 1987. Vertical distribution and daily movements of larval Homarus americanus over Browns Bank, Nova Scotia. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 41: 29-41.

Harding, G.C., and R.W. Trites. 1988. Dispersal of Homarus Americanus larvae in the Gulf of Maine from Browns Bank. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.

Hurley, G.V., M.J. Tremblay, and C. Couturier. 1967. Age estimation of sea scallop larvae (Placopecten magellanicus) from daily growth lines on shells. J. Northw. Atl. Fish. Sci. 7: 123-129.

Iles, T.D., M.J. Power, and K.L. Stephenson. 1985. Evaluation of the use of larval survey data to tune herring stock assessments in the Bay of Fundy/Gulf of Maine. NAFO SCR Doc. 85/107: 15 p.

Keeley, J.R. 1982. Temperature and salinity anomalies along the Flemish Cap section in the 1970s. NAFO Sci. Counc. Studies 5: 87-94.

Kenchington, T.J. 1984. Population structures and management of the redfishes (Sebastes spp.: Scorpaenidae) of the Scotian Shelf. Ph.D. Thesis, Dalhousie University.

Kendaris, J.A. 1981a. The distribution of temperature, salinity, and density on Flemish Cap (47°00'N, 45°00'W) in March, April and May 1979. Can. Data. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 369: 127 p.

Kendaris, J.A. 1981b. The distribution of temperature, salinity, and density on Flemish Cap (47°00'N, 45°00'W) in April, May and July 1980. Can. Data. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 270: 173 p.

Koeller, P.A., P. Hurley, P. Perley, and J.D. Neilson. 1986. Juvenile fish surveys on the Scotian Shelf: Implications for year class size assessments. J. Cons. Int. Explor. Mer 43: 49-76.

Kohler, A.C., and L.E. Waite. 1982. Collections of ichthyoplankton identified and enumerated for the year 1978 from the Scotian Shelf Ichthyoplankton Program (SSIP). Can. Data Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 358: 62: 7 p.

Kohler, A.C., and L.E. Waite. 1982. Collections of ichthyoplankton identified and enumerated for the year 1979 from the Scotian Shelf Ichthyoplankton Program (SSIP). Can. Data Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 370: 666 p.

Kohler, A.C., and L.E. Waite. 1983. Colections of ichthyoplankton identified and enumerated for the year 1980 from the Scotian Shelf Ichthyoplankton Program (SSIP). Can. Data Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 380: 367 p.

Kruse, G.H., and L.L. Valley. In Press. Length changes in capelin (Mallotus villosus) larvae due to preservation in formalin and anhydrous alcohol. Submitted to Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. (Submitted Nov. 1987).

Lambert, T.C. 1984. Larval cohort succession in herring (Clupea harengus) and capelin (Mallotus villosus). Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 41(11): 1552-1564.

Lambert, T.C. 1987. Duration and intensity of spawning in herring (Clupeaharengus) as related to the age structure of the population. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 30: 209-220.

Lambert, T.C., and D.M. Ware. 1984. Reproductive strategies of demersal and pelagic spawning fish. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 41(11): 1565-1569.

Lambert, T.C., D.M. Ware, and J.K. McRuer. 1982. Spawning and early life history of herring and capelin in St. Georges Bay, Nova Scotia. Can. Techn. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1128: 1-82.

Lear, W.H., R. Wells, and W. Templeman. 1981. Variation in vertebral averages for year-classes of Atlantic cod, Gadus morhua, on Flemish Cap. J. Northw. Atl. Fish. Sci. 2: 57-60.

Lilly, G.R. 1980. Year-class strength of redfish and growth of cod on Flemish Cap. ICNAF Sel. Papers 6: 35-39.

Lilly, G.R. 1987. Snyopsis of research related to recruitment of Atlantic cod (Gadus morhua) and Atlantic redfishes (Sebastes sp.) on Flemish Cap. NAFO Sci. Coun. Studies 11: 109-122.

Lilly, G.R., and C.A. Gavaris. 1982. Distribution and year-class strength of juvenile redfish, Sebastes sp., on Flemish Cap in the winters of 1978-82. J. Northw. Atl. Fish. Sci. 3: 115-122.

Loder, J.W., C.K. Ross, and P.C. Smith. 1988. A space- and time-scale characterization of circulation and mixing over submarine banks, with application to the northwestern Atlantic continental shelf. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. (Submitted).

Lough, R.G., and R.W. Trites. 1986. Chaetognaths and oceanography on Georges Bank. NAFO SCR Doc. 86/100.

Mahon, R., and J.D. Neilson. 1987. Diet changes in Scotian Shelf haddock during the pelagic and demersal phases of the first year of life.Marine Ecology - Progesss Series 37: 123-130.

McGlade, J.M. 1983. Preliminary study of the stock structure of pollock (Pollachius virens L.) on the Scotian Shelf and in the Gulf of maine. CAFSAC Res. Doc. 83/81: 21 p.

Myers, R.A., and K.F. Drinkwater. 1986. The effects of shelf water by warm-core rings on Northwest Atlantic fish recruitment. ICLS Doc. C.M.1986/C:13: 18 p.

Myers, R.A., and K.F. Drinkwater. 1987. The influence of warm-core rings, the position of the shelf slope front, and the Gulf Stream on recruitment of fish from the Northwest Atlantic. ICLS Doc. C.M. 1987/C:16: 13 p.

Myers, R.A., and K.F. Drinkwater. 1988. The influence of warm-core rings on recruitment of fish in the Northwest Atlantic. J. Mar. Res. (accepted for publication).

Neilson, J.D., and D.E. Dale. 1984. A review of the status of the 4VWX flatfish stocks. CAFSAC Res. Doc. 84/54: 35 p.

Neilson, J.D., E.M. deBlois, and P.C.F. Hurley. (Submitted). The stock structure of Scotian Shelf flatfish as inferred from ichthyoplankton survey data and the geographic distribution of mature females. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.

Neilson, J.D., and G.H. Geen. 1986. First-year growth rate of Sixes River chinook salmon as inferred from otoliths: Effects on mortality and age at maturity. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc. 115: 28-33.

Neilson, J.D., R.I. Perry, P. Valerio, and K.G. Waiwood. 1986. Condition of Atlantic cod (Gadus morhua) larvae after the transition to exogenous feeding: Morphometrics, buoyancy and predator avoidance. Marine Ecology - Progress Series 32: 229-235.

Neilson, J.D., R.I. Perry, P. Valerio, and J.S. Scott. 1987. Interactions of a caligid ectoprasite and juvenile gadids on Georges Bank. Marine Ecology - Progress Series 39: 221-232.

Noskov, A.S., A.I. Sherstiukov, and A.N. Romanchenko. 1979. Distribution and abundance of silver hake eggs, larvae, and juveniles, and environmental conditions off the Nova Scotia Shelf in August 1978. ICNAF Res. Doc.79/VI/100: 21 p.

Noskov, A.S., V.P. Karaulovsky, A.N. Romanchenko, and A.I. Sherstiukov. 1978. Distribution and abundance of silver hake eggs and larvae and environmental conditions off Nova Scotia in September-October 1977. ICNAF Res. Doc. 78/VI/32: 11 p.

O'Boyle, R.N., M. Sinclair, R.J. Conover, K.H. Mann, and A.C. Kohler. 1984. Temporal and spatial distribution of ichthyoplankton communities of the Scotian Shelf in relation to biological, hydrological, and physiographic features. Rapp. P.-v. Reun. Cons. Int. Explor. Mer 1983: 27-40.

Penney, R.W. 1985. Comparative morphology of pre-extrusion larvae of the North Atlantic sharp-beaked redfishes, Sebastes mentella and Sebastes fasciatus (Pisces: Scorpaenidae). Can. J. Zool. 63: 1181-1188.

Penney, R.W. 1987. Development of deep-water redfish (Sebastes mentella) larvae, with comparative notes on newly extruded Acadian redfish (Sebastes fasciatus) from the Flemish Cap. Can. J. Zool. 65: 1167-1180.

Penney, R.W., and G.T. Evans. 1985. Growth histories of larval redfish (Sebastes spp.) on an offshore Atlantic fishing bank determined by otolith increment analysis. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 42: 1452-1464.

Perry, R.I., and J.D. Neilson. (Submitted). Vertical distributions and trophic interactions of age-0 cod and haddock in mixed and stratifiedwaters. Marine Ecology - Progress Series.

Petrie, B., and K. Drinkwater. 1977. Physical oceanographic measurements in St. Georges Bay, Nova Scotia. Bedford Institute of Oceanography Report Series BI-R-77-5, June 1977: 78 p.

Petrie, B., and K. Drinkwater. 1977. The physical oceanography of St. Georges Bay, N.S., 1975. Bedford Institute of Oceanography Report Series BI-R-77-11, October 1977: 85 p.

Petrie, B., and K. Drinkwater. 1978. Circulation in an open bay. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Canada 35: 1116-1123.

Petrie, B., and K. Drinkwater. 1978. Numerical model of the circulation in an open bay. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Canada 35: 1631-1635.

Petrie, B., B.T. Topliss, and D.G. Wright. 1987. Coastal upwelling and eddy development off Nova Scotia. J. Geophys. Res. 29: 12979-12991.

Reid, J.G.G., and E. Larsen. 1962. An electronic inclinometer design for the measurement of wire cable angles during bongo plankton tows. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1085: 8 p.

Ross, C.K. 1980. Moored current meter data from Flemish Cap, January-July 1979. NAFO SCR Doc. 80/IX/128, Ser. No. N200: 13 p.

Ross, C.K. 1981. Drift of satellite-tracked buoys on Flemish Cap, 1979-80. NAFO Sci. Coun. Stud. 1: 47-50.

Rowell, T.W. 1985. Synopsis of the Special Session on Squids, September 1984. Northwest Atl. Fish. Organ. Sci. Coun. Studies 9: 7-9.

Rowell, T.W. 1986. Management units and the squid resources of the Gulf of Maine, Illex illecebrosus and Loligo pealei. Can. Atl. Fish. Sci. Adv.Comm. Res. Doc. 86/59: 21 p.

Rowell, T.W., and R.W. Trites. 1985. Distribution of larval and juvenile Illex (Mollusca: Cephalopoda) in the Blake Plateau region (Northwest Atlantic). Vie et Milieu 35/3/4): 149-161.

Rowell, R.W., R.W. Trites, and E.G. Dawe. 1985. Distribution of short-finned squid (Illex illecebrosus) larvae and juveniles in relation to the Gulf Stream frontal zone between Florida and cape Hatteras. Northwest Atl. Fish. Organ. Sci. Coun. Studies 9: 77-92.

Scott, J.S. 1987. Trawl surveys for juvenile groundfish in the Sable Island area, Nova Scotia, 1981-1985. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1532: 16 p.

Smith, P.C. 1988. Circulation and dispersion in Browns Bank. (Under Review).

Stasko, A.B., and D.J. Gordon. 1983. Distribution and relative abundance of lobster larvae off southwestern Nova Scotia 1977-1978. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1175: 1-23.

Stephenson, R.L., and I. Kornfield. MS. Reappearance of spawning herring on Georges Bank: Population resurgence not recolonization. (Submitted).

Stephenson, R.L., and M.J. Power. MS. Semidiel vertical movements in Atlantic herring larvae: A mechanism for larval retention? (In Internal Review).

Stephenson, R.L., D.J. Gordon, and M.J. Power. 1987. Herring of the outer Scotian Shelf and Georges Bank: History of the fisheries, recent developments and management considerations. Can. Atl. Fish. Sci. Advis. Comm. Res. Doc. 87/76: 23 p.

Stepenson, R.L., M.J. Power, and T.D. Iles. 1987. Assessment of the 1986 WX herring fishery. Can. Atl. Fish. Sci. Advis. Comm. Res. Doc. 87/75: 39 p.

Sutcliffe, W.H., Jr., R.H. Loucks, and K.F. Drinkwater. 1976. Coastal circulation and physical oceanography of the Scotian Shelf and the Gulf of Maine. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. 33: 98-115.

Sutcliffe, W.H., Jr., K. Drinkwater, and B.S. Muir. 1977. Correlations of fish catch and environmental factors in the Gulf of Maine. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. 34: 19-30.

Sutcliffe, W.H., Jr., R.H. Loucks, K.F. Drinkwater, and A.R. Coote. 1983. Nutrient flux onto the Labrador Shelf from Hudson Strait and its biological consequences. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 40: 1692-1701.

Thonney, J-P., R.J. Gibson, and K.G. Hillier. 1987. Colonization of basket samplers by macroinvertebrates in riffle areas of 10 Newfoundland river systems. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1558: v + 43 p.

Tremblay, M.J., and M.M. Sinclair. 1988. The vertical and horizontal distribution of sea scallop larvae in the Bay of Fundy in 1984 and 1985. J. Northw. Atl. Fish. Sci. 8: In Press.

Tremblay, M.J., and J.C. Roff. 1983. Community gradients in the Scotian Shelf zooplankton. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 40: 598-611.

Tremblay, M.J., and J.C. Roff. 1983. Production estimates for Scotian Shelf copepods based on mass specific P/B ratios. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 40:749-753.

Tremblay, M.J., L.D. Meade, and G.V. Hurley. 1987. Identification of planktonic sea scallop larvae (Placopecten magellanicus) (Gmelin). Can. J. Fish Aquat. Sci. 44: 1361-1366.

Trites, R.W. 1978. Some physical oceanographic features relevant to larval herring production on Georges Bank. ICNAF Res. Doc. 78/VI/79, Ser. No. 5266: 19 p.

Trites, R.W. 1983. Physical oceanographic features and processes relevant to Illex illecebrosus spawning areas and subsequent larval distribution. Northwest Atl. Fish. Organ. Sci. Coun. Studies 6: 34-55.

Trites, R.W., and T.W. Rowell. 1985. Larval juvenle distribution of the short-finned squid (Illex illecebrosus) in the Cape Hatteras-Florida Straits area in the December-January period, 1984-1985. Northwest Atl. Fish. Organ. Sci. Coun. Res. Doc. 85(VI/69): 36 p.

Ware, D.M. 1977. Spawning time and egg size of Atlantic mackerel, (Scomber scombrus) in relation to the plankton. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Canada 34(12): 2308-2315.

Ware, D.M., and T.C. Lambert. 1985. Early life history of Atlantic mackerel (Scomber scombrus) in the Southern Gulf of St. Lawrence. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 42(3): 577-592.

Wright, W.R., and R.G. Lough. 1979. The Georges Bank larval herring patch study of 1978: A preliminary report. ICES C.M. 1979: 13 p.

Wright, D.G., R.M. Henory, J.W. Loder, and F.W. Dobson. 1986. Oceanic changes associated with global increases in atmospheric CO_2: A preliminary report for the Atlantic coast of Canada. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1426: vii + 78 p.

Yao, T. 1985. Final report. A study of the circulation of Trinity Bay. Report submitted to Fisheries Research Branch, DFO, St. John's.

Yao, T. 1986. The response of currents in Trinity Bay, Newfoundland, to Local Wind Forcing. Atmos. Ocean 24(3): 235-252.

V REVIEWS OF DEPARTMENT OF FISHERIES AND OCEANS PROGRAMS ON RECRUITMENT

RECRUITMENT RESEARCH IN THE GULF OF ST. LAWRENCE AND NORTHERN QUEBEC

by

J.A. Gagné and D. Lefaivre
Quebec Region

This report summarizes current research projects conducted by DFO-Quebec scientists to study various aspects of the question of recruitment variability in marine fish and invertebrate populations. The populations investigated inhabit the St. Lawrence system or the waters of northern Quebec.

Major Physical Features of Interest in the St. Lawrence System

Three major features control the hydrodynamics at the head of the Laurentian Trough near the mouth of the Saguenay River (Figure 1): tidal mixing due to bottom stress and internal wave activity; upwelling along the north shore due to wind stress; advection of surface waters due to tidal forcing. All these contribute to maintain a stratification front in the area of Ile Verte.

At the mouth of the St. Lawrence River Estuary a cross channel front persists under the influence of fresh waters from upstream and wind patterns in the northwestern part of the Gulf. Along the south shore the Gaspé current advects water out of the estuary towards the southwestern Gulf areas.

The predominant feature in the northwestern part of the Gulf of St. Lawrence is a persistent gyre extending from the shoreline of Sept. Iles to Anticosti Island. This gyre acts as a retention mechanism in the centre but also advects suspended material southward along its sides. In the northern regions, wind-driven upwelling events are common. Mixing is important in shallow areas, especially in the Jacques Cartier Passage. In the spring, freshwater run-off from several large rivers exerts a strong influence on the region by stabilizing the water column.

Along the southern shores of the Gulf wind-generated vertical mixing and freshwater flushing are the main driving forces in numerous small lagoons and estuaries.

Research Projects

Project #1 was initiated when hydrographers, physical and fisheries oceanographers identified a common interest in better understanding various processes operating in the region of the Jacques Cartier Passage, northern Gulf of St. Lawrence (Figure 1). Three objectives reflecting the concerns of the main participants were identified. The first was to understand the influence of freshwater inflow, winds and tides on the circulation and mixing of the northern Gulf waters. In preparation of a survey of the area by the Canadian Hydrographic Service, a second objective was to establish a suitable cotidal map of the water level as well as an atlas of the corresponding tide-induced surface

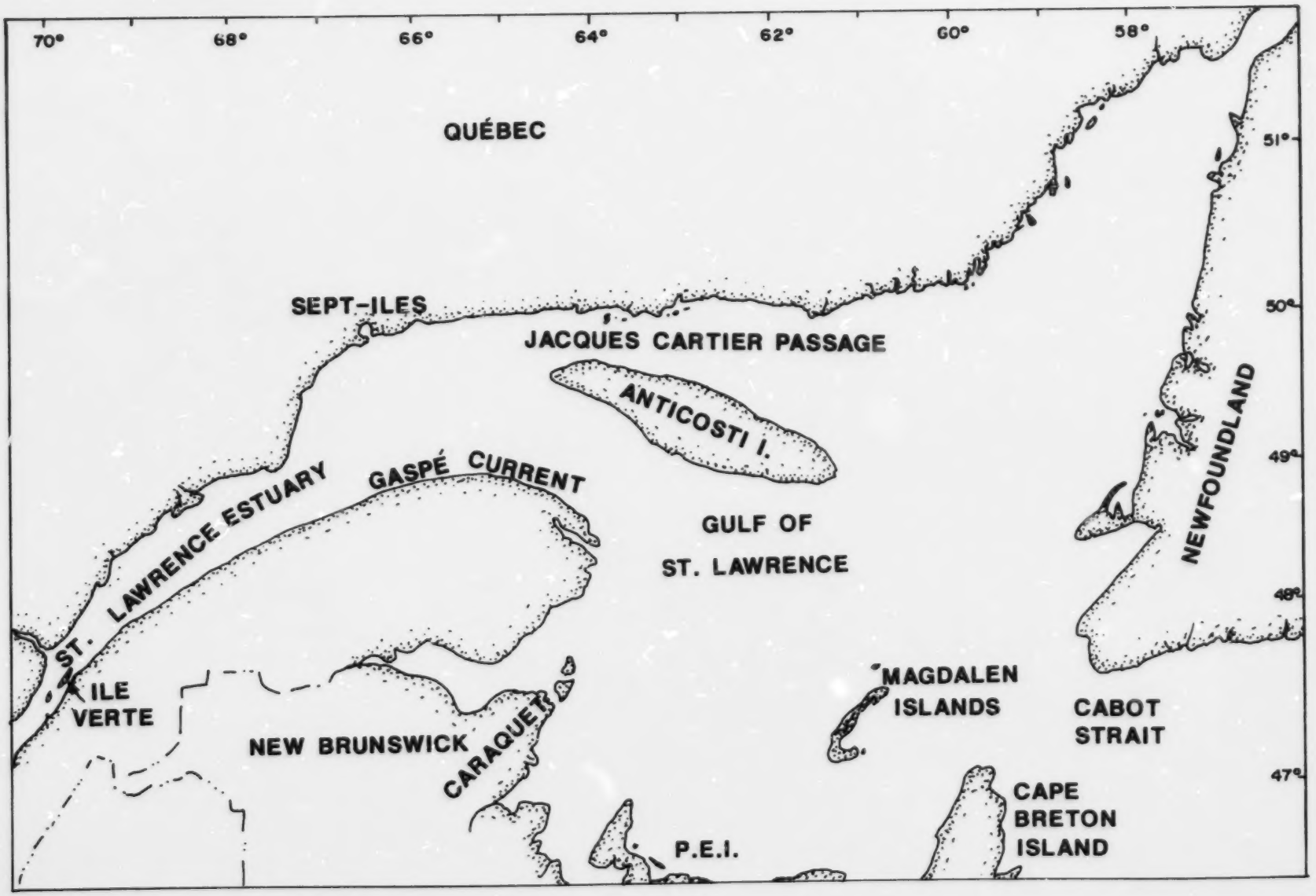

70°
68°
66°
64°
62°
60°
58°
QUÉBEC
51°
SEPT-ILES
50°
JACQUES CARTIER PASSAGE
ANTICOSTI I.
NEWFOUNDLAND
49°
GASPÉ CURRENT
ST. LAWRENCE ESTUARY
GULF OF
ST. LAWRENCE
48°
ILE
VERTE
MAGDALEN
ISLANDS
CABOT
STRAIT
NEW BRUNSWICK
CARAQUET
47°
CAPE
BRETON
ISLAND
P.E.I.

Figure 1.

currents. These two objectives are particularly important considering that all the rivers of the Lower North Shore will soon be harnessed for hydroelectric power. Results from this study will be very useful to predict the relative influence of changes in river regimes.

The following specific hypotheses were formulated:

1. The presence of a sill at the western end combines with the lateral constriction imposed by the shores to perturb the tides and induce a rapid phase change through the Passage.

2. The sill and constriction act as a natural barrier for water mass exchanges between the gyre in the northwestern Gulf and the Strait itself.

3. The strong freshwater inflow from the spring melt induces density-driven currents that promote a western flow over the sill and through the Passage. This mechanism induces water mass exchanges and possibly larval advection from one region to another.

4. The topography between Anticosti Island and the continent sustains a gyre that provides a larval retention mechanism.

Moorings of three current meters will measure the currents in the top, mid-depth and bottom layer of the water column. Temperature and salinity profiles will be used to identify local water masses and to determine how the freshwater from the spring melt mixes and disperses in the surrounding waters. These measurements will also allow the inter-calibration of the temperature and salinity sensors on the current meters. Moored and shore tide gauges will be used to evaluate the sea surface slope along and across the Passage. Summer sea-surface temperatures from satellites will be compared to those measured at depths and their temporal evolution linked to current measurements if possible. This should simplify considerably the interpretation of the large-scale circulation.

This region also supports the major shrimp (Pandalus borealis) stocks in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. These stocks are currently managed as independent units even though the genetic integrity of at least the three largest ones is still debated. To determine the degree of isolation between them and better understand their recruitment patterns, it was decided to identify the areas of emergence of larval shrimp and to describe the distribution of the first early life history stages of the species.

A grid of 112 stations positioned on north-south transects 20 miles apart was designed to map the distribution of larval shrimp concentrations over the entire northern Gulf. This grid was sampled with bongo nets and CTD probes twice in 1986 and once in 1987. Preliminary results for the 1986 cruises indicate the existence of several larval emergence areas in agreement with the known distribution of egg-carrying females. Although the highest level concentrations are always found in some specific locations, stage I and II larvae are dispersed over the entire study area with the exception of a discontinuity between the eastern and western halves of the northern Gulf.

In 1987, the vertical distribution of young larval shrimp was investigated with a multiple opening and closing plankton sampler (BIONESS). This information, coupled with the knowledge of the current patterns in the water column, should provide a better understanding of the factors controlling the direction and extent of larval transport.

Hydrodynamics and Recruitment Variability: Direct Relationships

The influence of hydrodynamic processes on the dynamics of exploited populations constitutes one of the major themes of recruitment research. Sutcliffe (1972) showed that landings of various commercially exploited species can be statistically correlated with broad scale environmental phenomena. For instance, highly significant relationships were obtained with lobster catches in the Gulf of St. Lawrence (Sutcliffe 1972, 1973). Several projects conducted by DFO-Quebec scientists are investigating various aspects of such relationships.

Project #2 was designed to critically examine the likelihood of successfully relating environmental variables to "n"-year-lagged lobster landings in a predictive fashion in the northern Gulf. This study uses lobster landing statistics from six sub-areas of the northern Gulf in an attempt to relate them to environmental factors. The major hydrographic features were identified from NOAA satellite images and related to climatic conditions on the ground. Regional environmental conditions and their potential effects on the growth, survival and advection of lobster larvae were assessed over the period of occurrence of planktonic larvae (months of July, August and September). The exchange of larvae among regions via advective processes was described using a Markov matrix. A conceptual model integrating the expected effects of variations of surface water temperature, wind force and direction, and freshwater outflow on the 9-year-lagged landings of each region was then developed.

The statistical relationship identified by Sutcliffe for the Magdalen Island lobster population is one of the few that held up until recently (Drinkwater 1987). The underlying mechanisms responsible for the association between the runoff from the St. Lawrence River and the landings nine years later needed to be identified. Relevant fundamental information on the basic biology and ecology of that population was gatered by Hudon et al. (Project #3).

Aspects related to egg and larval production, embryonic development and energetic investment in egg production were studied for female lobsters off the Magdalen Islands (Attard 1985; Attard and Hudon 1987). It was found that large females produce eggs in higher numbers, with higher calory content and which hatch faster than eggs from smaller individuals. The higher energy content and earlier hatching time are probably factors that enhance larval growth and survival (Figure 2). If so, larger females would contribute relatively more to recruitment than smaller ones. Larvae produced by small females having molted and extruded their first clutch of eggs in the same summer (Ib) were found to have a low chance of survival due to their late hatching date and low energetic content (Attard and Hudon 1987). These results demonstrate the value of setting an upper size limit to the fishery.

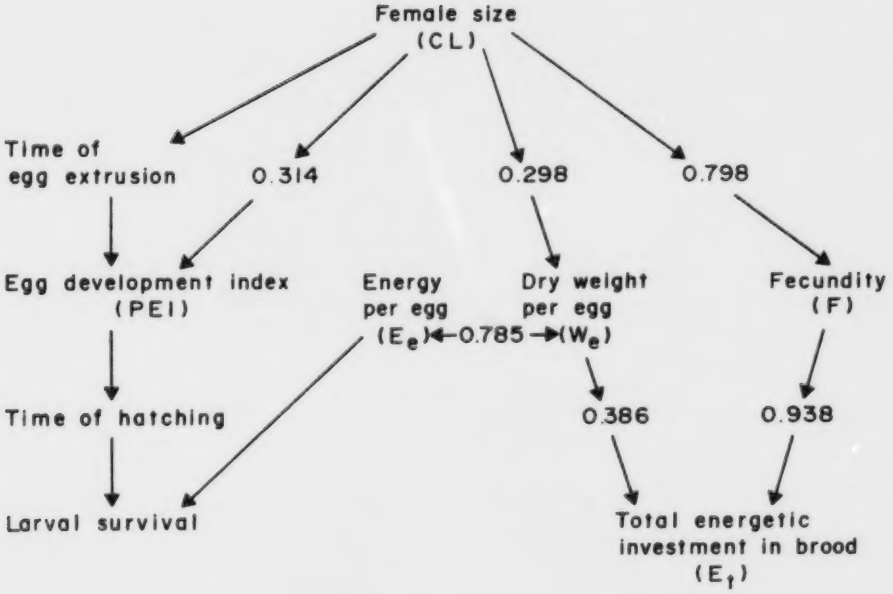

Female size
(CL)
Time of
egg extrusion
0.314
0.298
0.798
Egg development index
(PEI)
Energy
per egg
(Ee)
0.785
Dry weight
per egg
(We)
Fecundity
(F)
Time of hatching
0.386
0.938
Larval survival
Total energetic
investment in brood
(Et)

FIGURE 2

To evaluate larval lobster production and survival off the Islands, 39 stations were sampled with plankton nets during the summers of 1978, 1980 and 1981 (Figure 3). The horizontal and vertical distributions of each of the four planktonic stages of Homarus americanus were assessed from surface tows with simple neuston and meter nets (1978 and 1980) as well as a three-compartment plankton net (Figure 4) (1981). The results indicate that the general pattern of larval abundance is determined by the current regime; the larvae are flushed around Point de l'Est and concentrated in Baie de Plaisance by a gyre (Hudon et al.).

On a smaller scale, 12 stations arranged in a 3 x 4 grid in Baie de Plaisance were sampled for 12 weeks in the summer of 1980. Stage IV larval abundance was found to be significantly correlated with the distance from rocky bottoms favorable to benthic life, suggesting the occurrence of active directional movements on the part of the larvae. The maximum abundance of stage I larvae was synchronized with the period of most rapid increase in summer temperature, thus ensuring that larvae achieve highest net growth rates through their planktonic phase (Figure 5).

The peak of planktonic larval abundance occurred in mid-July when summer temperatures were maximal, thus ensuring rapid larval development to the benthic stage. This mechanism was hypothesized to minimize the duration of planktonic life in order to avoid the heavy predation likely to occur at this stage (Hudon and Fradette 1987).

These results suggest that summer sea-surface temperatures might play an important role in determining the success of a lobster year-class on the Magdalen Shallows. Simard et. al. (Project #4) want to investigate the role played by summer sea-surface temperatures in the relationship found by Sutcliffe (1972, 1973) between the St. Lawrence river runoff and Magdalen lobster landings. Their objective is to test the following hypothesis:

> Lobster recruitment on the Magdalen Shallows is determined by the intensity and pattern of drift and warming of the sea-surface waters around the Islands during the larval stage. These patterns of drift and warming fluctuate between years under the influence of meteorological conditions and freshwater runoff from the St. Lawrence River.

Historical data on freshwater runoff and meteorological and oceanographic conditions are utilized to model the influence of the St. Lawrence River runoff and wind patterns on the circulation around the Islands. If a relationship is found between these factors and lobster recruitment, the project will proceed to evaluate the respective importance of warming and circulation patterns as causal mechanisms.

The interactions of larval lobster with crab larvae and other macro-zooplanktonic organisms collected simultaneously are also being investigated (Project #5). The peak of larval crab occurrence in Bai de Plaisance occurs during the same period as that of lobster, and is accompanied by biomasses of up to 15 g/1000 m^3 (d.w.) of copepods and other potential preys for both crustacean species. Larval crabs, which are also preyed upon by

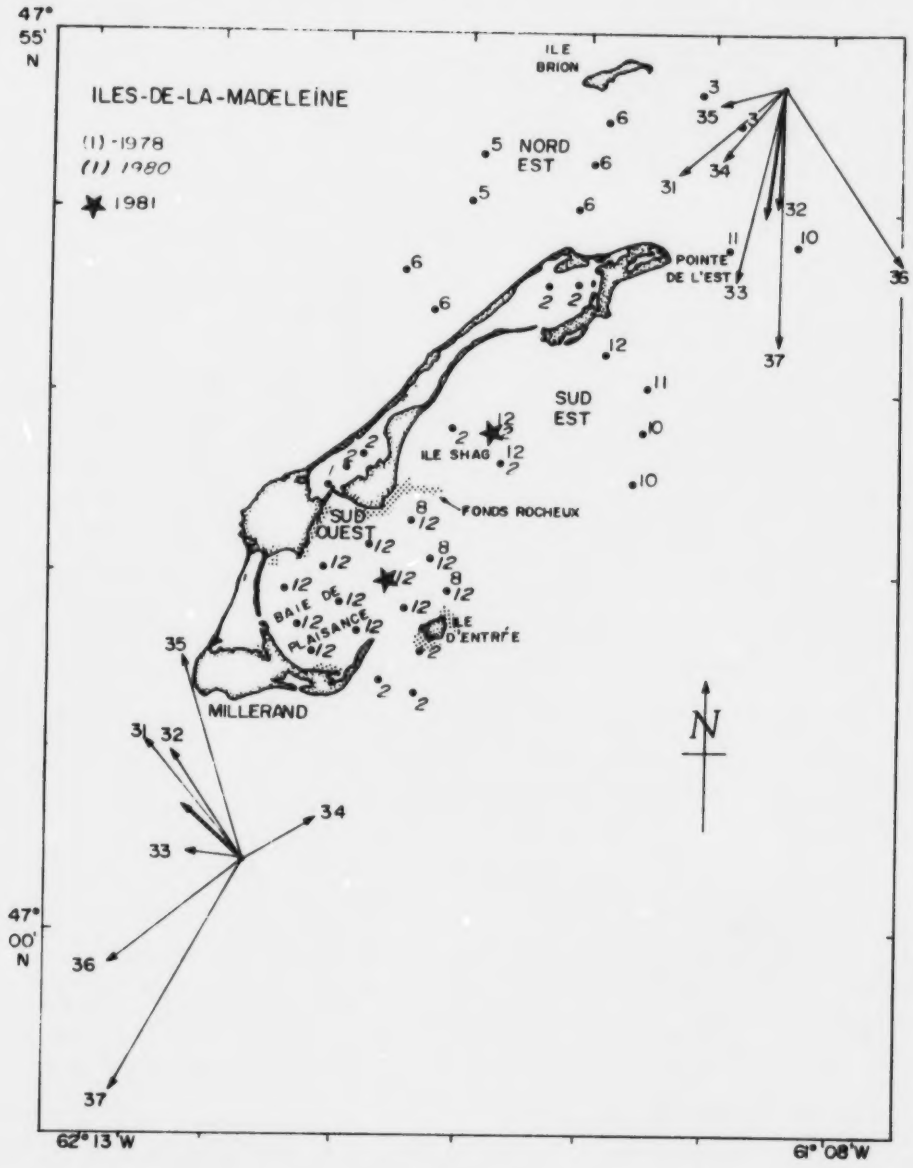

47° 55' N
ILES-DE-LA-MADELEINE
(1) -1978
(1) 1980
1981
ILE BRION
NORD EST
POINTE DE L'EST
SUD EST
ILE SHAG
FONDS ROCHEUX
SUD OUEST
BAIE DE PLAISANCE
ILE D'ENTRÉE
MILLERAND
N
47° 00' N
62° 13' W
61° 08' W

FIGURE 3

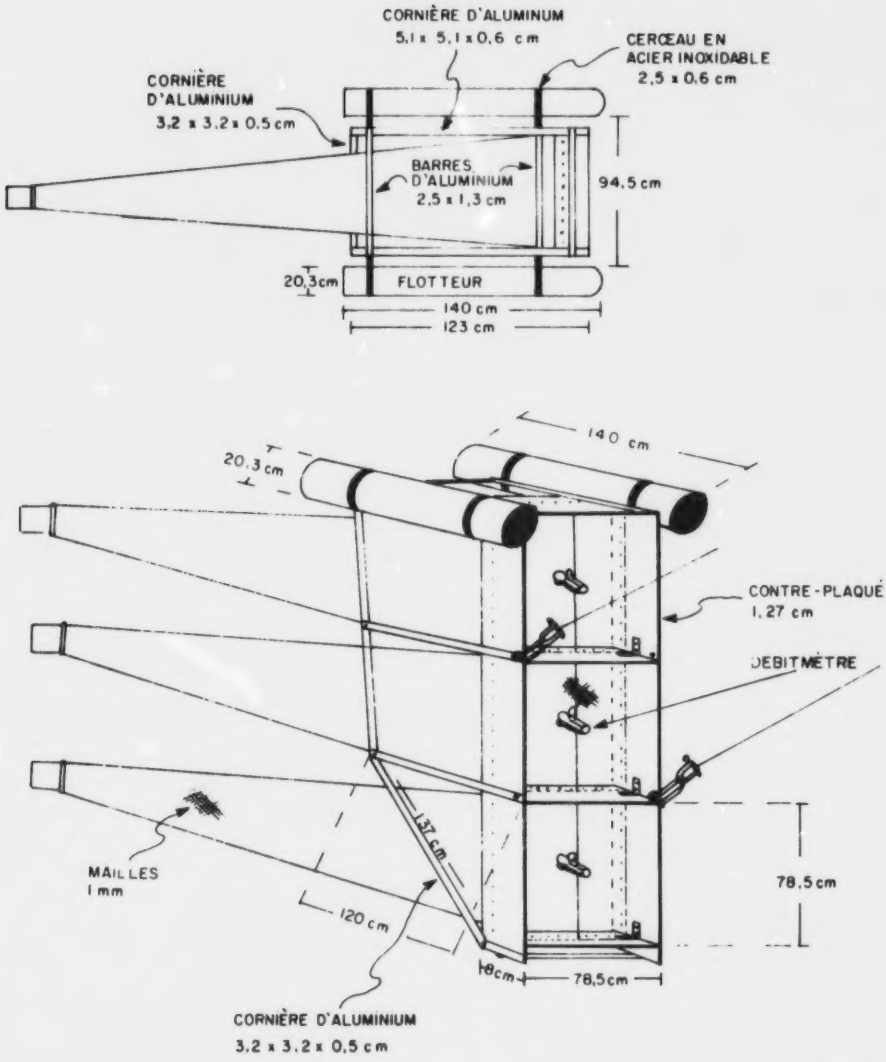

CORNIÈRE D'ALUMINIUM
5,1 x 5,1 x 0,6 cm
CERCEAU EN
ACIER INOXIDABLE
2,5 x 0,6 cm
CORNIÈRE
D'ALUMINIUM
3,2 x 3,2 x 0,5 cm
BARRES
D'ALUMINIUM
2,5 x 1,3 cm
94,5 cm
20,3cm
FLOTTEUR
140 cm
123 cm
140 cm
20,3 cm
CONTRE-PLAQUÉ
1,27 cm
DÉBITMÈTRE
137 cm
MAILLES
1 mm
120 cm
78,5 cm
8cm
78,5cm
CORNIÈRE D'ALUMINIUM
3,2 x 3,2 x 0,5 cm

FIGURE 4

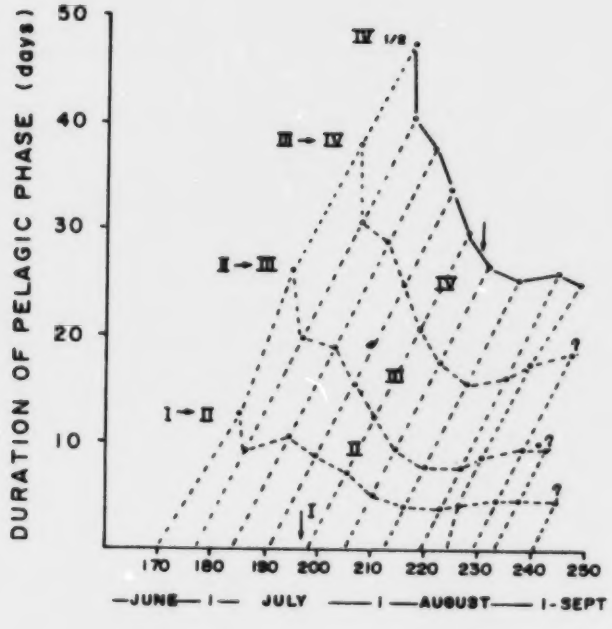

DURATION OF PELAGIC PHASE (days)
50
40
30
20
10
IV 1/8
III → IV
II → III
I → II
IV
III
II
I
?
?
?
170
180
190
200
210
220
230
240
250
—JUNE— I — JULY —— I —AUGUST—— I-SEPT

FIGURE 5

lobster larvae, are 1000 times more abundant than larval lobsters. It appears that lobster larvae were not food limited in Baie de Plaisance during the study since the duration of the first three planktonic stages was comparable to that measured in laboratory experiments (24 vs 21 d), the growth rates were high and potential prey organisms abundant.

Hydrodynamics and Recruitment Variability: Food Web Effects

Two of the projects summarized so far investigated direct effects of hydrodynamical processes on recruitment variability. Such processes can also influence larval survival indirectly through the food web (Sutcliffe 1972, 1973; Cushing 1975, 1982; Dickie and Trites 1983; Legendre and Demers 1985). In coastal and estuarine environments frontal zones are generally characterized by high primary production rates and large phytoplankton biomasses (Kahru et. al. 1984; Richardson 1985; Richarason et. al. 1986). This promotes the reproduction and growth of herbivorous zooplankton (Kiorboe and Johansen 1986) which are preyed upon by carnivorous organisms such as fish larvae. Such conditions should promote larval fish growth and survival. High abundance of larval fish can therefore be expected in frontal zones either as a result of adapted reproduction strategies promoting transport of larvae into these areas or simply because larvae growing in such areas survive better.

Project #6 was designed to describe the vertical and cross-frontal distribution of phytoplankton, zooplankton and fish larvae in a frontal area and to evaluate specific mechanisms possibly responsible for transferring primary production products to fish larvae. The study was conducted in the frontal zone defined by the Gaspé current and the Anticosti gyre in the northwestern Gulf of St. Lawrence (Figure 1). Stations were sampled along a transect across the front with various plankton nets, including a multiple opening and closing 1-meter ichthyoplankton net (BIONESS), to determine the horizontal and vertical distributions of various plankton groups. Preliminary results indicate that large diatoms and dinoflagellates, which favour herbivorous production and reproduction, as well as copepod eggs and nauplii, the food of larval fish, are concentrated on the stratified side of the front. Small capelin larvae were also much more abundant there, whereas larger capelin and redfish larvae were more widely distributed across the study area. This suggests that the occupation of an exceptionally rich area is less critical for the survival of more robust larvae. While frontal zones might be essential for a massive survival of young larvae, they could play a much lesser role in the ecology of older ones.

Physical processes are expected to have a dramatic influence on food web dynamics in northern areas where ice covers the surface of the sea for extended periods of time. A preliminary sampling program was carried out in the spring of 1986 (Project #7) to evaluate the possible relationship between the timing of ice break and the survival of larval fish in northern Quebec rivers. Several species of anadromous (Coregonus clupeaformis, C. artedii, Lota lota) and marine (Boreogadus saida, Gadus ogac) fish larvae were previously reported to hatch just prior to, or at the time of ice break-up in James and Hudson Bay. Anadromous fish larvae were shown to be flushed from the rivers into Hudson Bay during the period of increased river flow at ice-break, and could thus benefit from the increased zooplankton biomass associated with the marine epontic flora.

It was hypothesized that the persistence of the ice cover in the Bay after the expulsion of anadromous fish larvae would be favourable to their survival. The absence of wind-induced vertical mixing would allow the maintenance of the integrity of the freshwater plume under the ice. Anadromous fish larvae would then be physically isolated from marine predators and be allowed a more gradual osmotic adaptation to marine conditions, while benefitting from high food supply.

The organisms occurring in the drift were sampled before, during and after the ice break in the Great Whale River. After the ice break, the plume of the river was sampled along a transect in Hudson Bay and compared with the organisms occurring in the marine layer located underneath it. In the absence of wind, the waters in the bay remained heavily stratified and exhibited distinct animal assemblages and physical and chemical properties. Anadromous fish larvae (mostly Lota lota) were restricted to the freshwater upper layer, while marine fish larvae (mostly Boreogadus saida) and predators were found in the underlying marine waters.

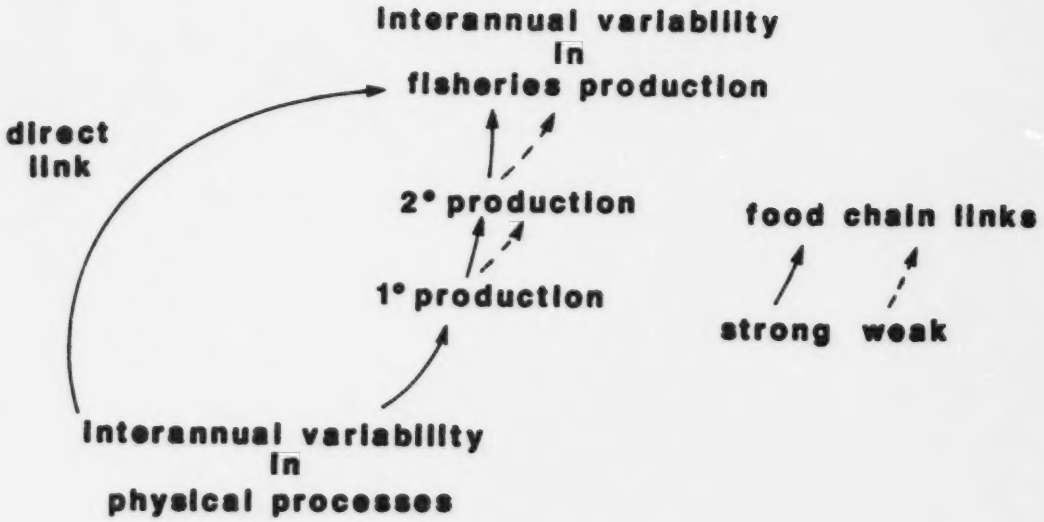
More elaborate work will be initiated in the spring of 1988 (Project #8). Current meters and CTD profiles will be used to identify circulation patterns and describe the evolution of the freshwater plume from winter to spring conditions. The food web from epontic algae to fish larvae will be monitored to determine the food resource available to the larvae. Larval growth and condition will be followed to identify favorable survival conditions.

Food Web Dynamics

A central theme in present-day studies of marine plankton dynamics is the efficiency and variability of linkages in the cycles of marine biological production. Productivity at each step in the marine pelagic food chain has been observed to vary at a number of spatio-temporal scales. How this variability at one tropic level relates to fluctuations in another is still not understood. A key question is how 3- to 4-fold variability in annual primary production is magnified to result in 10- to 100-fold variability in fish or benthos recruitment.

Project #9 concerns linkages in the marine food web of the lower Estuary and the northwestern Gulf of St. Lawrence. It focuses on the role that planktonic copepods may play in the transfer of materials and energy from phytoplankton to larval fish and invertebrates. Two alternative concepts about the interconnection between primary producers, planktonic copepods and invertebrate and fish larvae are proposed. They can be termed the "weak filter" and "strong filter" hypotheses (Figure 6), referring to the extent to which the dynamics of zooplankton populations and the feeding behaviour of the larvae filter out the effects of fluctuations in primary productivity on recruitment (Runge 1988).

The weak-filter hypothesis states that there is a significant link between interannual variability in the magnitude and pattern of primary production and fish recruitment. This would be the case in ecosystems where Calanus finmarchicus dominate the zooplankton community since Calanus egg production rates are strongly related to variability in phytoplankton standing


interannual variability
in
fisheries production
direct
link
2° production
1° production
food chain links
strong
weak
interannual variability
in
physical processes

stock (Runge 1985a; 1985b). In such systems, the strength of a fish year-class may be determined by the availability of planktonic food at the time of yolk-sac resorption as proposed by Hjort (1914) and Cushing (1969).

The alternative, the strong-filter hypothesis, proposes that in systems where zooplankters other than Calanus dominate, the impact of fluctuations in primary productivity is filtered by the dynamics of the zooplankton community and by the feeding behaviour of the larvae. There are several variations of this hypothesis, but the essential point is that food may not limit the first feeding larvae because they can eat alternative prey if Calanus eggs and nauplii are not available. Alternative food sources may include tintinnids and nauplii of smaller copepod species (Last 1980). The productivity of these prey populations is much less affected by phytoplankton variability (McLaren 1978; Runge 1984; Ohman 1985; Frost 1985). Consequently, the link between fluctuations in phytoplankton production and prey availability to larval fish and invertebrates is damped. Project #9 will begin to examine the importance of Calanus finmarchicus and the validity of the "weak filter/strong link" hypothesis for redfish (Sebastes sp.) larvae in the northwestern Gulf of St. Lawrence in the spring of 1988.

Project #9 proposes that an abundant supply of prey items of the right size can be critical to the success of a fish or invertebrate year-class. Much of the emphasis of recruitment research has been and still is focused on quantitative characteristics of various larval fish and invertebrate food resources. Much less effort is devoted to the quality of those prey items available to feeding larvae. Project #10 is addressing one aspect of this problem by investigating the sensitivity of marine fish and invertebrate larvae to the toxins produced by the dinoflagellate Protogonyaulax tamarensis.

The frequency and distribution of toxic algal blooms have been increasing in various parts of the world since the mid-seventies (Anderson et. al. 1985). The paralytic toxins responsible for the catastrophic consequences of these blooms have been studied mainly in relation to human food poisoning. However, it is well established from research work conducted in Europe, Japan and North America that these toxins can be lethal for commercially important fish species intoxicated either directly by feeding on the toxic organisms or indirectly through a contaminated food chain (Adams et. al. 1968; White 1980; Hortensen 1985). Recent work indicates that the survival of larval fish can also be compromised by these toxins (White et. al. 1987).

P. tamarensis is the dominant toxic organism in the St. Lawrence system and is abundant in several coastal areas (Therriault et. al. 1986). Such areas are often colonized by early life history stages of marine fish and invertebrates which use them as nursery grounds. In order to verify that the survival of marine fish larvae is reduced in presence of P. tamarensis toxins, herring and capelin larvae were exposed to various concentrations of the toxic dinoflagellate in laboratory experiments. Larval mortality was between 60 and 100% higher in the treatments than in non-toxic controls. Further experiments are being conducted but these initial results suggest that recruitment of various species could be affected by annual or longer-term variations in the distribution and timing of toxic blooms. These effects could become catastrophic for several coastal regions of the world in general, and of Eastern

Canada in particular, if the current increasing trends in time, space and frequency are maintained. Field work will be initiated in the summer of 1988 to investigate the relationships between the dynamics of toxic dinoflagellate blooms and the ecology of larval fish and invertebrates. Particular attention will be devoted to the transmission of dinoflagellate toxins through the planktonic food web.

While it is widely hypothesized that the success of year-classes is influenced by the quantity and quality of food available to the early life history stages of fish and invertebrates, experimental studies have reached the consensus that both starvation and predation are the proximate factors responsible for the mortality rates observed during larval stages (Rothschild and Rooth 1982). Project #11 was devised to test the general hypothesis that the survival of young fishes is a function, at least partially, of the speed at which they grow through those size intervals when they are most susceptible to predation (Schoener 1971). This implies that young fishes growing at various rates will also exhibit various survival rates.

To test this prediction, relationships between the age of young fishes and the size of reference growth structures will be analyzed (Healey 1982). Atlantic mackerel (Scomber scombrus) is an ideal species for such studies. In the southern Gulf of St. Lawrence young mackerel grow to about 180 mm during their first five months of life and daily increments are visible on their otoliths (Dr. B. Côté, INRS, Rimouski, Quebec, Canada, unpubl. data). Young mackerel will be sampled throughout the summer of 1988 and relationships between age and the size of a reference area on the otoliths will be investigated. This represents the first step in the assessment of the influence of mortality during the early life history on recruitment variability in mackerel.

Survival of young fishes appears to revolve around the issue of "eating or being eaten . . .". It is, therefore, generally assumed that larvae benefit largely from feeding and that they should always attempt to eat at maximal rates since fast growth would also reduce their overall vulnerability to predators. Gut contents are customarily used as an index of feeding performance, with low levels implying food limitation, sub-normal growth and higher risk of starvation and/or predation. Using this scenario, it has been argued that larval fish are food limited, that the key to survival is to encounter patches of dense prey organisms (see Houde 1978), and that these patches are formed mainly through physical processes. It then follows that physical phenomena are responsible for the inter-annual variability of survival in populations of marine larval fishes.

This argument is based on a simplistic view of feeding and it ignores the fact that feeding activities also increase the risk of being captured by predators (Giguère and Northcote 1987). This is a non-energetic cost of feeding which must be balanced against its energy benefits (Dill 1986). Unfortunately, formal solutions have not been derived for the lack of a proper common currency.

A unified feeding model has been derived for Project #12 using transparent larvae as model organisms for which volume of ingested food brings together energetic and non-energetic costs of feeding into a unique framework. This formal model allows one to answer a fundamental question of optimal

foraging: "How much to feed?". According to this model, the feeding rate which maximizes the survivorship of larval fishes is much less than the physiological maximum. Laboratory and field evidence obtained to date support this view. The amount of food present in the gut is, therefore, not necessarily a good indicator of survival since it appears that larval fish "trade-off" predation risk against energetic benefits and growth. Gut content data should be interpreted with great caution. The role played by food patchiness in determining patterns of survivorship in marine fish larvae should be re-evaluated.

Population Studies

As exemplified in the present report, most recruitment studies concentrate on the ecology and dynamics of young fish and invertebrates. This is mandatory to evaluate the importance of trophodynamic processes (predation and starvation) operating during the early life history as regulatory mechanisms of year-class strength. For instance, it is sufficient to test predictions derived from the hypothesis rooted in the pioneering work of Hjort (1914) and elegantly formalized by Cushing (1969). The "Match-Mismatch Hypothesis" proposed that variations in recruitment are determined by interannual variations in the degree of spatio-temporal coincidence between larvae and their food resource. The timing and location of spawning would, therefore, be selected as to optimize this spatio-temporal coincidence.

Studies of both the adult and larval phases are, however, necessary to evaluate a new hypothesis introduced by Iles and Sinclair (1982) and fully developed by Sinclair (1988). The "Member/Vagrant" hypothesis challenges the importance of trophic interactions during early life history as recruitment regulatory mechanisms. It states that temporal variability in abundance of marine species with a complex life cycle is a function of the inter-generational losses of individuals (vagrancy and mortality) from the appropriate distributional area that will ensure membership within a given population. For species with a planktonic stage oceanographic processes may dominate in generating this variability in losses (Sinclair et Iles 1987). This implies that absolute abundance could be largely independent of reproduction, growth, or other biological parameters.

This might be the case, for instance, for Atlantic herring (Clupea harengus) where the number of genetically distinct populations would be determined by the number of distinct, geographically stable larval retention areas (Iles and Sinclair 1982). The hydrodynamic processes specific to a retention area would dictate the mean size as well as the year-to-year variability in recruitment of its associated population. The genetic isolation between populations would result from homing of mature individuals back to their native retention area to reproduce. This homing instinct would be focused on the hydrographic features of the retention area.

Project #13 was designed to test various aspects of the "Member/Vagrant" hypothesis and evaluate its merits relative to those of the "Match-Mismatch" hypothesis. It concentrates on the Ile Verte herring population of the St. Lawrence Estuary which presents the following advantages: it is relatively isolated from adjacent populations and easily accessible which simplifies sampling and decreases the uncertainty as to the origin of the

individuals sampled, especially for early life history stages and mature fish. It is commercially exploited which facilitates data collection on the adults. Finally, it has been the object of several population dynamics studies and is often used in the work of Sinclair and collaborators as evidence to support their theory.

According to the "Match-Mismatch" hypothesis, the spawning of a marine population should occur at a time and location such as to maximize the chance of coincidence between first-feeding larvae and their food (Cushing 1969). The "Member/Vagrant" hypothesis predicts that spawning will take place within a retention area defined by hydrodynamic processes (Iles and Sinclair 1982). Herring from a genetically isolated population will spawn at a moment in the season such as to ensure that the larvae will have enough time to grow and reach metamorphosis either during the same or at the onset of the following productive period of the year, for spring and fall spawners respectively (Sinclair and Tremblay 1984). Because the St. Lawrence Estuary is a tidally energetic sea of low productivity (Therriault and Levasseur 1985) it is predicted that spawning will occur only in the spring (Sinclair et Tremblay 1984). The poor growing conditions in the Estuary would result in the larvae methamorphosing at a smaller size which would explain why the adults of this population are particularly small at age (pygmy) (Côté et. al. 1980). That this population retains its pygmy characteristics is seen as a proof of homing in herring, an essential element of Iles and Sinclair's stock structure hypothesis (Sinclair and Iles 1985).

To test these various predictions ichthyoplankton surveys were conducted in 1985 and 1986. Spawning herring were sampled in both years for various biological characters and morphometric, meristic and biochemical analyses.

The results available to date indicate that spawning occurred in the spring and fall of both years. In 1985, spring and fall larvae emerged within the limits of the predicted retention area (Iles and Sinclair 1982). The spring cohort appeared in the retention area two weeks prior to the maximum concentration of particles in the size range of suitable prey organisms. The fall cohort emerged after the fall peak in particle concentration and its abundance in the samples decreased relatively faster than that of the spring larvae. Analyses of the data collected on adult fish revealed that pygmy herring did not constitute more than 50% of the spawning stock and that genetic isolation from adjacent populations was much less than expected. In the light of these incomplete results, it now appears as though a hierarchy of factors is controlling herring spawning in the St. Lawrence Estuary. Spawning location would be determined by the location of hydrodynamical processes delineating a retention area as predicted by Iles and Sinclair (1982). However, timing and possibly interannual variability in year-class success could depend on trophic processes within the retention area. Homing certainly does not appear as strict as proposed by Iles and Sinclair (1982) and tidally energetic seas can support more than one herring population.

Special Projects

CIRESOL: A Canada/France Collaborative Effort on Recruitment

France recently launched a National Recruitment Program with the general objective of better understanding the factors determining recruitment variability in marine organisms. One of the goals of this multidisciplinary program focusses on the early life history of the flatfish Solea vulgaris. A specific objective of CIRESOL (Circulation et Recrutement de la Sole) is to assess the respective role of transport and mortality in the decrease of larval sole abundance with age. Another one is to describe the mechanisms whereby sole larvae are transported from the open sea spawning grounds to the coastal nursery areas.

In a concerted effort to address the transport problem, French and Canadian scientists conducted a joint research cruise in the Bay of Biscay in April 1987 (Project #14). The vertical distribution of the zooplankters and fish larvae and the structure of the water column were investigated along three transects and during a 72-hour fixed station with a BIONESS. The plankton samples are currently being sorted and results are not yet available.

An Inter-regional Joint Project

Project #15 is a joint project with the DFO-Gulf region designed to acquire a better understanding of the processes involved in the self-sustainment of Crassostrea virginica populations, a dominant oyster species in Caraquet Bay and adjacent areas of the western Gulf of St. Lawrence. Another objective is to examine the dispersal and settlement mechanisms of oyster spat. The following questions will be addressed: how does the circulation pattern influence larval distribution? What are the possible larval retention mechanisms in the bay? Since it is hypothesized that most larvae are swept out of the bay by wind action and tidal exchange, how does the circulation pattern influence the observed differences in growth rates between areas at the north and south sides of the bay? Is this strictly a function of algal food supply?

This project is expected to commence in July and August 1988 depending on the timing of spawning in natural beds. Current meters, drogues, tide gauges and CTD's will be used to study baywide water movements and transport capabilities over a 3-5 week period at the time of maximal larval abundance. Plankton surveys will be conducted every 2-3 days over the course of the project to describe the horizontal distribution of the larvae and monitor various biotic and abiotic variables. Spat collectors will be used as well.

Symposium on Food Quality

Technical limitations constitute the principal reason why food quality is only rarely investigated in planktonic food webs. New technologies recently introduced in biological oceanography such as High Pressure Liquid Chromatography and Flow Cytometry open up new research avenues. An international symposium aimed at identifying and evaluating these new possibilities as well as addressing the more general problem of evaluating the quality of planktonic food organisms is in preparation at the Maurice Lamontagne Institute (Project #16). Its general objectives would be to:

1. evaluate which parameters are most effective at quantifying the nutritive value of primary producers;

2. determine the consequences of feeding on certain types of particles; possible effects of taxonomical differences, physiological states, etc.;

3. seek a better interpretation of the relations between food abundance and larval fish and invertebrate condition factors.

This symposium is now planned for the summer of 1989.

Conclusion

The 16 projects summarized in this review cover the entire range of topics found in modern recruitment research. Most of them are multidisciplinary and several involve collaboration between scientists from two or even all three research branches of DFO-Quebec (biological sciences, chemical and physical sciences, and Canadian Hydrographic Service). Several scientists from various Quebec universities are often involved as well. This demonstrates that recruitment research constitutes a major investment in the region. It also represents an impressive example of research integration within the youngest Fisheries and Oceans region in the country.

Acknowledgements

We are grateful to Denis D'Amours, Louis Giguère, Christiane Hudon and Patrick Ouellet for providing us with special reports on their research. They were very useful in preparing this summary. We, however, assume full responsibility for the way these, as well as any other information, were incorporated in this document.

References

Adams, J.A., D.D. Seaton, J.B. Buchanan and M.R. Longbottom. 1968. Biological observations associated with a toxic phytoplankton bloom off the East Coast. Nature 220: 24-25.

Anderson, D.M., A.W. White and D.G. Baden. 1985. Toxic dinoflagellates. Proc. Third Intern. Conf. Toxic Dinoflagellates, St. Andrews, N.B., June 8-12, 1985. Elsevier, N.Y. 561 p.

Attard, J. 1985. Fécondité individuelle et production d'oeufs par recrue du homard (Homarus americanus) sur les côtes nord et sud des Iles de la Madeleine, Golfe du Saint-Laurent. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1417: 14 p.

Attard, J. and C. Hudon. 1985. Embryonic development and energetic investment in egg production in relation to size of female lobster (Homarus americanus). Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 44: 1157-1164.

Côté, G., P. Lamoureux, J. Boulva and G. Lacroix. 1980. Séparation des populations de hareng de l'Atlantique (Clupea harengus harengus) de l'estuaire du Saint-Laurent et de la péninsule gaspésienne. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 37: 66-71.

Cushing, D.H. 1969. The regularity of the spawning season of some fishes. J. Cons. Int. Explor. Mer. 33: 81-92.

Cushing, D.H. 1975. Marine ecology and fisheries. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge. 277 p.

Cushing, D.H. 1982. Climate and fisheries. Academic Press, London. 373 p.

Dickie, L.M. and R.W. Trites. 1983. The Gulf of St. Lawrence. p. 403-425. In B.H. Ketchum (ed.) Estuaries and enclosed seas. Elsevier Scient. Publ. Co., Amsterdam.

Dill, L.M. 1986. Animal decision making and its ecological consequences: the future of aquatic ecology and behaviour. Can. J. Zool. 65: 803-811.

Drinkwater, K.F. 1987. "Sutcliffe revisited": previously published correlations between fish stocks and environmental indices and their recent performance. In R.J. Perry and K.T. Frank (eds.). Environmental effects on recruitment to Canadian Atlantic fish stocks. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1556: 41-61.

Frost, B.W. 1985. Food limitation of the planktonic marine copepods Calanus pacificus and Pseudocalanus sp. in a temperate fjord. Arch. Hydrobiol. Beih. Ergebn. Limnol. 21: 1-13.

Giguère, L.A., and T.G. Northcote. 1987. Ingested prey increase risks of visual predation in transparent Chaoborus larvae. Oecologia 73: 48-52.

Healey, M.C. 1982. Timing and relative intensity of size-selective mortality of juvenile chum salmon (Oncorhynchus keta) during early sea life. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 39: 952-957.

Hjort, J. 1914. Fluctuations in the great fisheries of northern Europe. Rapp. Proc. Verb. Cons. Int. Explor. Mer. 20: 1-228.

Houde, E.D. 1978. Critical food concentrations for larvae of three species of subtropical marine fishes. Bull. Mar. Sci. 28: 395-411.

Hudon, C. and P. Fradette. 1988. Planktonic growth of lobster (Homarus americanus) larvae off Iles de la Madeleine, Gulf of St. Lawrence. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. (in press).

Hudon, C., P. Fradette and P. Legendre. 1986. La répartition horizontale et verticale des larves de homard (Homarus americanus) autour des Iles de la Madeleine. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 2164-2176.

Iles, T.D. and M. Sinclair. 1982. Atlantic herring: stock discreteness and abundance. Science 215: 627-633.

Kiorboe, T. and K. Johansen. 1986. Studies of a herring larval patch in the Buchan area. IV. Zooplankton distribution and productivity in relation to hydrographic features. Dana 6: 37-51.

Last, J.M. 1980. The food of twenty species of fish larvae in the west-central North Sea. Fish. Res. Tech. Rep. No. 60. Lowestoft (England): 44 p.

Legendre, L. and S. Demers. 1985. Auxiliary energy, ergoclines and aquatic biological production. Nat. Can. 112: 5-14.

McLaren, I.A. 1978. Generation lengths of some temperate marine copepods: estimation, prediction and implications. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 35: 1330-1342.

Mortensen, A.M. 1985. Massive mortalities in the Faroe Islands caused by a Gimnodium excavata red tide. In A.M. Anderson, A.W. White and D.G. Baden (Eds.) Toxic dinoflagellate blooms. Proc. Third Intern. Conf. Toxic Dinoflagellate Blooms. Elsevier, N.Y.

Ohman, M.D. 1985. Resource-satiated population growth of the copepod Pseudocalanus sp. Arch. Hydrobiol. Beih. Ergebn. Limnol. 21: 15-32.

Rothschild, B.J. and C. Rooth. 1982. Fish ecology III, a foundation for REX, a recruitment experiment. Rosenstial School of Marine and Atmospheric Science Tech. Rep. 82-8: 389 p.

Runge, J.A. 1984. Egg production of Calanus pacificus Brodsky: laboratory observations. J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol. 74: 53-66.

Runge, J.A. 1985a. Relationship of egg production of Calanus pacificus Brodsky to seasonal changes in phytoplankton availability in Puget Sound, Washington, Limnol. Oceanogr. 30: 382-396.

Runge, J.A. 1985b. Egg production of Calanus finmarchicus in the sea off southwest Nova Scotia. Arch. Hydrobiol. Beih. Ergebn. Limnol. 21: 33-40.

Runge, J.A. 1988. Should we expect a relationship between primary production and fisheries? The role of copepod dynamics as a filter of trophic variability. Hydrobiologia (in press).

Schoener, T.W. 1971. Theory of feeding strategies. Ann. Rev. Ecol. Syst. 2: 369-404.

Sinclair, M. 1988. Marine populations: an essay on population regulation and speciation in the oceans. Sea Grant/Univ. Washington, Seattle (in press).

Sinclair, M. and M.J. Tremblay. 1984. Timing of spawning of Atlantic herring (Clupea harengus harengus) populations and the match-mismatch theory. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 41: 1055-1065.

Sinclair, M. and T.D. Iles. 1985. Atlantic herring (Clupea harengus) distribution in the Gulf of Maine - Scotian Shelf area in relation to oceanographic features. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Si. 42:880-887.

Sinclair, M. and T.D. Iles. 1987. Population regulation and speciation in the oceans. Int. Counc. Explor. Sea C.M. 1987/M:3.

Sutcliffe, W.H., Jr. 1972. Some relation of land drainage, nutrients, particulate material, and fish catch in two eastern Canadian bays. J. Fish. Res. Board. Can. 29: 357-362.

Sutcliffe, W.H., Jr. 1973. Correlations between seasonal river discharge and local landings of American lobster (Homarus americanus) and Atlantic halibut (Hippoglossus hippoglossus) in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 30: 856-859.

Therriault, J.C., J. Painchaud and M. Levasseur. 1985. Factors controlling the occurrence of Protogonyaulax tamarensis and shellfish toxicity in the St. Lawrence Estuary: freshwater runoff and the stability of the water column. p. 141-156. In A.M. Anderson, A.W. White and D.G. Baden (Eds.) Toxic dinoflagellate blooms. Proc. Third Intern. Conf. Toxic Dinoflagellate Blooms. Elsevier, N.Y.

Therriault, J.C. and M. Levasseur. 1985. Control of phytoplankton production in the lower St. Lawrence estuary: light and freshwater runoff. Nat. Can. 112-77-96.

White, A.W. 1980. Recurrence of kills of Atlantic herring (Clupea harengus harengus) caused by dinoflagellate toxins transferred through herbivorous zooplankton. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sc. 37: 2262-2265.

White, A.W., O. Fukuhara and M. Anraku. 1987. Mortality of fish larvae from eating toxic dinoflagellates or zooplankton containing dinoflagellate toxins. Abstr., Fourth Conf. Toxic Dinoflagellate Blooms, Japan.

ANNEXE I - List of Participants for Each Project

1. The CORJAC project: Circulation, oceanography and hydrography of Jacques Cartier Passage. D. Lefaivre (D), V. Koutitonsky (G), P. Ouellet (A), D. Hains (E), A. Condal (I).

2. Effects of climate and hydrography on the recruitment of Northern Gulf of St. Lawrence lobster. C. Hudon (B), A. Lavoie (K), J.M. Dubois (K), G. Vigeant (L).

3. Distribution of lobster larvae around the Magdalen Islands. C. Hudon (B), P. Fradette (M), P. Legendre (N).

4. Lobster recruitment around the Magdalen Islands: influence of climate and hydrography. Y. Simard (A), D. Gauthier (A), E. Bourget (J).

5. Distribution and growth of rock crab (Cancer irroratus) larvae in Pleasant Bay, Magdalen Islands. C. Hudon (B), B. Ste-Marie (A), L. Gendron (A).

6. Planktonic trophic relationships in a cross-frontal area of the Gaspé current: production and larval distribution. L. Fortier (J), J.C. Therriault (C), M. Levasseur (C).

7. Relationship between the timing of ice break and the survival of larval fish in southeastern Hudson Bay. C. Hudon (B).

8. Recruitment of anadromous fish in Canadian Arctic waters: regulation by underice hydrodynamics and microalgal production. L. Fortier (J), L. Legendre (J), R.G. Ingram (O), J.A. Gagné (A), J.C. Therriault (C), S. Demers (C).

9. Role of copepod dynamics as a filter of trophic variability. J.A. Runge (C), Y. Delafontaine (C), L. Giguère (C).

10. Recruitment of commercial species in the St. Lawrence: sensitivity of the larvae to Protogonyaulax tamarensis toxicity. L. Fortier (J), J.A. Gagné (A), A. Cembella (C), A. Cardinal (J).

11. Selective mortality in juvenile Atlantic mackerel (Scomber scombrus). D. D'Amours (A).

12. Optimal feeding rates in transparent zooplankton. L. Giguère (C), R. Dunbrack (P).

13. Population dynamics and recruitment of the St. Lawrence Estuary herring population. J.A. Gagné (A), L. Fortier (J), Y. Gratton (H).

14. Hydrodynamics and distribution of larval sole (Solea vulgaris in the Bay of Biscay, France. J.A. Gagné (A), L. Fortier (J), C. Koutsikopoulos (Q), A. Herbland (Q).

15. Study of oyster larval distribution and retention in Caraquet Bay and adjacent areas of the western Gulf of St. Lawrence. D. Booth (D), T.W. Sephton (F).

16. Symposium on the quality of primary producers as a food source for zooplankters. J.C. Therriault (C), S. Demers (C).

Addresses

(A) Fisheries Research, Biological Sciences, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Maurice Lamontagne Institute, P.O. Box 1000, 850 Route de la Mer, Mont-Joli, Quebec, G5H 3Z4.

(B) Fisheries Research, Biological Sciences, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Arctic Biological Station, 555 St. Pierre Blvd., Ste. Anne de Bellevue, Quebec, H9X 3R4.

(C) Biological Oceanography, Biological Sciences, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Maurice Lamontagne Institute, P.O. Box 1000, 850 Route de la Mer, Mont-Joli, Quebec, G5H 3Z4.

(D) Physical Oceanography, Chemical and Physical Sciences, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Maurice Lamontagne Institute. P.O. Box 1000, 850 Route de la Mer, Mont-Joli, Quebec, G5H 3Z4.

(E) Canadian Hydrographic Service, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Maurice Lamontagne Institute, P.O. Box 1000, 850 Route de la Mer, Mont-Joli, Quebec, G5H 3Z4.

(F) Fisheries Research, Biological Sciences, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Moncton, New Brunswick, E1C 9B6.

(G) I.N.R.S. Océanologie, 310 rue Ursulines, Rimouski, Quebec. G5L 3A1.

(H) Département d'Océanographie, université du Québec à Rimouski, 310 des Ursulines, Rimouski. Quebec, G5L 3A1.

(I) Département des Sciences Géodésiques et Télédétection. Université Laval, Ste. Foy, Quebec, G1K 7P4.

(J) GIROQ, Pavillon Vachon, Université Laval, Ste. Foy, Quebec, G1K 7P4.

(K) CARTEL, Université de Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, Quebec, J1K 2R1.

(L) Atmospheric Environment Services, Environment Canada.

(M) Les Crustacés Vivants Madelinots Inc., C.P. 182, Cap-aux-Meules, Iles de la Madeleine, Quebec, G0B 1B0.

(N) Département des Sciences Biologiques, Université de Montréal, C.P. 6126, Succursale "A", Montréal, Quebec, H3C 3J7.

(O) Climate research group, Department of Meteorology, McGill University, 805 Sherbrooke Street West, Montréal, Quebec, H3A 2K6.

(P) Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Pacific Biological Station, Nanaimo, British Columbia, V9R 5K6.

(Q) IFREMER Centre de Nantes, B.P. 1049, 44037 Nantes CEDEX, France.

ANNEXE 2

The following list represents recruitment-oriented research projects currently conducted by DFO scientists from the Gulf Region (Department of Fisheries and Oceans, P.O. Box 5030, Moncton, New Brunswick, E1C 9B6). These projects are not included in the review presented here.

1. Recruitment of salmonids in western Newfoundland. M. Chadwick.

2. Herring spawning bed surveys in the southern Gulf of St. Lawrence. S. Messieh.

3. Distribution of juvenile herring in the southern Gulf of St. Lawrence. D. Cairns, M. Chadwick.

4. Production of juvenile salmon in the southern Gulf of St. Lawrence. R. Randall.

5. Production of juvenile gaspereau in the southern Gulf of St. Lawrence. R. Alexander.

6. Distribution of juvenile cod in the southern Gulf of St. Lawrence. G. Chouinard.

7. Feeding ecology of hake in the southern Gulf of St. Lawrence. D. Clay.

A list of relevant, recent publications, is given below.

Chadwick, E.M.P. 1987. Causes of variable recruitment in a small Atlantic salmon stock. In Common Strategies of Anadromous and Catadromous Fishes. American Fisheries Society Symposium 1: 390-401.

Chadwick, E.M.P. 1987. Relationship between Atlantic salmon smolts and adults in Canadian rivers. P. 301-324. In Mills, D. and D. Piggins (Eds.) Third International Atlantic Salmon Symposium. Timber Press, Oregon. 587 p.

Chadwick, E.M.P., R.R. Claytor, C.E. Léger and R.L. Saunders. 1987. Inverse correlation between ovarian development of Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar) smolts and sea age. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 4: 1320-1325.

Chadwick, E.M.P. and R.G. Randall. 1986. A stock-recruitment relationship for Atlantic salmon in the Miramichi River, New Brunswick. North American J. Fish. Mgmt. 6(2): 200-203.

Chadwick, E.M.P., R.G. Randall and C. Léger. 1986. Ovarian development of Atlantic salmon (Salmon salar) smolts and age at first maturity. Can. Spec. Publ. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 89: 15-23.

Messieh, S.N. 1987. Some characteristics of Atlantic herring (Clupea harengus) spawning in the southern Gulf of St. Lawrence. NAFO Sci. Coun. Studies 11: 55-61.

Messieh, S.N., D.S. Moore and P. Rubec. 1987. Estimation of age and growth of larval Atlantic herring as inferred from examination of daily growth increments of otoliths. In The Age and Growth of Fish, Edited by Robert C. Summerfelt and Gordon E. Hall. 1987. The Iowa State University Press, Ames, Iowa 50010. p. 433-442.

Randall, R.G. and E.M.P. Chadwick. 1986. Density as a factor affecting the production of juvenile Atlantic Salmon (Salmo salar) in the Miramichi and Restigouche Rivers, New Brunswick. Polskie Archivum Hydrobiologii 33: 392-409.

Randall, R.G., M.C. Healey and J. Brian Dempson. 1987. Variability in length of freshwater residence of salmon, trout and char. Amer. Fish. Soc. Symp. 1: 27-41.

V REVIEWS OF DEPARTMENT OF FISHERIES AND OCEANS PROGRAMS ON RECRUITMENT

D. RECRUITMENT STUDIES - CENTRAL AND ARCTIC REGION

by

J. Craig
Central and Arctic Region

A number of Canadian freshwater fish populations, in particular percids, such as walleye and yellow perch, and coregonids such as whitefish and cisco, provide important commercial fisheries even if this importance is somewhat local. Sport fisheries have higher returns in economic and social terms that commercial fisheries. Other fisheries are vital as domestic or subsistence fisheries. Several detailed studies on population dynamics have been performed as a result of the necessity to manage these freshwater fish stocks. These studies have resulted in the production of predictive models such as the morphoedaphic index (Ryder 1965) relating fish production to total dissolved solids and mean depth of lake, and fish yield prediction from total phoshorus (Hanson and Leggett 1982) and from mean annual water temperature (Schlesinger and Regier 1983). Models to predict year class strengths from density independent (in particular temperature and volume of spring run off) and density dependent (number or biomass of adult spawners and predators) have often explained a high proportion of the variability involved (Craig and Kipling 1983; Lysack 1986; Shuter and Koonce 1977). None of these models have defined the direct causative reasons for mortality on the potential recruits to a stock.

In most cases the highest mortality rates take place during the early, larval stages and detailed studies on factors controlling this mortality are being carried out at the Freshwater Institute (see Mathias below). Man induced perturbations such as those causing eutrophication, acidification and pollution (by organics and metals) and their effects on recruitment are being investigated at the Experimental Lakes Area (see Mills below), Habitat changes, such as the building of reservoirs, on fish recruitment have also been studied (see Bodaly below). The limits of response of fish populations to changes in environmental conditions can be measured by comparing fish which are severely perturbed by over-exploitation to unexploited populations. The allocation of energy resources to reproduction and thus potential recruitment can be observed in terms of growth, age of maturity, fecundity and longevity (see Craig below). Over-exploitation can also lead to species shifts in lake communites and this is under investigation in the Dauphin Lake Project (see Flannagan et al. below).

Many freshwater systems in North America are stocked with indigenous and exotic fish. In Canada there has never been a quantitative measure of the success of this stocking in terms of recruitment to the commercial catch. This is at present being done in the Dauphin Lake Project by stocking the lake with genetically distinct walleye larvae.

Freshwater lakes, in particular in the undisturbed regions of Northern Canada, present opportunities for the study of the relationships betwen stock and recruitment that are seldom available elsewhere (see Johnson below). This

is particularly the case with certain Arctic charr, Salvelinus alpinus, populations that occur as the single fish species present. This has the advantage that all population structure that may develop can be ascribed to intraspecific interactions.

The most significant fact to emerge from examination of these undisturbed stocks, and this applies in both single species stocks and multi species stocks, is that juvenile, or pre-recruitment stock is virtually absent in even the most meticulously taken samples. This is evidently a case of suppression of the juveniles by the adults, since continued exploitation does increase the number of juveniles in the sample. This increase may be effected over the course of a single year, if the fishing is extremely heavy, or over the course of a number of years if the fishing is light. Thus there are evidently some juveniles present even though they do not appear in the samples. There is therefore some inverse relationship between stock and juveniles. However these juveniles do not necessarily become recruits. It is frequently observed that large "waves" of pre-recruits appear in one or two years and then disappear before attaining actual recruitment to the "adult" or "establishment" mode.

Long-term, detailed studies on population changes at the Chitty Lakes Station have shown that there is apparently little direct relationship between stock and recruitment (Figs 1 and 2). Baptiste Lake shows the results of continuous observation on an unexploited lake, Drygeese Lake was a) unexploited 1971-73, b) heavily exploited 1973-74 and c) allowed to recover without exploitation 1974-85. Figure 3 shows the effect of exploitation on the sucker population of Heming Lake over a long period of time a) in the pristine state, b) under increasingly heavy exploitation and c) during a period of recovery. Evidently this population is extremely responsive to changes in population density as modulated by fishing pressures. When fishing ceases the population quickly returns to a bimodal size distribution.

Investigations of Arctic marine fish are still at a preliminary stage and are mainly concerned with stock identification. Stock and recruitment studies are planned for the future.

Projects involving recruitment studies that are at present ongoing in the Central and Arctic Region

Name of Scientist: Rodaly, A. Species: Whitefish, Coregonus clupeaformis. Area of work: South Indian Lake, Manitoba. Start of project: 1976. Type of project: A study of the commercial whitefish fishery with respect to the development of a dam at South Indian Lake and the diversion of the Churchill River.

Name of Scientist: Craig, J.F. Species: Walleye, Stizostedion vitreum. Area of work: Dauphin Lake, Ungor Lake and Lake Winnipegosis, Manitoba. Date of start of project: 1984. Type of project: A study of growth, fecundity, age or maturity, longevity and enery allocation between somatic growth and reproductive effort in exploited and unexploited populations.

Name of Scientists: Flannagan, J.F., J.F., Craig, W.D. Franzin and J.A. Mathias. Species: Walleye and other lake species. Area of work: Dauphin Lake, Manitoba. Date of start of project: 1982. Type of project; A study of methods of

EXPERIMENTAL CROPPING OF LAKES

LAKE WHITEFISH
LENGTH FREQUENCIES
LAKE=BAPTISTE

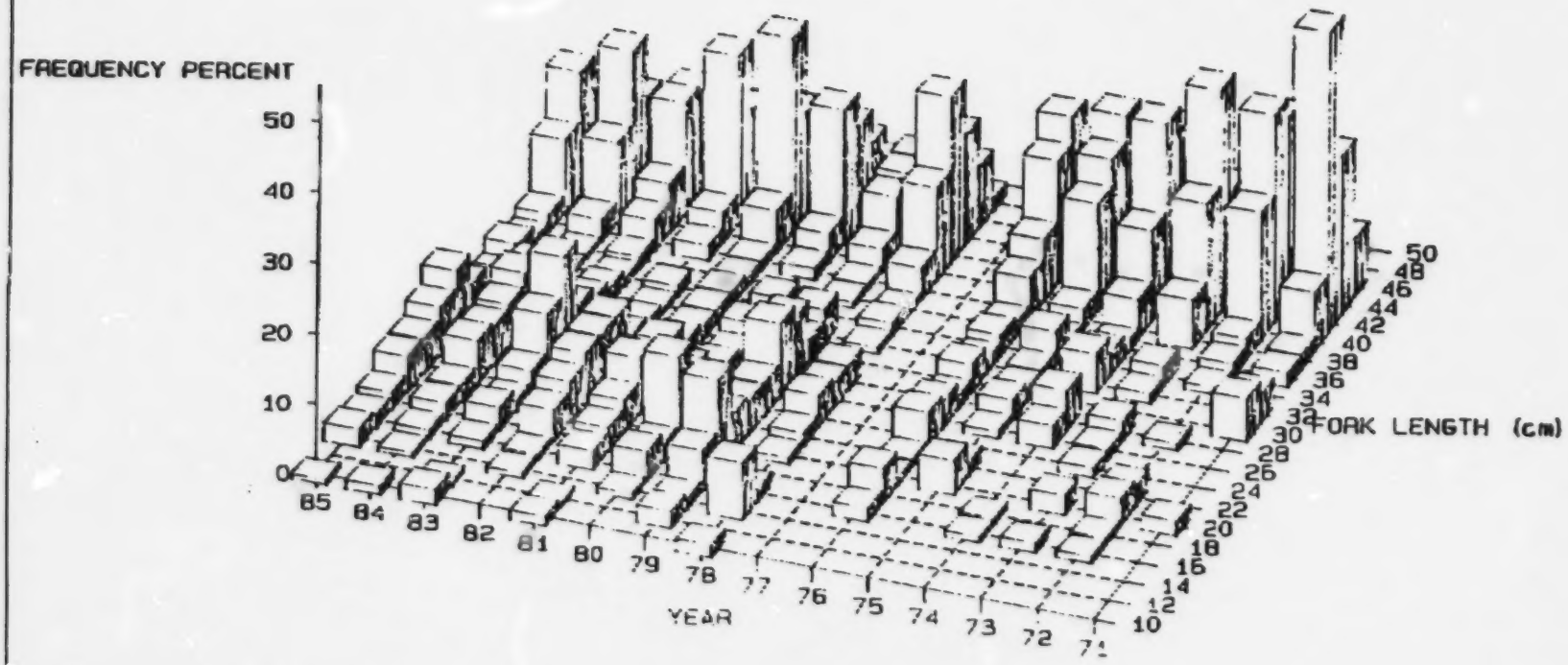


FIGURE 1

EXPERIMENTAL CROPPING OF LAKES

LAKE WHITEFISH
LENGTH FREQUENCIES
LAKE=DRYGEESE

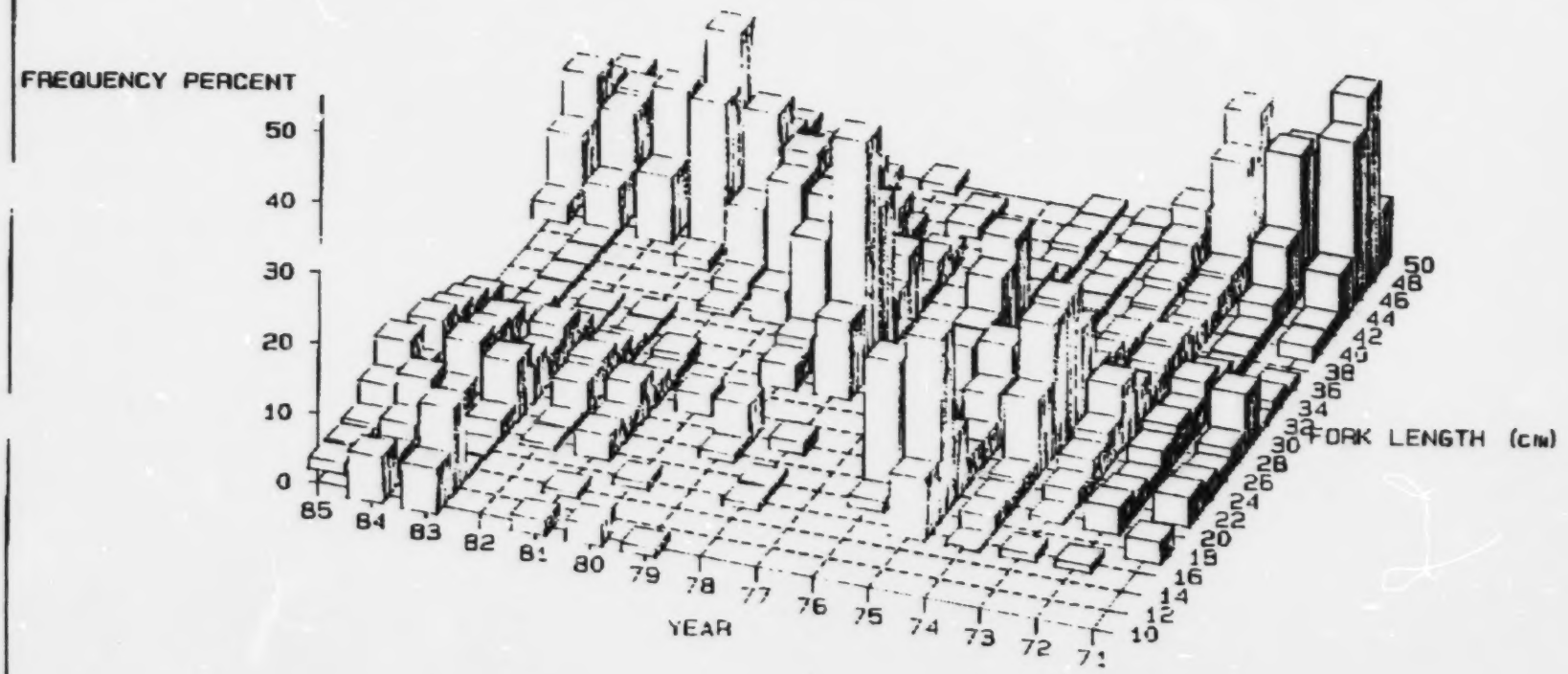


FIGURE 2

WHITE SUCKER --- LENGTH FREQUENCIES --- HEMING LAKE

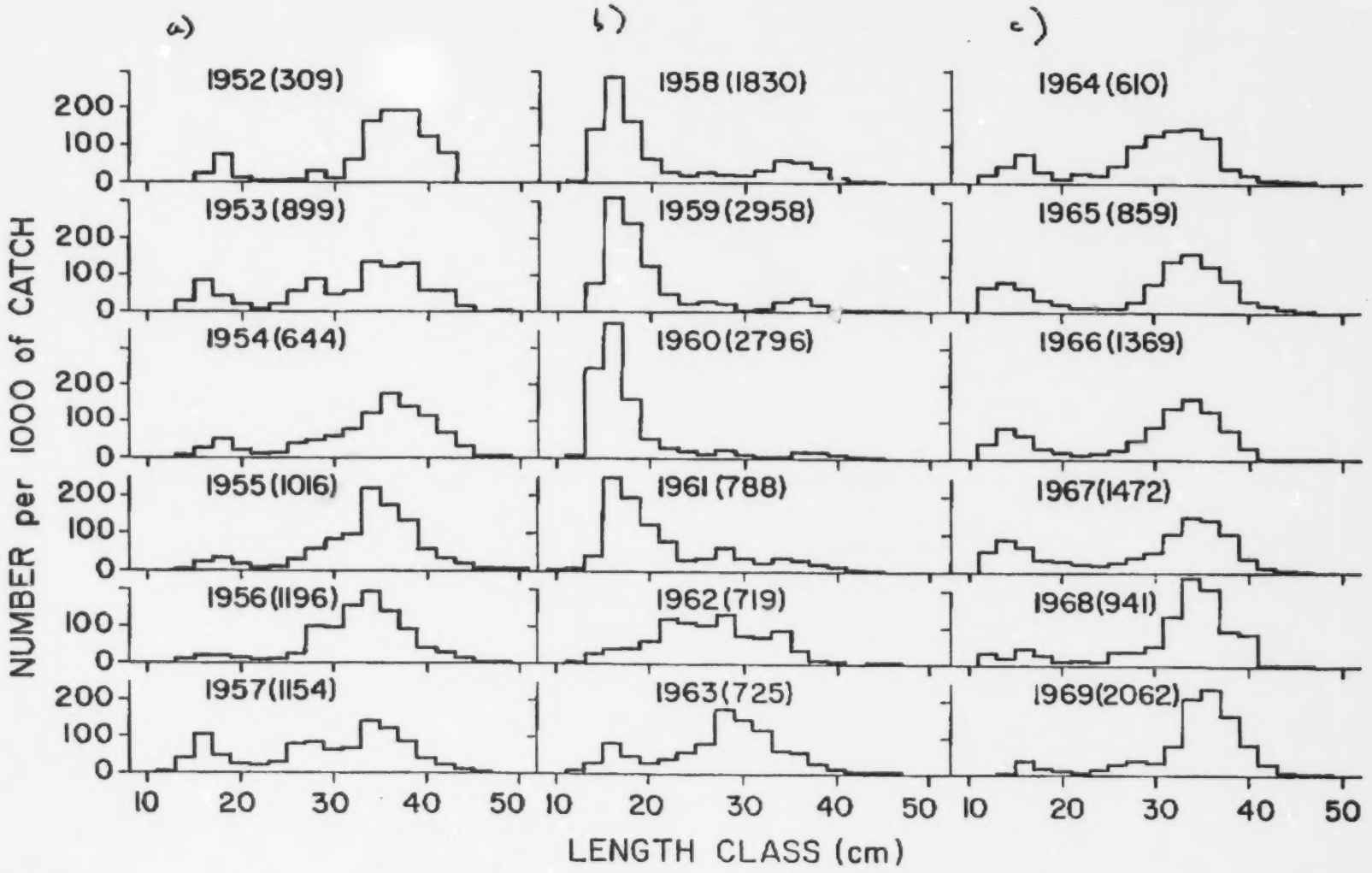


FIGURE 3

enhancing and rehabilitating walleye stocks in prairie lakes. This includes an appraisal of stocking using a genetically distinct population for introductions, stream spawning habitat improvements and lake fish community interactions.

Name of Scientist: Johnson, L., Species: Arctic charr, Salvelinus alpinus. Area of work: Chitty Lakes area, N.W.T. Date of start of project: 1969. type of project: A long-term study on the population dynamics of Arctic charr, the only species of fish present in the lakes investigated, undergoing experimental exploitation.

Name of Scientist: Mathias, J. Species: Walleye.Area of work: Hatchery, pond culture and Lake Winnipeg, Manitoba. Date of start of project: 1983. Type of project: Observation and measurement of recruitment through the larval stage in ponds and in the Lake Winnipeg Delta. Laboratory investigations of factors affecting recruitment to the juvenile stage including food density and size, water temperature, fish behaviour, the significance of the oil globule in early nutrition and water quality. The development of intensive culture of walleye larvae and the benefits of pond fertilisation for walleye rearing.

Name of Scientist: Mills, K. Species: Lake trout, Salvelinus namaycush, white sucker, Catostomus commersoni, lake whitefish, northern pike, Esox lucius, yellow perch, Perca flavescens, slimy sculpin, Cottus congnatus, fahead minnow, Pimephales promelas, pearl dace, Semotilus margarita, finescale dace, Chrosomonus neogaieus, and redbelly dace, C. eos. Area of work: Experimental Lakes Area, Ontario, Date of start of project: 1973. Type of project: The effects on recruitment caused by various stresses (Eutrophication, acidification, exploitation, food web manipulation and organic and heavy metal pollution).

References

Craig, J.F. and C. Kipling (1983). Reproduction effort versus the environment: case histories of Windermere perch, Perca fluviatilis L., and pike, Esox lucius L.J. Fish Biol. 22 (6): 713-727.

Hanson, J.M. and W.C. Leggett (1982). Empirical prediction of fish biomass and yield. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 39: 257-263.

Lysack, W. (1986). Towards a predictive capability for management of the Lake Winnipeg fishery, Manitoba Dept Nat. Res. Ms Rep. No. 86-15, 236 pp.

Ryder, R.A. (1965). A method for estimating the potential fish production of north-temperate lakes. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc. 94 (3): 214-218.

Schlesinger, D.A. and H.A. Regier (1983). Relationship between environmental temperature and yields of subarctic and temperate zone and yields of subarctic and temperate zone fish speices. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 40 (10): 1829-1837.

Shuter, B.J. and J.F. Koonce (1977). A dynamic model of the Western Erie walleye (Stizostedion vitreum vitreum) population. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 34 (10): 1972-1982.

VI STATISTICAL APPROACHES TO RECRUITMENT FORECASTING

A. QUANTITATIVE METHODS IN RECRUITMENT

by

J.C. Rice
Newfoundland Region

INTRODUCTION

Recruitment can be studied in one or both of two broad contexts. One is the basic science value of the knowledge gained from recruitment research. The other context is the managerial responsibility for fisheries, where our ability to manage well may be improved with a better grasp of recruitment. In both contexts, the appropriateness of the quantitative tools used influences directly the value of the results. If weak tools are used, researchers cheat themselves (and their clients) out of the full value of data which have been collected. If incorrect tools are used, or suitable tools are used in incorrect ways, researchers may actually mislead themselves (and their clients) with false conclusions, rather than just weak ones.

Quantitative Methods in Basic Recruitment Research

Problems:

In the initial plans for the workshop, the discussion of what can be done with data, once collected, considered recruitment in the first context. Concerns were 1) a lack of careful attention to principles of experimental design in the planning and execution of recruitment research; 2) the abuse of common statistical methods in analysis of data on recruits and independent variables; 3) the failure to determine the statistical power of tests used, or to use knowledge of a test's power when interpreting results; 4) the failure to recognize when independent variables should be treated as categorical rather than continuous (with corresponding changes in analysis methods); and 5) the slow pace at which new quantitative tools, such as techniques in pattern recognition, exploratory data analysis, and robust modelling methods, were being adopted in many areas of fisheries science, including recruitment research.

The concerns are not new. Moreover, reviewing any series of publications in recruitment one can see improvements in the use of statistical methods. An obvious example is the progression from thoughtless use of multiple linear regression or multiple correlation analysis with dozens of candidate independent variables (often many with various lags) to at least a reliance on Bonferonni methods to improve Type II error rates. Just as it is poor practice to make much out of one instance of P is less than 0.05 when testing some 20 correlations, it is equally questionable to conclude that nothing is going on, with 20 tests all indicating an effect in the same direction, but most not significant at P = 0.05.

Sources of Good Advice on Design and Analysis

A retrospective review paper on use and misue of statistics would not be particularly constructive. It would contain scores of recruitment studies, tabulated by the types of statistical sins committed in them. Although such tabulations can make a point very effectively, it is unlikely that such a tabulation is needed to demonstrate that some researchers have played a bit loose with statistics in studies of recruitment.

The other parts of such a paper - reiterating the assumptions and limitations of familiar statistical tools, and showing off some necessarily superficial knowledge of a few new methods - is equally unnecessary. Good papers and texts abound on regression and linear models (Draper & Smith 1981, Neter, et al. 1983), ordination and other methods of dimensionality reduction (Gauch 1982, Pielou 1984, Bock 1988), and experimental design (Cochran & Cox 1950, Finney 1955, Hicks 1964, Kirk 1972, Box et al. 1978). Perhaps none focus on applications to recruitment research directly, but enough have a general ecological slant (Patil et al. 1971, Green 1979, Sokal and Rohlf 1981, Gauch 1982, Pielou 1984, Legendre & Legendre 1985) that those who insist on avoiding excellent but purely statistical texts have a choice of good alternatives.

Exploratory Data Analysis

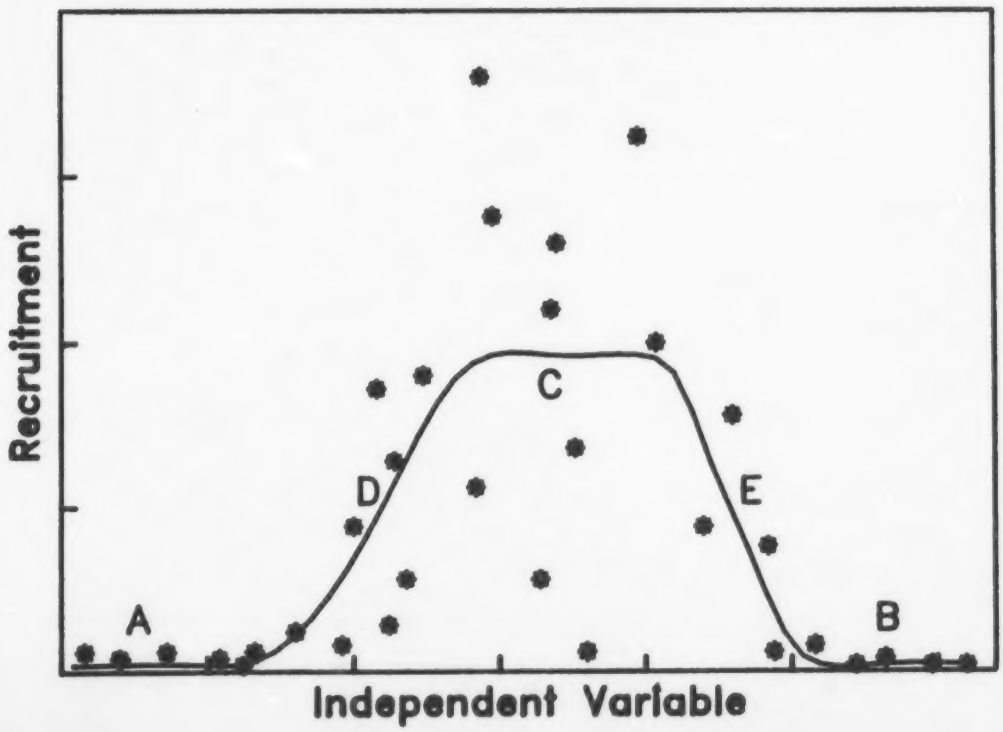
It is probably worth plugging the use of robust and exploratory data analysis methods for several reasons. One important consideration is that both the measure of recruitment and the independent variables (be they attributes of stock, habitat, oceanography or climate) are likely to contain substantial error. Traditional methods often have some problems handling rough measures and errors in independent variables. Recently, not only have powerful methods been developed for analysing such data, but there are methods to diminish the noise itself (Bock 1988).

Another important consideration which should prompt interest in robust and exploratory techniques is the shape of the relationship being investigated. How some measure of recruitment varies with some environmental variable is likely to have some kinks (Fig. 1) - be they threshholds below or above which recruitment is no longer sensitive to the feature, an intermediate (possibly optimum) range where recruitment is again insensitive to the feature (but may vary greatly in response to other influences), or assymetries of ascending and descending limbs of the relationship between the extrema and optima. Depending on what range of conditions are observed, various second order polynomials may fit data from part of the curve at a statistically significant level, but they don't represent the truth.

The tools of exploratory analysis are introduced well by Tukey (1977) and Milliken (1984). The field is expanding rapidly. Researchers should be familiar with at least the most common tools. They should also be aware that the tools do not come free. As a number of people - recently Drinkwater and Myers (1987) - have pointed out, it is of paramount importance to separate exploratory from confirmatory analyses (even if one is using "conventional" statistics). This can be done through partitioning available data into parameterization and test sets; developing models which are used to make

FIGURE 1

Possible relationship between recruitment and some independent variable, say water temperature during egg development. Above (Region A) and below (B) some limits, conditions are unfavourable for production of recruits. In some intermediate range (C), conditions are fairly equal in their suitability for recruit survival, but actual survival rates may be influenced greatly by other factors. The ascending (D) and descending (E) limbs of the function may have different slopes, so no single function fits both limbs well.



predictions tested with data collected subsequently; or setting and testing a priori hypotheses. The final approach may be most common, but has pitfalls, however, particularly in systems as complex and intertwined as recruitment is likely to be. An a priori prediction supported by an analysis does not guarantee a direct linkage.

What Managers Must Know about Recruitment

Problems:

It may be as managers, however, that most thought must be given to the quantitative methods used in recruitment research. The provision of management advice is a primary responsibility of the Branch and the Department. Here again recruitment is a consideration in two contexts: short term forecasts to provide advice on allowable catch or escapement for the next year of two, and longer term views of stock kinematics for the evaluation of appropriate management strategies for the resources. What must be known about recruitment to discharge each aspect of management well?

Short-term Forecasts

We can get short-term forecasts from several sources. For most CAFSAC stocks, they are usually provided by survey-based estimates - occasionally by regression models (CAFSAC 1987). The same is true for most stocks in the North Sea and Northeast US waters. Getting good forecasts of numbers of recruits from survey data is little different from getting good estimates of numbers at any other age from the survey. There are many important analytical questions in the field, and anyone dealing with prerecruit surveys needs to be familiar with them - and their answers. But the potential difficulties in using survey data are general, and not unique to forecasting recruits. Likewise, when regression models are used to forecast returns from perhaps numbers of smolts and some climate measures, all the considerations of projecting from a regression model apply: using valid parameter estimates, appropriate error terms, caution in extrapolating beyond the range of observations used in parameter estimation, etc. The references cited earlier are good guides here as well.

There are several other indirect methods for obtaining short-term forecasts, methods recently reviewed by Stocker and Hilborn (1981). Without reiterating their review, of the seven methods they explored, most performed reasonably well under some circumstances, and only the Gulland method appeared consistently inferior to the others. Time series methods were thought to be particularly promising: sufficiently promising that there is a separate paper just on them in this Technical Report.

Stocker and Hilborn (1981) made the point in their review that methods providing good short-term forecasts may have no utility in determining suitable management policies. The rest of the paper will focus on the problem of what must be known about recruitment to determine appropriate management strategies well, and what analytical tools are likely to provide the necessary knowledge in usable forms.

Long-term Forecasts

Sissenwine and Shephard (1987) provide a useful consolidation of many "traditional" management approaches. Following their classification there are three types of models used to set management objectives: Spawner - Recruit models, Dynamic Pool models and Production models. When used to seek a suitable management strategy for a stock, each requires some model relating recruitment to stock. To use any of those three types of management strategies is to make an assumption about the shape of such a curve. Even if the existance of a general stock - recruit relationship is denied, one does not remain neutral - one assumes that the relationship is specifically flat.

Their figure 1 provides a concise tie-in of several potential management objectives: F_{max}, $F_{0.1}$, F_{msy}. Their figure brings out two important features. First, as the shape of the stock - recruit function changes, the value advised for catch or effort (depending on which is being managed) probably will change as well. Second, there is no consideration of variation around that function. Hence to use any of those traditional objectives one is placed in a position of having to know the form of the stock - recruit function and the values of its parameters, but need not consider recruitment variation - only the long term equilibrium condition. Is the position realistic?

Identifying the Proper Stock - Recruit Model

For most of the past three decades, the candidate functions were few, and simple - Ricker, Beverton-Holt, and Cushing (Ricker 1975). More recently Shephard (1982) and others have used single functions with an additional parameter, so the properties of all three functions can be represented, depending on the parameter values. Error terms have been included in the stock - recruit models throughout the period of their use. However, these error terms were included for estimating parameter values from data, not for forecasting consequences of management alternatives. Recently more complex functions have been proposed, where additional parameters represent perhaps additional influnces of environment on the systematic portion of recruitment, or more complex error structure (eg. Hightower and Grossman 1985, Lovejoy 1986, Swartzman, et al. 1987). As progress is made on the study of recruitment processes, one can only expect stock - recruit functions to become more complex, with more terms and more parameters to estimate.

To select among traditional management alternatives, the proper form for the function relating recruitment to stock must be known. Can we expect to be able to pick out the correct stock - recruitment relationship from even the small number of initial alternatives? Most studies are pessimistic; and at two levels. First there is pessimism that the right model can be identified from a realistic number of data points. Second, even if a "correct" model can be identified, there is pessimism that it would stay the right model for a system over long periods into the future (Walters 1981, Shephard and Cushing 1981, Shephard 1982, Lovejoy 1986, Hightower and Grossman 1985, Swartzman et al. 1987).

Estimating Parameters of the Stock - Recruit Model

Even if it is assumed that a model appropriate for a stock can be chosen, to choose among management alternatives correct values for the parameters of the model must be known. Can we estimate those parameters and believe the values? Again, the literature is pessimistic. The errors in stock and recruit data are usually large enough to influence parameter estimates seriously. Best fits of models to data are likely to be not very good, so parameter estimates will have large error terms. The parameters themselves represent concepts, not processes, (i.e. Alpha "productivity", Beta "optimality", and Gamma "limitation"; Ruppert et al. 1985), and some argue they should not be expected to be consistent in the values they assume from year to year, any more than they are consistent in exactly what processes they reflect from year to year (Ludwig and Walters 1981, 1985; Walters and Ludwig 1981; Shephard 1982; Hightower and Grossman 1985, 1987).

Does it matter that models and parameters cannot be identified well?. From the perspective of managers the answer is yes. When these stock - recruit models are used to select management strategies, their equilibrium conditions are sought, either analytically or through simulations of several decades to centuries. For example, Figure 6 from Smith and Walters (1981) shows several different Ricker curves fit to data from a single stock. They state for each panel one curve is best fit and two other very different curves are "alternative lines of good fit". The size of the stock when the data were collected determines which panel one would consider; the absence of one or two data points could shift the best fit line around the range of each panel. One will obtain very different management policies using optima from these curves, which according to Smith and Walters (1981), would be hard to distinguish in practice. Hightower and Grossman (1985) also find noteworthy differences between management policies based on optima derived using Ricker and Beverton-Holt functions.

Management Timetables and Analysis Tools

Figures 2 and 3 from Hightower and Grossman also underscore another point important to managers, but often passed over by researchers interested solely in recruitment processes. There is a big difference in the behaviour between the Ricker and Beverton-Holt systems in the initial 5 - 15 years. Modellers are free to run their simulations for 100 years and throw away the first 4x years as due to initial conditions (where "x" is the lifespan of the species in the eyes of the fishery). Such discarding is standard practice. Resource managers cannot do that. The most optimistic time frame for showing results of a management program to clients (and to someone from Policy Evaluation) is likely to be 5 - 15 years. If there aren't the expected benefits, it is the next 8 decades of the management program that are likely to be thrown away. The initial conditions of the stock do not just influence which curve and parameter values one is likely to select (the Smith and Walters point), but they are likely to be far from the equilibrium conditions that the long-term optimum management program is going to be based on. Nonetheless, they are the actual starting point; the baseline from which management programs will be evaluated.

Those studying recruitment should remember that when managers are trying to sell a policy of "short term pain for long term gain", clients will consider a short term pain of say, 1-3 years: 5 on the outside. The long term gain should be visible in 10 - 15 years. Recruitment researchers cannot manufacture more recruits, but they must remain aware of the time scales which are real to managers who will be using results of their research.

Variance in the Recruitment Relationship

This accountability of managers on time frames of 5 - 20 years is not a trival complication; it is a core feature of what must be included when studying recruitment as resource managers. On such time scales management models must consider the variation in recruitment, not just the systematic component (if it exists). Can it be done by simply including the error term in the stock - recruit models? If so, managers proceed as before, with confidence intervals attached to their advice. Then as process oriented studies of recruitment variation document relationships, terms can be added to the model, and the value of the error term changed.

Unfortunately, it does not appear to be that simple. Many models proposed for evaluation of management options were designed to be analytically tractable, and simply cannot include error terms without losing their tractability (Lawson and Hilborn 1985, Hanken and Healey 1986, Walter 1986). Nonetheless there have been a number of attempts to include error terms in equilibrium models used to selecting management strategies. Often "error" is assumed to be multiplicative and lognormal; sometimes on the basis of biological arguments about the variation being the combined result of many small influences; sometimes because a lognormal term fits the error reasonably well (Ludwig and Walters 1985, Ruppert et al. 1985, Hightower and Grossman 1985, Lovejoy 1986). When multiplicative lognormal error structures are used, alternative representations are rarely mentioned as having been considered and rejected. Occasionally other error distributions have been tried, such as the Gamma (Swartzman et al. 1987).

The various forms for the error term often don't differ much in the centers of their distributions; they usually differ substantially more in their tails. Unfortunately, that is where the difference matters. The high tail contains the strong year classes which often support a fishery for several years; the low tail contains the recruitment failures which are also important to managers. The recruitment failures are important because, not only do resource managers have evaluation horizons on a very different scale from most equilibrium models, but they must be risk averse. There have been attempts at including risk averse penalty terms in management models (O'Neill et al. 1981, Swartzman et al. 1987). However, most of the papers which have given consideration to this aspect of what a manager needs to know about recruitment have concluded that what is necessary is the probability density function (pdf) of recruitment (Ludwig and Walters 1985, Rupper et al. 1985, Moussali and Walters 1986, Getz et al. 1987).

Probability Density Functions of Recruitment

There have been a couple of attempts to develop such pdfs, notably the transition matrix approaches of Getz and Swartzman (1981), and Rothschild and

Mullen (1986). These approaches partition the stock and recruit axes into categories. Then, given a stock size, the probability recruitment will be of various magnitudes is a function of the distribution of historic recruitments in the recruitment categories. The exact function used differs in various applications of the approach (Getz and Swartzman 1981, Overholtz et al. 1986, Rothschild and Mullin 1985), but in all cases there is an intent to include the variation in recruitment directly in the simulation projections. The variation in the projections is then information to be used in evaluation of the management program.

Geoff Evans and I have been exploring nonparametric tools for estimation of probability density functions of recruitment directly from stock and recruit data. Simulation studies have documented that alogrithms for developing the pdf's directly, without partitioning the stock or recruit axes, project more accurately than versions of the transition matrix approach. Moreover, the studies show that the algorithms perform almost as well as correct parametric models with small error terms, and better than the correct model for data containing realistic magnitudes of variance. When the parametric models specify incorrect forms for either the stock - recruit function or the error term, the non-parametric algorithms again perform better (Evans and Rice 1988). Because in real fisheries problems it is unlikely that the true functional form of the stock - recruit relation will be known, the simulation results suggest the nonparametric algorithms should be considered for many management applications.

Algorithms which directly estimate recruitment pdf's have many attractive properties to managers. The best data obtainable are used directly. There is no requirement to select a particular shape for the stock - recruit relationship when no single formulation has compelling strong support; nor is there need to estimate parameters that are likely to have big confidence intervals but inspire little confidence. All the variability in the data is preserved in the pdf; the risk of poor outcomes is clearly indicated. Uncertainty increases with time in projections, as it should, and the uncertainty is clearly displayed. Users are given much more realistic expectations of the range of outcomes likely from a management decision; not just a single, possibly most likely outcome.

Applications of Algorithms for Estimating Recruitment PDF's

Consider the information provided by using the algorithms to explore management possibilities with northern cod. In 1977 a management program for rebuilding the stock was adopted. The program featured a reduction in fishing mortality to F = 0.16, and maintenance of F at that level until the stock rebuilt to levels seen prior to the mid 1960's (1.2 $\pm$ 0.2 mmt, ICNAF Redbook 1977, modified by later refinements in assessment methodology). Using the data available in 1977, the non-parametric algorithms suggest that if recruitment were independent of spawning stock biomass (SSB), the target range likely would have been achieved in about 7 years (the median SSB would be within the target range; Fig. 2). Allowing the possibility that SSB does affect recruitment levels, the target range would not coincide with the median projection for 10-12 years (Fig. 3). The algorithms can also be used to explore the likely SSB's to arise after some years (in the example, 8), from a variety of fishing mortalities (Fig. 4; Rice and Evans [in press]).

FIGURE 2

Cumulative frequency ogives of spawning stock projected for successive years following adoption of a management program to control fishing mortality at .16 for the cod stock in NAFO Div. 2J+3KL. Starting conditions were numbers and weights at age in 1977, partial recruitments to fishery and spawning stock, and natural mortality as reported in CAFSAC (1987). Stock and recruit data are 1962-1977 values from Table 1. Years progress from left to right. The first 3 ogives are vertical lines: there is no uncertainty because these year classes are recruited to the fishery (but not yet the spawning stock), so the sizes of these year classes are known exactly. Thereafter uncertainty increases as projections go further in to the future. 200 simulations were run for each year, so the y-axis ranges from 0 to 200, and the ogives are not completely smooth. In the projections, ogives are not completely smooth. In the projections, probabilities of selecting each historical recruitment is independent of spawning biomass; i.e. there is no stock recruit relation. See Rice and Evans (in press) for details.

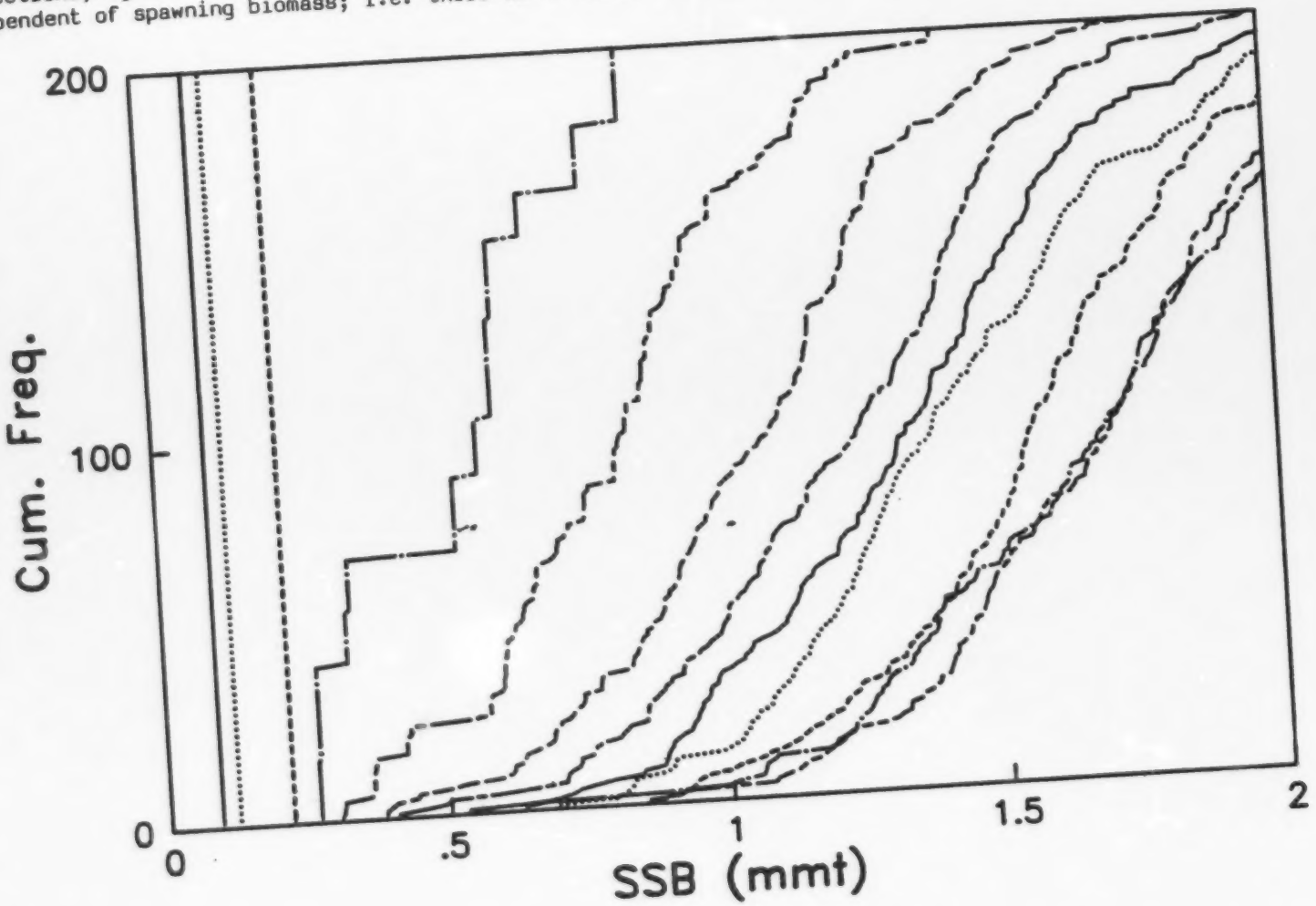


FIGURE 3

Similar to Figure 2, except at each step of each projection, the probability of selecting each historic recruitment is a decreasing function of the distance of the "current" spawning stock size from the spawning biomass which produced the historic recruitment. The function used was $1/(1+x/D)^2$, where "x" is the distance and "D" is a smoothing parameter - 0.24 mmt in this study (See Rice and Evans for details, and determination of the appropriate smoothing window).

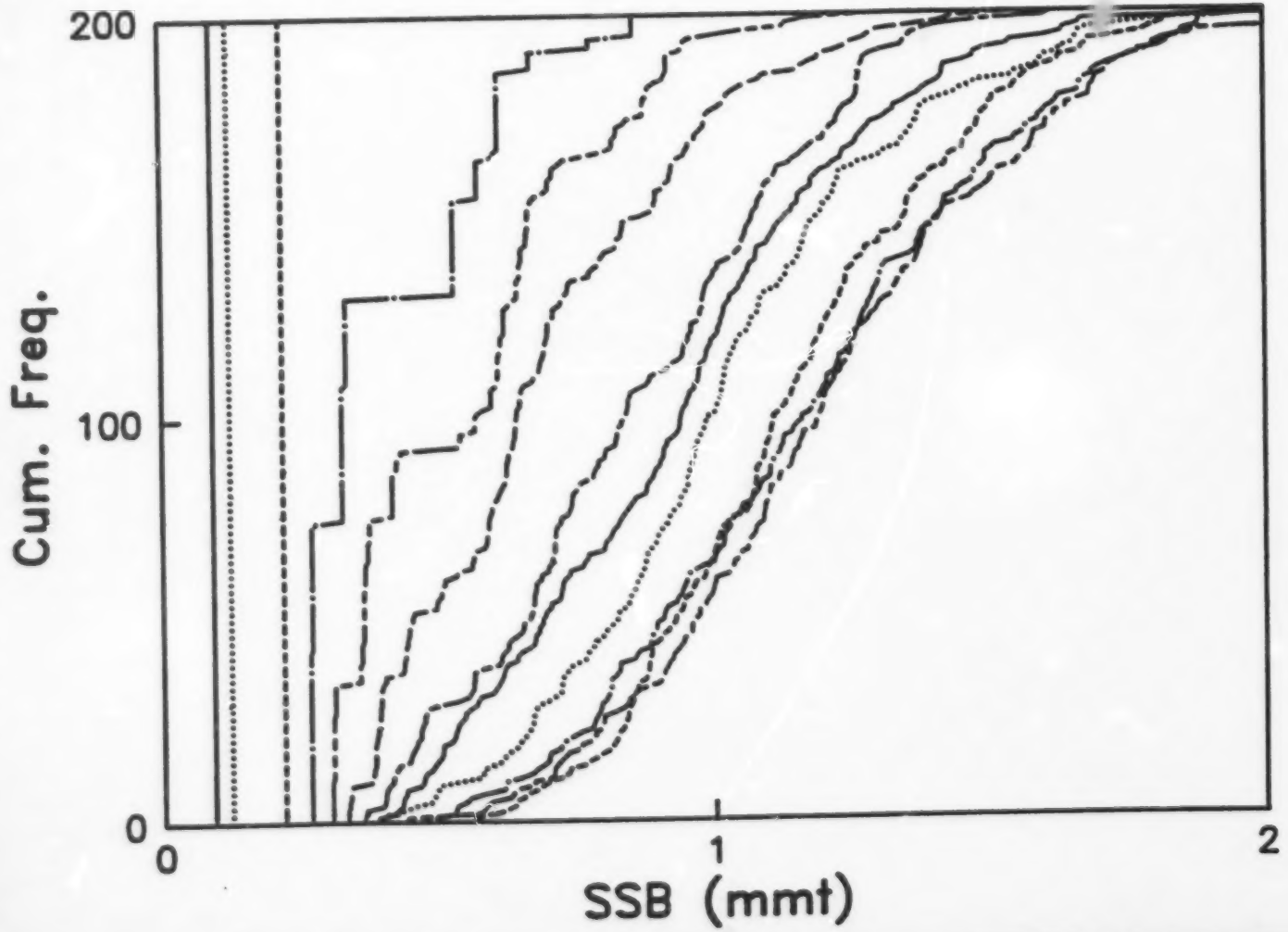
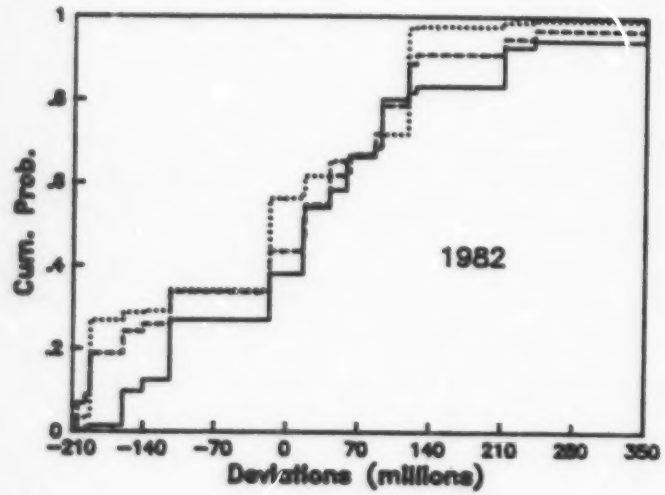
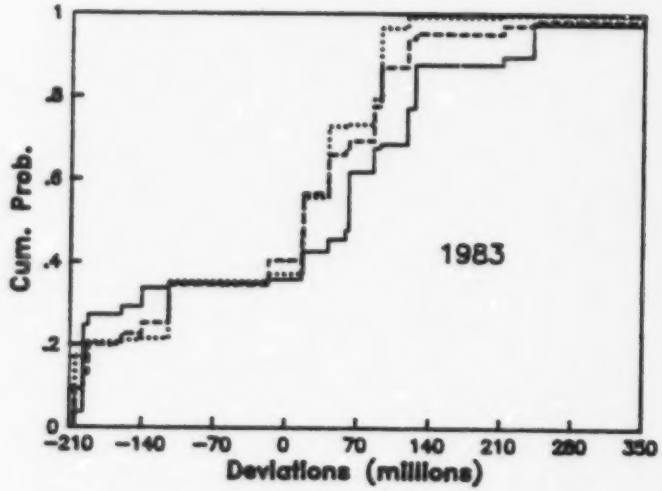
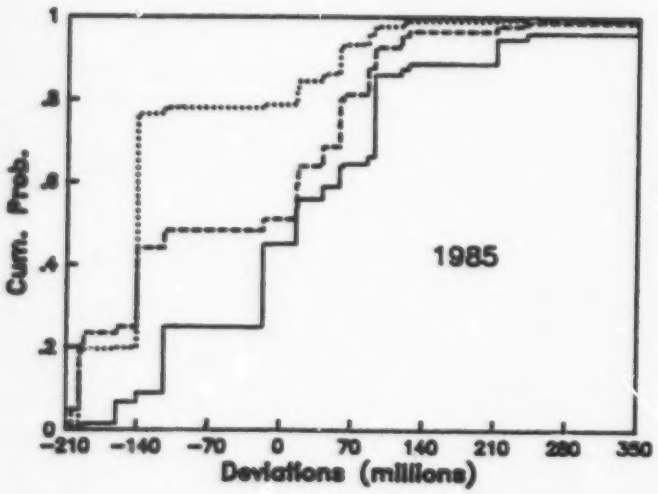


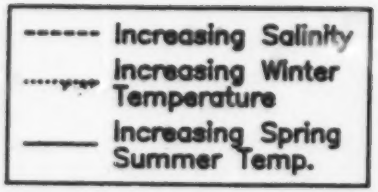
FIGURE 4

Cumulative probability that recruitment deviations will be of each historically observed size, given historic record and the actual winter and spring-summer temperatures, and salinity, in 1982, 1983, and 1985. Independent variables are principle component axes, and orthogonal, so effects of each attribute can be viewed separately. Projections used same alogorithms as for Fig. 3, except distance was in Pc axis units, and value of "D" optimized (See Rice and Evans in press) for each attribute separately.









There is another important property of these nonparametric algorithms; a property which should interest basic scientists as well as managers. There is no constraint that the independent variable be stock, nor that the dependent variable be recruitment. Any environmental influence could equally well serve as the x-axis, so relationships of recruitment to water temperature or salinity, for example, can be explored. These relationships are ones where the true functional form is even less likely to be simple, or knowable, than when stock is the independent variable. Likewise, the dependent variable can be recruitment per unit stock, or even residuals from some model of interest, or from the median recruitment projected by the same algorithm with another independent variable.

For example, the algorithms were used to first determine the probability of recruitment being of various sizes in each year from 1962 to 1980, given the observed SSB and recruitment in all other years. The deviation of the actual recruitment in each year from the median recruitment in the probability distribution was then calculated (Table 1). These deviations were used with observed temperature and salinity data from station 27, off St. John's, Newfoundland, to project the probability distribution of recruitment deviations, given the specific conditions for recent years. The results suggest that there may be no marked effect of these environmental attributes on recruitment in 1982 and 1983; the probability distribution based on winter and spring-summer temperatures and salinity are each fairly flat from apparent recruitment failures (big negative deviations) to very strong year classes (big positive deviations), with the median projection being an average year class (deviation of 0). For 1985, however, the algorithm applied to the temperature of the past winter suggests that poor recruitment is highly likely. The projections based on salinity over the year also suggest a poorer than usual year class (Fig. 4).

These nonparametric alogrithms have not been tested as widely as the traditional quantitative methods applied in management contexts. Further testing and applications will probably reveal shortcomings in their properties as well. Nonetheless, these nonparametric alogrithms may have great potential in the study of recruitment. Although they do not test hypotheses directly, they produce ogives which can be used to test hypotheses. The strength of relationships can be evaluated with reduction of sum-squared deviations of observations from medians (which is just what regression does, only regression models make strict assumptions about the entire functional form and the distribution of deviations around the function). Particular values can be picked off if desired, such as the median, the 5th and 95th percentile, and so on, if those values are of interest. But the uncertainty in the original data is clearly represented in the slope of the ogive, so users necessarily confront the reliability of the individual values. Even if other algorithms prove superior to the ones used in Evans and Rice (1988) and Rice and Evans (in press), the use of full probability density functions in the study of recruitment appears to be extremely promising.

SUMMARY

In summary, there are many statistical tools available to researchers on recruitment. Most come with assumptions and constraints. Users need to be familiar with those assumptions and constraints, to avoid applications which are

Table 1. Spawning Stock (mmt) and recruits (millions at age 4) from cohort analysis of 2J+3KL cod stock (CAFSAC 1987). Also deviations of observed recruitments form the overall mean recruitment 1962-1980, and deviations of observed recruitments from the median recruitment projected with nonparametric algorithm and all data except the year being evaluated.

Year	Stock	Recruits	Observed - Mean	Observed - Projected Median
1962	12243	8160	418.9	240.6
1963	11086	9250	527.9	349.6
1964	12046	6674	270.3	92.0
1965	10087	5754	178.3	41.1
1966	8433	5343	137.2	61.1
1967	7980	5865	189.4	211.0
1968	7685	4732	76.1	125.3
1969	7222	2032	-193.8	-204.7
1970	5660	1136	-283.4	-192.2
1971	5607	1089	-288.1	-196.9
1972	5702	1919	-205.1	-113.9
1973	4613	3479	-49.1	57.8
1974	4075	3058	-91.2	15.7
1975	2748	2901	-106.9	-17.0
1976	1497	1470	-249.9	-160.0
1977	862	1669	-230.1	-140.2
1978	1020	4079	10.8	117.8
1979	1401	3071	-89.9	17.0
1980	2941	3755	-21.3	85.4

incorrect; possibly seriously so. Researchers studying recruitment problems are likely no worse than other groups of researchers when analyzing their data; but recruitment data are likely to be more variable than many other types of data, and to accumulate at a slower rate. Therefore analyses might be conducted with fewer data, and assumptions might be violated a bit more seriously, when common statistical tools like multiple regression are applied to recruitment problems.

When we move to management contexts, the picture is not encouraging. It appears to be difficult to identify correct models with confidence, and to estimate parameters accurately. Moreover, to manage stocks well the variation in recruitment must be handled well, and treatment of variation is usually a secondary consideration in the common approaches to exploring management strategies. Some nonparametric approaches to exploring relationships of recruitment to independent variables make the proper representation of recruitment variation the foremost consideration. This renders the determination of functional forms and estimation of parameters of the forms not just secondary, but optional. Such a step is appropriate in many management contexts, and is likely to be useful in many basic science programs as well.

LITERATURE CITED

Bock, H.H., ed. 1988. Classification and Related Methods of Data Analysis. Proceedings of the First Conference of the International Federation of Classification Societies (IFCS). North Holland Publ. Amsterdam.

Box, G., W.G. Hunter & L.S. Hunter. 1978. Statistics for Experimenters: an Introduction to Design, Data Analysis and Model Building. John Wiley and Sons.

CAFSAC 1987. Can. Atl. Fish. Sci. Adv. Comm. Annual Report (including Advisory Documents) Volume 9. Adv. Doc. 86/25: Cod. 287-318.

Cochran, W.G. and G.M. Cox. 1950. Experimental Designs. John Wiley and Sons.

Draper, N.R. and H. Smith. 1981. Applied Regression Analysis. John Wiley and Sons.

Drinkwater, K.F. & R.A. Myers. 1987. Testing predictions of marine fish and shell fish landings from environmental variables. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 44: 1090-1098.

Evans, G.T. & J.C. Rice. 1988. Predicting recruitment from stock size without the mediation of a functional relation. Journal de Conseil 45.

Finney, D.J. 1955. Experimental Design and its Statistical Basis. University of Chicago Press.

Gauch, H.G. Jr. 1982. Multivariate Analysis in Community Ecology. Cambridge University Press.

Getz, W.M., R.C. Francis, & G.L. Swartzman. 1987. On managing variable marine fisheries. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 44: 1370-1375.

Getz, W.M. & G.L. Swartzman. 1981. A probability transition matrix model for yield estimation in fisheries with highly variable recruitment. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 38: 847-855.

Green, R.H. 1979. Sampling Design and Statistical Methods for Environmental Biologists. John Wiley and Sons.

Hankin, D.G. & M.C. Healey. 1986. Dependence of exploitation rates for maximum yield and stock collapse on age and sex structure of Chinook Salmon (Obcorhynchus tshawytscha) stocks. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 1746-1759.

Hicks, C.R. 1964. Fundamental Concepts in the Design of Experiments. Holt, Rinehart and Winston.

Hightower, J.E. & G.D. Grossman. 1985. Comparison of constant effort harvest policies for fish stocks with variable recruitment. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 42: 982-988.

Hightower, J.E. & G.D. Grossman. 1987 Optimal policies for rehabilitation of over-exploited fish stocks using a deterministic model. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 44: 803-810.

ICNAF 1977. Redbook 1977: Standing Committee on Research and Statistics. Proceedings of special meeting December 1976 and annual meeting May-June 1977. Dartmouth, N.S.

Kirk, R.E. 1972. Experimental Design: Procedures for the Behavioural Sciences. Brooks/Cole.

Lawson, T.A. & R. Hilborn. 1985. Equilibrium yields and yield isopleths from a general age-structured model of harvested populations. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 42: 1766-1771.

Legendre, L. and P. Legendre. 1985. Numerical Ecology. Elsevier Scientific Publishing.

Lovejoy, W.S. 1986. Bounds on the optimal age-at-first-capture for stochastic, age-structured models. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 101-107.

Ludwig, D. & C.J. Walters. 1981. Measurement errors and uncertainty in parameter estimates for stock and recruitment. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 38: 711-720.

Ludwig, D & C.J. Walters. 1985. Are age-structured models appropriate for catch-effort data? Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 42: 1066-1072.

Milliken, G.A. 1984. Analysis of Messy Data. Belmont Press.

Moussalli, E. & R. Hilborn. 1986. Optimal stock size and harvest rate in multistage life history models. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 135-141.

Neter, J., W. Wasserman, and M.H. Kutner. 1983. Applied Linear Regression Models. R.D. Irwin Press.

O'Neill, R.V., R.H. Gardner, S.W. Christensen, W. Van Winkle, J.H. Carney, & J.B. Mankin. 1981. Some effects of parameter uncertainty in density-independent and density-dependent Leslie models for fish populations. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 38: 91-100.

Overholtz, W.J., M.P. Sissenwine & S.H. Clark. 1986. Recruitment variability and its implications for managing and rebuilding the Georges Bank haddock (Melanogrammus aeglefinus) stock. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 748-753.

Patil, G.P., Pielou, E.C. and W.E. Walters. 1971. Sampling and modelling biological populations and population dynamics. Statistical Ecology Mongraphs. Harrisberg, Pa.

Pielou, E.C. 1984. The Interpretation of Ecological Data: a Primer on Classification and Ordination. John Wiley and Sons.

Rice, J.C. & G.T. Evans. In press. Tools for embracing uncertainty while managing cod in NAFO division 2J+3KL. Journal du Conseil 45.

Ricker, W.E. 1975. Computation and Interpretation of Biological Statistics of Fish Populations. Bulletin of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada #191.

Rothschild, B.J. and A.J. Mullin. 1985. The information content of stock and recruitment data and its non-parametric classification. Journal du Conseil 42: 116-124.

Ruppert, D., R.L. Reish, R.B. Deriso, & R.J. Carroll. 1985. A stochastic population model for managing the Atlantic Menhaden (Brevoortia tyrannus) fishery and assessing managerial risks. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 42: 1371-1379.

Shephard, J.G. 1982. A versatile new stock-recruitment relationship for fisheries and construction of the sustainable yield curves. Joural du Conseil 40: 67-75.

Shephard, J.G. & D.H. Cushing. 1981. A mechanism for density - dependent survival of larval fish as the basis of a stock - recruitment relationship. Journal du Conseil 39: 160-167.

Sissenwine, M.P. & Shephard 1987. An alternative perspective on recruitment overfishing and biological reference points. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 44: 913-918.

Smith, A.D.M. & C.J. Walters. 1981. Adaptive management of stock - recruitment systems. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 38: 690-703.

Sokal, R.R. and F.J. Rohlf. 1981. Biometry. Freeman.

Stocker, M & R. Hilborn. 1981. Short-term forecasting in marine fish stocks. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 38: 1247-1254.

Swartzman, G.L., W.M. Getz & R.C. Francis. 1987. Binational management of Pacific Hake (Merluccius productus): A stochastic modelling approach. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 44: 1053-1063.

Tukey, J.W. 1977. Exploratory Data Analysis. Addison Wesley.

Walter, G. 1986. A robust approach to equilibrium yield curves. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 1332-1339.

Walters, C.J. 1981. Optimum escapements in the face of alternative recruitment hypotheses. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 38: 678-689.

Walters, C.J. & D. Ludwig. 1981. Effects of measurement errors on the assessment of stock-recruitment relationships. Can. Jour. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 38: 704-710.

VI STATISTICAL APPROACHES TO RECRUITMENT FORECASTING

B. AN OVERVIEW OF ALTERNATIVE METHODS FOR FORECASTING RECRUITMENT

by

D.J.Noakes
Pacific Region

INTRODUCTION

One of the most characteristic features of fish stocks is the large degree of inter-annual variation in the number of fish recruiting to the fishery. A few species, such as certain Pacific coast sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) stocks, exhibit a cyclic pattern in abundance (Larkin 1971 and Ward and Larkin 1964) which allows a degree of certainty to be placed in estimates of future returns. However, it is much more common for recruitment to vary by more than an order of magnitude between years and at the same time show, at least superficially, no clear time-dependent regularity in recruitment.

Despite the large degree of uncertainty about recruitment in any given year, those responsible for managing fish stocks must prepare annual pre-season forecasts of allowable catch for each stock. Forecasts are required: i) by managers to establish appropriate effort regulations, so as not to exceed the allowable catch, and to identify stocks that might require protection (from over-harvest); ii) by commercial fisherman making decisions about what fishing areas will provide the greatest net return and what their investment strategy should be with regard to fishing equipment; and iii) by the processing sector of the industry for determining staff, equipment, and logistical requirements. Improved forecasts of recruitment will generally result in more effective management and an increase in the efficiency of resource utilization.

Several methods currently employed to forecast recruitment are outlined in this paper. In addition, various forecasting models that have proven useful in other resource modeling fields are considered. A brief description of the models and their key assumptions is presented in the next section. An appendix outlining the notation employed in this paper is provided. The utility of these models in generating accurate forecasts of recruitment is then assessed using data from five British Columbia Pacific herring (Clupea harengus pallasi) stocks.

FORECASTING MODELS

Models developed to predict recruitment come in all shapes and sizes. Selection of an appropriate model is based on the type and quality of information available and, to a certain extent, personal preference. Some researchers prefer process-based models that have been developed from a perceived understanding of the underlying physical and biological processes. Others rely on empirical models established through exploratory data analysis

where factors are included in the model if statistically significant correlations are discovered. The precise nature of the causal mechanism(s) is typically unknown and may be indirect. Nevertheless, empirical models may be of considerable use in predicting recruitment and their utility should not be discounted.

Categorizing models into different classes, such as process-based or empirical, requires a set of objective criteria. One such list of criteria for classifying various models is presented in Table 1. This list is by no means exhaustive and each model is likely to require several of the criteria to uniquely and adequately describe the process.

One possible classification scheme would be to categorize models as univariate or multivariate. Univariate models contain a single output variable (recruitment) and a single error term. Additional factors included in these models, such as stock size or environmental variables, are assumed to be known without error (or negligible error). Conversely, multivariate models contain multiple outputs and error terms. Models described in this paper roughly follow this split between univariate and multivariate models.

Tables 2a, b, and c further classify the univariate models according to the types of information available or required. The three sub-categories include: i)models that require recruitment data only; ii) models that utilize both recruitment and stock size information; and iii) methods that incorporate other biotic or abiotic factors as well as recruitment and stock size data. A brief description of each model is provided in the table as well as appropriate references.

Table 3 provides a similar list for multivariate models. By definition, multivariate models contain two or more variables (and error terms) and the distinction according to the type of information available or required is less meaningful. The multivariate models are, in most instances, the multivariate equivalents of the univariate models presented in Table 2.

UNIVARIATE MODELS

Ricker Models

One of the best known process-based approaches to forecasting recruitment is the Ricker model (Ricker 1954, 1975). This model relates some measure of spawning stock size to subsequent recruitment. The Ricker model is given by:

$$(1) \quad R_t = \alpha S_{t-k} \exp[-\beta S_{t-k} + a_t]$$

where R_t is recruitment at time t, S_{t-k} is the estimated stock size causing R_t, k is the recruitment lag, α and β are model parameters to be estimated, and a_t is the error term, usually assumed to be normal and independently distributed (NID) with mean zero and variance σ_a^2 [NID $(0, \sigma_a^2)$].

Table 1: Criteria for classifying models employed to forecast recruitment.

stochastic
deterministic
process-based (biological, physical)
empirical
linear
nonlinear
univariate
multivariate
periodic
time series
stationary
nonstationary

Table 2a: Classification of univariate models according to the types of information available and required to forecast recruitment. Models requiring recruitment data only.

Model	Description	References
Autoregressive-moving average (ARMA)	- a time series model allowing complex autocorrelation structures to be entertained - simplest model - mean	Box & Jenkins 1970; Jensen 1985; Pennington 1985; Saila et al. 1980; Stocker & Noakes 1988
Seasonal autoregressive integrated moving average (SARIMA)	- a time series model specifically designed for periodic or seasonal data - seasonal or periodic component removed by differencing	Box & Jenkins 1970
Periodic autrogressive (PAR) and periodic ARMA (PARMA)	- time series models specifically designed for seasonal or periodic data allowing different autocorrelation structures for each period.	Noakes et. al. 1985 Vecchia 1985

Table 2b: Classification of univariate models according to the types of information available and required to forecast recruitment. Models requiring recruitment and stock size data.

Model	Description	References
Ricker	- model incorporating density-dependent and density-independent terms - the model often suggests decreased recruitment at high stock levels (the curve "tips over")	Ricker 1954,1975
Beverton-Holt	- recruitment approaches asymptotic maximum at high stock levels	Beverton & Holt 1957 Shepherd 1982
Cushing	- recruitment is proportional to stock size raised to some power	Cushing 1973
Regression	linear or nonlinear - errors are uncorrelated and generally assumed to be normal	Draper & Smith 1966
Transfer function-noise (TFN)	- a time series model relating stock size to recruitment and allowing for an ARMA error component	Box & Jenkins 1970 Noakes et al. 1987 Stocker & Noakes 1988

Table 2c: Classification of univariate models according to the types of information available and required to forecast recruitment. Models employing recruitment and other biotic and abiotic data.

Model	Description	References
Ricker-environmental	- Ricker model incorporating environmental factors in the density-independent parameter	Tang 1985
Regression	- linear or nonlinear - errors are uncorrelated and usually assumed to be normal	Draper & Smith 1966 Henderson 1987
Sibling	- model employed to forecast salmon returns from a particular brood in year t based on returns from the same brood in year t-1 - returns in year t-1 act as a leading indicator of return year t - both linear and nonlinear models have been employed	Eggers et al. 1983 Peterman 1982
Transfer function-noise (TFN)	- a time series model capable of incorporating various covariate series and allowing for an ARMA noise component - dummy variables may be included to estimate missing data and model changes in the mean level resulting from natural or man-induced interventions	Box & Jenkins 1970 Noakes 1986 Noakes et al. 1987 Stocker & Noakes 1988

Table 3: Classification of multivariate available to forecast recruitment.

Model	Description	References
Regression	- linear or nonlinear - variables may be correlated but errors are not autocorrelated	Johnson & Wichern 1982
Multivariate ARMA	- multivariate equivalent of univariate ARMA model allowing for complex interactions between variables (including feedback) and autocorrelated errors - main drawbacks are the number of parameters and simple procedures for identifying models	Hannan 1970 Kendall et al. 1983 Quenouille 1957
Contemporaneous ARMA	- special case of general multivariate ARMA obtained when variables are only contemporaneously correlated (ie. variables are correlated only at time t); no leading indicators - all parameter matrices are diagonal - possible to model series of different lengths simultaneously	Camacho et al. 1985
Transfer function-noise (TFN)	- special case of general multivariate ARMA model - all parameter matrices are upper (or lower) triangular length - series must be of equal length	Box & Jenkins 1970 Camacho et al. 1985 Noakes et al. 1987 Stocker & Noakes 1988
Periodic Models	- multivariate extensions of univariate SARIMA, PAR, and PARMA models - an alternative approach is to deseasonalize the data prior to fitting a multivariate model	Salas et al. 1985 Vecchia 1985
Errors-in-variables	- variables are measured with error - functional relationship assumed known	Kendall & Stuart 1979 Richards & Schnute 1988 Schnute 1987

This form of the Ricker model (1) assumes that the errors in predicting R_t are multiplicative. In certain instances, it may be more appropriate to assume an additive error structure such that:

$$(2) \quad R_t = \alpha S_{t-k} \exp[-\beta S_{t-k}] + a_t$$

The particular choice of (1) or (2) depends upon how well the assumption of NID errors is satisfied.

Tang (1985) presented a modified Ricker model to account for environmentally-induced variation in recruitment. Tang (1985) suggested that β, the density-dependent parameter, is a characteristic of the stock and is thus relatively stable over time. Variations in recruitment could therefore be attributed to changes in the density-independent parameter, α. In Tang's model, α is considered to be a time-dependent function of environmental conditions such that:

$$(3) \quad \alpha_t = g[x_{t1}, x_{t2}, \ldots, x_{tm}]$$

where $g[\,]$ is an arbitrary function of the m environmental variables x_{ti}, $i = 1,2,\ldots,m$ at time t. Substituting (3) into (1) or (2) results in a modified Ricker model subsequently referred to as the Ricker-environmental model.

Tang (1985) suggested a two-stage procedure for obtaining estimates of the model parameters. In the first stage, estimates of α and β are obtained from (1) or (2). Parameter β is considered a characteristic of the stock and α can be regarded as an average of the α_t's in (3). The estimated β is employed to calculate the α_t's such that:

$$(4) \quad \alpha_t = (R_t/S_{t-k})\exp(\beta S_{t-k}).$$

In the second stage, the α_t's are employed to estimate the parameters associated with $g[\,]$. Tang (1985) assumed that the relationship between α_t and the environmental variables, x_{ti}, was linear such that:

$$(5) \quad \alpha_t = a_0 + \sum_{i=1}^{m} a_i x_{ti}$$

and obtained estimates of a_i, $i = 0,1,\ldots,m$, by linear regression. The model, however, does not restrict $g[\,]$ to be a linear function and researchers may elect to use a nonlinear relationship. In some cases, the choice of $g[\,]$ may allow the model parameters to be estimated simultaneously by the method of maximum likelihood instead of employing the two-stage procedure suggested by Tang (1985).

In most instances, a single Ricker model is fitted to stock and recruitment data for all years combined. For data exhibiting cyclic behaviour, a separate Ricker curve can be fitted to each phase of the cycle. This approach has been adopted for some Pacific salmon stocks (Walters and Staley 1987). In either case, a bias correction factor is required when the multiplicative error form of

the Ricker model (1) is employed. The correction is of the form (Beauchamp and Olson 1973; Granger and Newbold 1976):

$$(6) \quad R_t = \exp[R_t' + 0.5\ \sigma_a^2]$$

where R_t is the estimated recruitment in year t, R_t' is the forecast of recruitment in the logarithmic domain, and σ_a^2 is the residual variance.

Other sources of bias in fitting stock-recruitment curves to data have been identified. When both stock and recruitment data are subject to measurement error (the errors-in-variables problem discussed below), Ludwig and Walters (1981) and Walters and Ludwig (1981) show that the net effect is to overestimate the magnitude of the density-dependent coefficient, β, in the stock-recruitment curve. Similarly, Walters (1985) found a bias in stock-recruitment estimates which he attributed to the correlation of recruitment disturbances with future stock levels. This latter bias may, however, be large only when very short (ca. 10 yr) time series of stock and recruitment data are used for parameter estimation, or if biologically unrealistic stock-recruitment parameters are specified. Further research is required in this area.

There are, of course, other stock recruitment models used to forecast recruitment (Beverton and Holt 1957; Cushing 1973; Shepherd 1982) which may have merit in certain instances. The Ricker model is, however, the most common and others such as the Beverton-Holt model are not considered in this paper.

Regression Models

Strictly speaking, the Ricker models outlined above are simply regression models relating stock size and recruitment. The development of the relationship and the biological interpretation of its parameters does, however, make it somewhat different than other regression models employed to forecast recruitment. It has, therefore, been dealt with separately in this paper.

The regression models used to forecast recruitment are typically of the form:

$$(7) \quad R_t = \underline{A}^T \underline{X} + b + a_t$$

where R_t is the recruitment in year t, $\underline{A}$ is a column vector of regression coefficients to be estimated, $\underline{X}$ is a column vector of covariates that are related to R_t in a linear fashion, b is the intercept parameter to be estimated, and a_t is the error term assumed to be NID(0, σ_a^2). Commonly employed covariates include environmental factors such as sea surface temperature and salinity or biological components such as stock size.

This linear model (7) assumes an additive error structure. Nonlinear relationships and multiplicative error structures can also be modeled by fitting (7) to data that have been transformed. For instance, if the model is fitted to the natural logs of the data, R_t is given by:

$$(8a) \quad R_t = b \prod_{i=1}^{m} x_i^{a_i} \exp(a_t)$$

or

$$(8b)\quad \log_e R_t = \log_e b + a_1 \log_e x_1 + \ldots + a_m \log_e x_m + a_t$$

where m is the number of covariates to be included in the model (the length of $\underline{A}$ and $\underline{X}$), a_i (the i^{th} component of $\underline{A}$) is the parameter associated with the i^{th} covariate series x_i, b is a scaling factor, and R_t and a_t are as previously defined.

Variations of (7) and (8) have been developed to reflect real or perceived biological and physical constraints in the system. For instance, ageing data have been employed to develop a "sibling" model to predict salmon returns from a particular brood year in year t+1 based on the number of fish returning in year t from the same brood year (Eggers et al. 1983; Peterman 1982). The additive and multiplicative error forms of the "sibling" model are given by:

$$(9)\quad N_{n+1,t+1} = a\, N_{n,t} + b + a_t$$

and

$$(10)\quad N_{n+1,t+1} = b\, N_{n,t}^{a} \exp(a_t)$$

respectively, where $N_{n+1,t+1}$ is the number of n+1 year-old recruits in year t+1, $N_{n,t}$ is the number of n year-old recruits in year t, "a" and b are parameters to be estimated, and a_t is as defined previously. Assuming a uniform response to biotic and abiotic factors, the number of adults returning in year t is used as a leading indicator of the number of adults from the same brood year returning in year t+1. The choice of (9) or (10) is determined essentially by how well each model satisfies key modeling assumptions such as NID errors.

Constraining (7) or (8) is an effective means of forcing the relationship to adhere to certain assumptions. For instance, conditions such as available spawning habitat or food may limit either the recruitment or stock size. Additional parameters or constraints can be incorporated into the regression model to reflect this reality. If a finite limit to recruitment exists, the regression model may be formulated as (generalized from Henderson 1987):

$$(11)\quad R_t = \min\,(\underline{A}^T\underline{X} + b,\ R_{max}) + a_t$$

where R_t, a_t, $\underline{A}$, b, and $\underline{X}$ are as defined previously, R_{max} is the upper limit to recruitment, and the notation min() means select the minimum of the two quantities appearing inside the brackets (if $\underline{A}^T\underline{X} + b$ is greater than R_{max}, R_t is set equal to R_{max}). R_{max} can be set to a constant using auxiliary information or estimated as an additional model parameter. It is not difficult to imagine other models where one or more of the variables or parameters are constrained in some fashion.

Transfer Function Noise Models

The general transfer function noise (TFN) model consists of two components: a dynamic component and a stochastic noise component. The dynamic component is employed to model the interactions between the output variable at time t, y_t, and any covariate series appearing in the overall model. For instance, the analyst may hypothesize that sea surface temperature (appropriately lagged) is an important factor influencing recruitment of a particular species. This relationship can be easily incorporated into the dynamic component of the TFN model in much the same fashion as one would include this factor in a regression model. The stochastic noise component of the TFN model is employed to characterize the error remaining in the data after accounting for the effects of any and all covariate series employed in the dynamic component of the model. In the simplest case, the stochastic noise component may consist of independent random normal deviates with mean zero and constant variance. The TFN model does, however, allow for cases when the error term exhibits significant autocorrelation.

Establishment of causal relationships is a difficult process especially in natural systems. Granger (1969) provides a definition of causality between two time series in terms of predictability. According to Granger's definition, a variable x_t causes y_t if future values of y_t can be predicted more accurately using past values of x_t and y_t than by using past values of y_t alone. That is, x_t should only be included in the general TFN model if its inclusion results in more accurate predictions of y_t than forecasting y_t using a univariate model such as an ARMA process. This operational definition of causality is the guiding principle employed in the development of the various models presented in this paper.

If m covariate series are considered, the general TFN model is given by (Noakes et al. 1987):

$$(12)\quad (y_t-\mu_y)=\sum_{i=1}^{m}\omega_i(B)\{\delta_i(B)\}^{-1}B^{b_i}(x_{ti}-\mu_{xi})+\theta(B)\{\phi(B)\}^{-1}a_t$$

where t is discrete time, y_t is the response variable or variable of interest at time t, x_{ti} is the value of the i^{th} input covariate series at time t, μ_y and μ_{xi} are the means of y_t and x_{ti}, respectively, and a_t is the white noise or random error component assumed to be NID(0, σ_a^2). The transfer function components of the model,

$$(13)\quad \omega_i(B)\{\delta_i(B)\}^{-1}\,B^{b_i} \qquad , i = 1,\ldots,m$$

are represented in terms of the finite order polynomials

$$(14)\quad \omega_i(B) = \omega_{0i} - \omega_{1i}B - \omega_{2i}B^2 - \ldots - \omega_{u_i i}B^{u_i}$$

and

$$(15)\quad \delta_i(B) = 1 - \delta_{1i}B - \delta_{2i}B^2 - \ldots - \delta_{r_i i}B^{r_i},$$

where ω_{0i}, ω_{1i}, ..., $\omega_{u_i i}$ and δ_{1i}, δ_{2i}, ..., $\delta_{r_i i}$ (i = 1, 2, ..., m) are the parameters to be estimated, u_i and r_i are the orders of the polynomials $\omega_i(B)$ and $\delta_i(B)$, respectively, and B is the backward shift operator such that $By_t = y_{t-1}$ and $B^n y_t = y_{t-n}$ where n is a positive integer. The term B^{b_i} is used to account for any delay in the response associated with the i^{th} covariate series.

The input covariate series, x_{ti}, are additional time series related to the output variable, y_t, in some fashion. In the case of recruitment forecasting, recruitment would be the response or output variable and the spawning stock size (appropriately lagged) might be one possible covariate series. These series could, of course, be transformed to ensure that key model assumptions are reasonably satisfied (Box and Cox 1964). Additional biotic and abiotic time series could also be included in the model if plausible causal mechanisms were identified. Transfer functions relating predator abundance or environmental factors to the response variable would appear to be likely candidates in fisheries applications (Shepherd et al. 1984).

Dummy variables may also be included as covariate series to model the effects of natural or man-induced interventions or to estimate missing data (Box and Tiao 1975; D'Astous and Hipel 1979; Hipel et al. 1982; Noakes 1986). These terms could, for instance, be employed to determine if changes in the management of the fishery or enhancement programs such as the Salmon Enhancement Program resulted in statistically significant changes in the mean level of production. In these situations, the term $(x_{ti} - \mu_{xi})$ is replaced by series of 1's or 0's to represent occurrence or nonoccurrence, respectively.

The existence of a statistically significant relationship should not, however, be interpreted as a precise statement of causality. The operational definition of causality employed in developing the model suggests the inclusion of the dummy variable assists in the statistical explanation of the phenomenon but does not uniquely define a cause and effect relationship. Reasonable proof of the existence of such relationships is only possible when factors can be isolated and specific hypotheses can be tested.

The stochastic noise component of the model (12), $\Theta(B)\{\phi(B)\}^{-1} a_t$, is used to model the autocorrelation structure associated with the data. This term includes a moving average component of order q (MA(q)), $\Theta(B)$, and an autoregressive operator of order p (AR(p)), $\phi(B)$, given by:

$$(16)\quad \Theta(B) = 1 - \Theta_1 B - \Theta_2 B^2 - \ldots - \Theta_q B^q$$

and

$$(17)\quad \phi(B) = 1 - \phi_1 B - \phi_2 B^2 - \ldots - \phi_p B^p,$$

respectively. The combined term is referred to as an ARMA(p,q) process. In the special case when no covariate or intervention series are included in the model (ie. m = 0), (12) reduces to a univariate ARMA process (Box and Jenkins 1970).

ARMA models have been used by other researchers to model fisheries data (ie. Jensen 1985; Mendelssohn 1981; Noakes 1986; Noakes et al. 1987; Pennington 1985; Saila et al. 1980; Stocker and Hilborn 1981; Stocker and Noakes 1988). In an AR process, the observation at time t is related in a linear fashion to the observations before time t. A MA process expresses the response variable, y_t, in terms of the previous errors. Mixtures of AR and MA processes result in a convenient and compact method of describing the autocorrelation structure present in a particular time series. Included in this family of models is the special case when both p and q are equal to zero. The resulting ARMA(0,0) model implies that the time series observations are independent.

The role of the analyst is to determine the various components to include in the overall TFN model. That is, should the overall TFN model contain only transfer function components and a random error term, only a stochastic noise component which may be autocorrelated, or both transfer functions and an autocorrelated error term. If no transfer function terms are included in the model (ie. m = 0), this implies that the information required to adequately model and predict the phenomenon is contained solely within the observations or measurements of the phenomenon. Inclusion of one or more transfer function terms suggests that some, possibly unknown, causal mechanism exists between the output variable and the covariate series.

Modeling Periodic Data

Some Pacific coast salmon stocks, such as the sockeye run returning to the Adams river, exhibit strong cyclic behaviour (Larkin 1971 and Ward and Larkin 1964). Although these cycles impose a certain structure to the data, they are also a nuisance since valuable degrees of freedom must be sacrificed to adequately describe the process.

Two approaches are generally employed to model periodic data. In the first instance, the cycle is removed from the data by differencing the series seasonally (Box and Jenkins 1970) or by applying an appropriate filter such as subtracting from each datum the mean of the corresponding period (Noakes et al. 1985). A model is then fit to the corrected series. The second approach is to fit a separate model to each phase of the cycle. This approach allows for differences in estimated model parameters for each period (Noakes et al. 1985; Walters and Staley 1987) and the possibility of different model structures for each period (Noakes et al. 1985). Both approaches require additional model parameters resulting in a decrease in the degrees of freedom.

Models designed specifically to handle periodic data have been developed in other resource management fields and may be of use in fisheries (Noakes et al. 1985). Specifically, periodic autoregressive (PAR) and periodic ARMA (PARMA) models have proven useful in modeling and forecasting monthly river flows (Noakes et al. 1985; Vecchia 1985).

The underlying concept behind PAR and PARMA models is that the correlation between successive observations in the time series is a function of the specific period under consideration. That is, the correlation between observations at time "t-1" and "t" may be different than the correlation between observations at time "t" and "t+1". Thus, different models should be employed to generate forecasts of recruitment for different years in the cycle.

MULTIVARIATE MODELS

Errors-in-Variables Models

Standard regression models assume that the independent variables are measured without error. That is, if y is a function of x, the usual assumption is that the x's are known without error or that the error in x is much less than the error in y and the model parameters are estimated by minimizing some function of the difference between the observed and predicted y's. If both x and y are measured with error, then alternative procedures are required to estimate the model parameters (Kendall and Stuart 1979, Section 29). This situation may arise when developing a relationship between stock size and recruitment. If both stock size and recruitment are observed with error, an errors-in-variable approach to stock-recruitment analysis may be appropriate in such instances.

To illustrate this model, consider the case in which the relationship between the true stock size at time t-k, S_{t-k}, and the true recruitment at time t, R_t, is linear. The process is described by the following set of equations:

$$R_t = aS_{t-k} + b \tag{18a}$$
$$r_t = R_t + \sigma\psi_t \tag{18b}$$
$$s_{t-k} = S_{t-k} + \tau\varepsilon_{t-k} \tag{18c}$$

for $t = 1,2,\ldots,n$, where ψ_t and ε_{t-k} are NID random variables with mean zero and variance one. The basic idea of the model is that R_t and S_{t-k} are observed with error. Instead of R_t, we measure r_t, a random variable whose standard deviation is σ. Likewise, S_{t-k} is measured as s_{t-k}, a random variable with standard deviation τ. Incorporating the relative magnitude of these errors will lead to more realistic estimates of the model parameters.

Substituting to eliminate R_t yields two equations in terms of the measurements s_{t-k} and r_t:

$$s_{t-k} = S_{t-k} + \tau\varepsilon_t \tag{19a}$$
$$r_t = aS_{t-k} + b + \sigma\psi_t \ . \tag{19b}$$

This model contains n+4 parameters (a, b, σ, τ, and S_{t-k} for t = 1, 2, ..., n) and involves 2n (n pairs of r_t and s_{t-k}) observations. In theory, if 2n $\geq$ n+4, all model parameters can be estimated.

Estimates of the model parameters can be obtained by maximizing the likelihood function for model (19) given by (Kendall and Stuart 1979, Section 29, p. 408):

$$L = (2\pi\sigma\tau)^{-n} \prod_{t=1}^{n} \exp\left\{ -\frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{S_{t-k} - s_{t-k}}{\sigma}\right]^2 - \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{aS_{t-k} + b - r_t}{\tau}\right]^2 \right\} \tag{20}$$

provided certain conditions exist to ensure that simultaneous estimates of a, b, σ, and τ are possible (Kendall and Stuart 1979, Section 29). The standard approach to this problem is to assume that information external to the data exist such that the variance ratio:

$$(21)\quad \lambda = \tau^2/\sigma^2$$

is known. The maximum likelihood estimates of the model parameters are given in Kendall and Stuart (1979, Section 29, p. 405) and Schnute (1987). In practice, weighted least squares regression (Madansky 1959) is often employed to obtain estimates of the parameters in (19).

Generalizing (20) to include nonlinear functional relationships is conceptually straightforward. In this instance, (18a) would be replaced by an appropriate nonlinear function to give:

$$(22a)\quad R_t = f(S_{t-k}, \underline{\theta})$$
$$(22b)\quad r_t = R_t + \sigma\psi_t$$
$$(22c)\quad s_{t-k} = S_{t-k} + \tau\varepsilon_t$$

where $\underline{\theta}$ is a vector of model parameters to be estimated. The form of the function $f(S_{t-k}, \underline{\theta})$ is arbitrary but a plausible candidate is the Ricker curve (1). The likelihood function for this model is derived in the same manner as for the linear model (18) and would closely resemble (20).

The difficulty in applying nonlinear models (22) in practice is the considerable ambiguity associated with the estimated parameters (Schnute 1987). Given information on the relative errors associated with r_t and s_{t-k}, the errors-in-variables model attempts to minimize a function of the distance between the observed (r_t, s_{t-k}) and predicted (R_t, S_{t-k}) data pairs. Depending on the form of the function $f(S_{t-k}, \underline{\theta})$, there may exist several possible points (R_t, S_{t-k}) that minimize the function and the rules employed to differentiate the solutions may be arbitrary. Readers interested in a further discussion of these problems are referred to Kendall and Stuart (1979, Section 29), Richards and Schnute (1986), and Schnute (1987).

Ludwig and Walters (1981) and Walters and Ludwig (1981) have investigated the effects of measurement error in the independent variables on the perceived relationships between stock size and recruitment. These studies concluded that failing to account for such errors may lead to misleading and meaningless results. Readers should not, however, conclude that adopting an errors-in-variables approach to stock-recruitment modeling will necessarily lead to improved forecasts of recruitment. At the very least, we will have substantially less confidence in the parameter estimates and recruitment forecasts since the true stock size is unknown.

Since both stock size and recruitment are measured with error, there also exists a distinct possibility that the confidence region associated with the parameters contains unrealistic values such as $\pm\infty$.

Multivariate Regression and Time Series Models

The transformation of univariate models to their multivariate equivalents is generally straightforward involving the substitution of vectors for scalars and matrices for vectors. The multivariate extension of the regression model (7) is given by (Johnson and Wichern 1982, Chapter 7):

$$(23)\quad \underline{Y} = \mathbf{A}\,\underline{X} + \underline{B} + \underline{a}_t$$

where $\underline{Y}$ is a vector of output or response variables, A and $\underline{B}$ are a matrix and vector, respectively, of regression coefficients to be estimated, $\underline{X}$ is a vector of covariates related to $\underline{Y}$ in a linear fashion, and $\underline{a}_t$ is a vector of random variables assumed to be jointly NID with means zero ($\underline{0}$) and covariance matrix $\mathbf{\Sigma}$.

Multivariate ARMA models may also be constructed to model several time series simultaneously. The general k-dimensional ARMA(p,q) model is given by (Camacho et al. 1985, Hannan 1970, Kendall et al. 1983, Chapter 51, Quenouille 1957):

$$(24)\quad (\underline{Z}_t-\underline{\mu}) - \mathbf{\Phi}_1(\underline{Z}_{t-1}-\underline{\mu})-\cdots- \mathbf{\Phi}_p(\underline{Z}_{t-p}-\underline{\mu}) = \underline{a}_t- \mathbf{\Theta}_1\underline{a}_{t-1}-\cdots- \mathbf{\Theta}_q\underline{a}_{t-q}$$

where $\underline{Z}_t = (Z_{1t}, Z_{2t}, \ldots, Z_{kt})^T$ is the k-dimensional vector of observations at time t, $\underline{\mu} = (\mu_1, \mu_2, \ldots, \mu_k)^T$ is the k-dimensional vector of means for the series, and $\underline{a}_t$ is a vector of random errors, assumed to be jointly NID with means $\underline{0}$ and covariance matrix $\mathbf{\Sigma}$. The k X k AR and MA parameter matrices, $\mathbf{\Phi}_1, \mathbf{\Phi}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{\Phi}_p, \mathbf{\Theta}_1, \mathbf{\Theta}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{\Theta}_q$, are of the form:

$$(25)\quad \mathbf{\Phi}_i = \begin{bmatrix} \phi_{i11} & \cdots & \phi_{i1k} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \phi_{ik1} & \cdots & \phi_{ikk} \end{bmatrix}, \quad i = 1,\ldots,p$$

and

$$(26)\quad \mathbf{\Theta}_j = \begin{bmatrix} o_{j11} & \cdots & o_{j1k} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ o_{jk1} & \cdots & o_{jkk} \end{bmatrix}, \quad j = 1,\ldots,q$$

respectively, where ϕ_{ilm} and o_{jlm}, i=1,2,...,p, j=1,2,...,q, l=1,2,...,k and m=1,2,...,k, are parameters to be estimated. Utilizing the backward shift operator, B, the multivariate ARMA(p,q) model can expressed more compactly as:

$$(27)\quad \mathbf{\Phi}(B)(\underline{Z}_t - \underline{\mu}) = \mathbf{\Theta}(B)\underline{a}_t$$

where

$$(28)\quad \mathbf{\Phi}(B) = \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{\Phi}_1B - \mathbf{\Phi}_2B^2 - \ldots - \mathbf{\Phi}_pB^p$$

and

(29) $\Theta(B) = I - \Theta_1 B - \Theta_2 B^2 - \ldots - \Theta_q B^q$

and I is the k-dimensional identity matrix.

The TFN model (12) presented in this paper is often referred to as a multivariate model. This statement is only partially true since the TFN model is merely a special case of the general multivariate ARMA model (24). If the parameter matrices in (24) are upper (or lower) triangular, a TFN model is obtained. These models are appropriate when feedback mechanism exist such that "x" influences (causes) "y" but "y" does not influence "x".

Consider, for example, the following multivariate AR(1) model:

(30a) $\underline{Z}_t = \Phi_1 \underline{Z}_{t-1} + \underline{a}_t$

or

(30b) $$\begin{bmatrix} R_t \\ S_t \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \phi_{11} & \phi_{12} \\ 0 & \phi_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} R_{t-1} \\ S_{t-1} \end{bmatrix} + \underline{a}_t$$

or equivalently,

(30c) $R_t = \phi_{11} R_{t-1} + \phi_{12} S_{t-1} + a_{1t}$

(30d) $S_t = \phi_{22} S_{t-1} + a_{2t}$

where $\underline{Z}_t = [R_t \quad S_t]^T$, ϕ_{11}, ϕ_{12}, and ϕ_{22} are parameters to be estimated, and a_{1t} and a_{2t} are random errors assumed to be NID. Equation (30c) is a TFN model (Φ_1 is upper triangular) relating R_t to R_{t-1} and S_{t-1} while (30d) implies S_t is related to S_{t-1} in a linear fashion.

Extending the model (30) to encompass two or more stocks (or species) is straightforward. For instance, define the output vector, $\underline{Z}_t^T$, as $[\underline{R}_t^T \; \underline{S}_t^T \; \underline{E}_t^T]$ where $\underline{R}_t$, $\underline{S}_t$, and $\underline{E}_t$ are column vectors of recruitment, stock size, and environmental factors (biotic or abiotic) at time t, respectively. $\Phi(B)$ may then be constructed to ensure independent or contemporaneous-only models (ie. matrices associated with recruitment and stock series are diagonal) or to allow for complex interactions between stocks to reflect predator-prey or density-dependent relationships.

A special type of multivariate model is obtained when the variables under consideration are only contemporaneously correlated. This situation arises if recruitment for two or more stocks (or species) are significantly correlated only in the same year. A contemporaneous ARMA (CARMA) model is appropriate in such instances and is obtained by constraining the parameter matrices in (24) to be diagonal. Camacho et al. (1985) outline procedures for estimating the parameters and performing diagnostic checks for CARMA models even in instances where the two (or more) time series under consideration are of different lengths.

The main difficulties employing multivariate models in practice are identifying the structure of the models and the significant number of parameters to be estimated. Care must be taken to ensure that reasonable feedback mechanisms exist and that a suitable criterion that accounts for statistical fit and model parsimony is employed to compare candidate models.

FORECASTING PACIFIC HERRING RECRUITMENT

The Data

Data employed in the study consisted of estimates of Pacific herring year class strength, spawn indices, and environmental time series. Recruitment estimates, measured as the number of age one fish, were derived from stock reconstructions using an age-structured model (Fournier and Archibald 1982; Haist et al. 1985) for five stock groupings on the British Columbia coast (Figure 1). Spawn indices were obtained from surveys conducted by Department of Fisheries and Oceans staff (Haist et al. 1985). Environmental variable included in the analyses comprised monthly means of sea surface temperature, sea level, salinity, river discharge, and Ekman transport. A description of the data employed in the study is presented in Figure 1.

Data up to and including year t were employed to calibrate the models used in the forecasting study. The models were then employed to forecast recruitment in the year t+1. Parameters were updated after each time step with a total of seven one-step-ahead forecast being generated for each model.

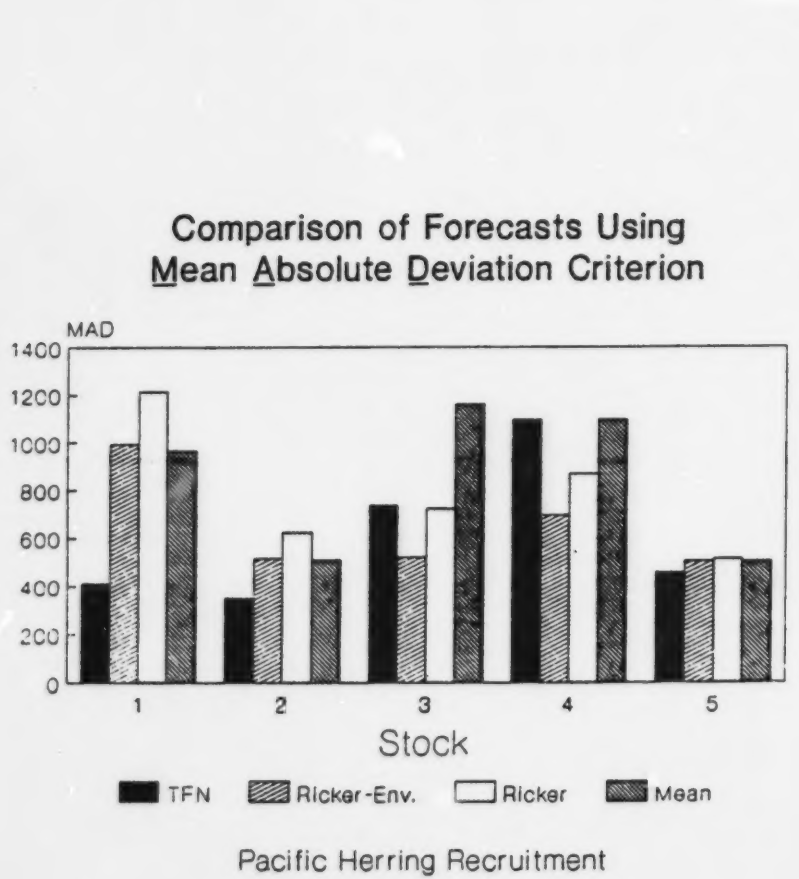
The Models

Four models were considered in the study. Ricker (1), Ricker-environmental, and TFN (12) models were fitted for each stock. The environmental variables included in the Ricker-environmental and TFN models were determined by examining the correlation between recruitment estimates and environmental factors thought important in the early life history of Pacific herring (Ricker 1975; Stocker et al. 1985). The last model assumed recruitment was a purely random phenomenon and that the best forecast of recruitment in any given year was the historical mean. This model is the most obvious alternative and serves as a bench-mark. Details of the models employed are given in Stocker and Noakes (1988).

Forecast errors were compared using root mean squared error (RMSE), mean absolute deviation (MAD), and mean absolute percent error (MAPE) criteria. Models were also ranked for each performance measure and stock grouping with a rank of 1 being assigned to the model that forecasted "best" for a particular performance measure and a rank of 4 to the "worst" model. Rank sums were also calculated for each performance measure by multiplying the number of times a given model received a specific rank by that rank and summing over all ranks. Lower rank sums indicate better overall performance.

Parameters for the Ricker models employed in this study were estimated using a program developed by Mittertreiner and Schnute (1985). A time series package developed by McLeod and Hipel (1988) was employed to obtain estimates of the TFN model parameters. When models were fitted to logged data, the bias correction factor (6) was employed to obtain forecasts of recruitment.

FIGURE 1



Recruitment and Stock Time Series
Data Employed in the Forecasting Study

Stock Grouping	Period
St. of Georgia/Johnstone St.	1951-82
West Coast Vancouver Island	1951-81
Central Coast	1951-82
Queen Charlotte Islands	1951-82
Prince Rupert District	1951-82

Environmental Factors Employed
in the Forecasting Study

Environmental Factor	Location
Sea Surface Temperature	Amphitrite Point Cape St. James Entrance Island
Salinity	Amphitrite Point McInnes Island
Sea Level	Point Atkinson Tofino
Ekman Transport	54N134W
Fraser River Discharge	Hope Station

Stock size, recruitment, and environmental time series employed in the forecasting study. The bar graph compares model performance using MAD criterion. Stocks are listed in order with the Strait of Georgia/Johnstone Strait stock corresponding to stock group 1 in the bar graph.

The Results

RMSE's, MAD's, and MAPE's for each model and stock are presented in Figures 1 and 2. The historical mean was employed as the forecast for the Queen Charlotte Island stock for the TFN model and thus the performance of these two approaches is identical in this instance. The TFN provided the "best" forecasts of recruitment for the Strait of Georgia/Johnstone Strait and west coast of Vancouver Island stocks (all performance measures). In both instances, there appeared to be a 30-50% reduction in expected error for the TFN model compared to competing forecasting methods. The Ricker-environmental model performed well for the Central coast and Queen Charlotte Island stocks. However, the RMSE's for the Queen Charlotte Island stock were all very close and on this basis one might conclude there is little evidence to give any one model preferential consideration. All models performed equally well or poorly for the Prince Rupert stock depending on whether one adopts an optimistic or pessimistic outlook.

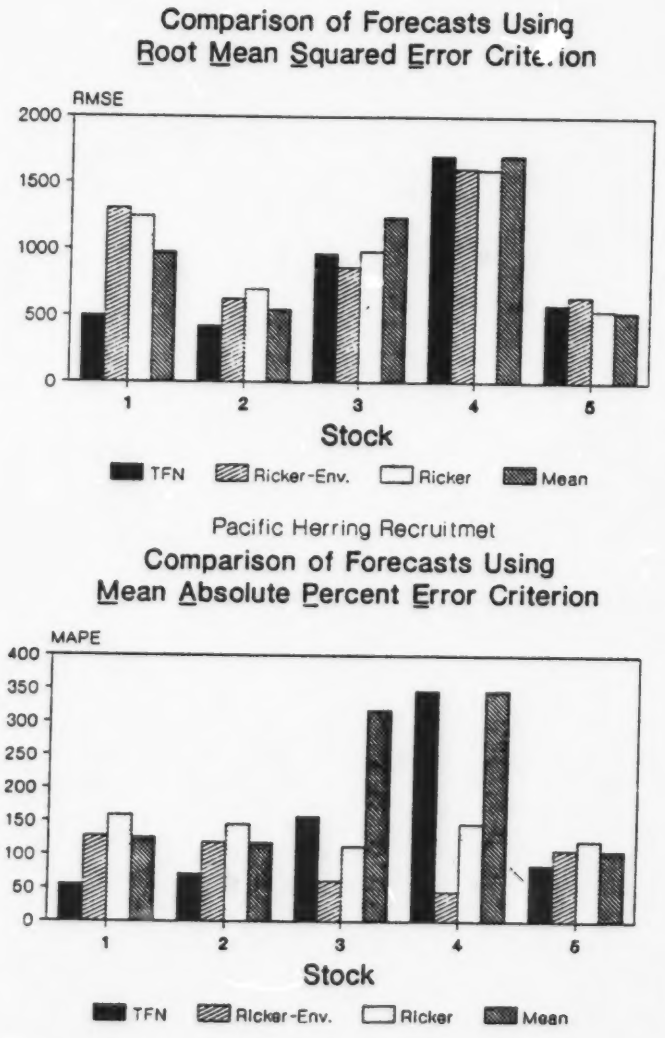
Rank-sum statistics for the four models are presented in Figure 3. Each slice of the pie represents the total rank-sum for the three performance criteria, RMSE, MAD, and MAPE. The stacked bar graph linked to the exploded slice of pie provides the breakdown for each of the criterion. For example, the total rank-sum for all performance criteria for the Ricker model was 45 (the value associated with the slice). The contribution of each criterion was 13, 16, and 16, for RMSE, MAD, and MAPE, respectively (the values in the stacked bar). Model performance appeared to be fairly consistent for all performance measures considered in the study with the TFN model and Ricker-environmental models providing the "best" overall performance. An exception was for the Queen Charlotte Island stock (stock 4 and to a lesser extent stock 3, the Central Coast stock) when the forecast errors were compared using the MAPE criterion. The MAPE's for the TFN and Mean models were much larger than those for the Ricker and Ricker-environmental models (Figure 2). This situation occurs when the prediction is much larger than the observation resulting in a very large percent error. This phenomenon may be avoided by adopting an alternative performance criterion such as the median absolute percent error (Noakes et al. 1985; Stocker and Noakes 1988).

DISCUSSION

The results of the forecasting experiment presented in this paper suggest that spawning stock size may, at least directly, have less influence on predictions of subsequent recruitment than first anticipated. An AR(1) model using only recruitment data was able to forecast future recruitment for the Strait of Georgia/Johnstone Strait herring stock much better than the commonly employed Ricker model. In fact, the Ricker models entertained in this study generally performed poorly with the historical mean providing equally good or better forecasts of recruitment (Figures 1,2, and 3) (Stocker and Noakes 1988). The success of the TFN and Ricker-environmental models suggests that other biotic or abiotic factors may play a role in determining future recruitment of Pacific herring (Stocker and Noakes 1988).

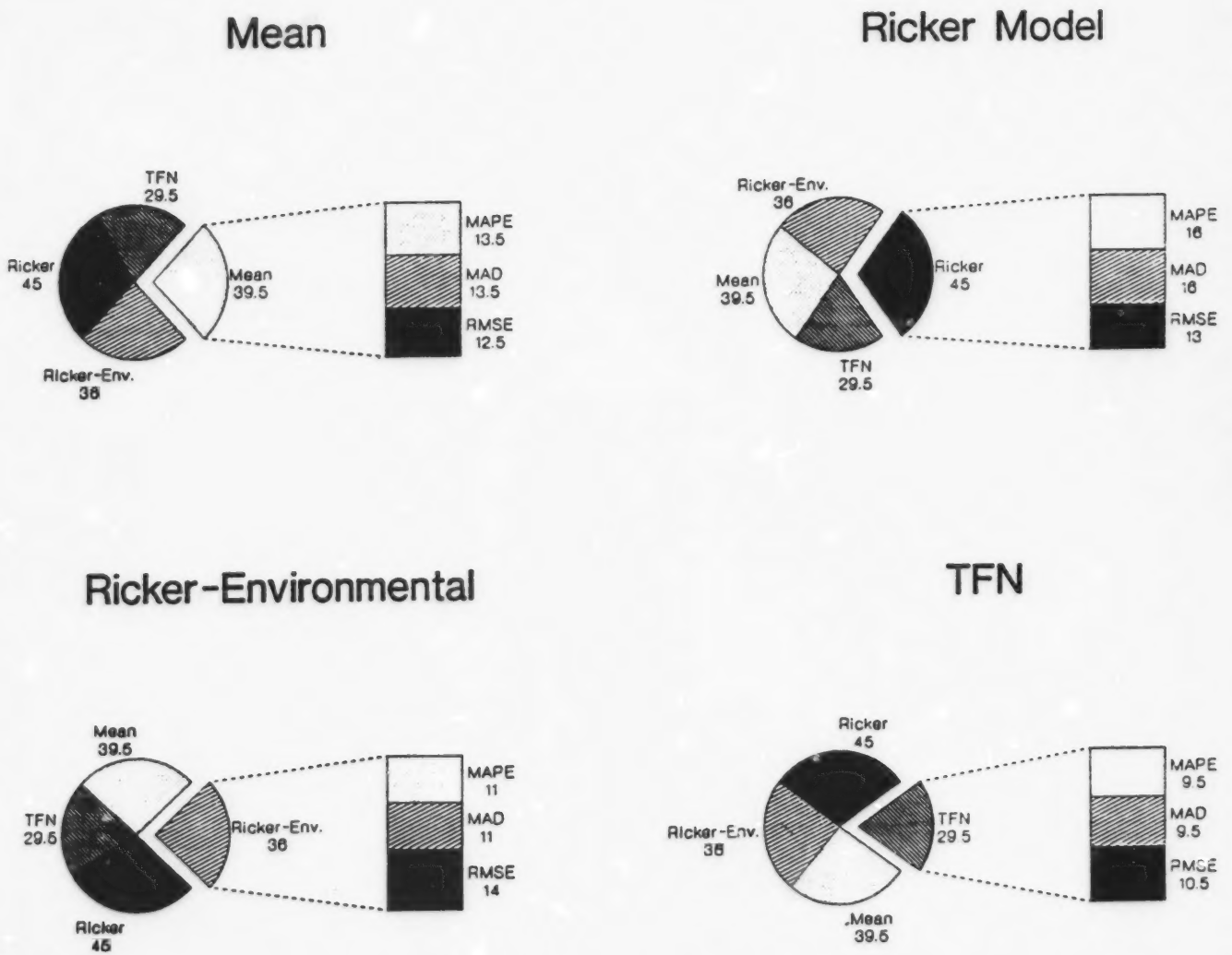
Individuals interested in adopting a more holistic approach to multispecies management might consider investigating the utility of the multivariate models presented in this paper. These approaches, particularly the multivariate time

FIGURE 2



Comparison of model performance using RMSE and MAPE criteria.
Stock numbers correspond to those listed in Figure 1.

FIGURE 3



Summary of rank-sums for the four models employed in the study. The value associated with each slice of pie represents the total rank-sum for the three criteria RMSE, MAD, and MAPE. The linked stacked bar graph provides the breakdown for each of the performance criterion.

series models, allow for complex interactions between stocks and species as well as the incorporation of environmental variables in the model. Time series available in most fisheries applications are, however, frequently short and technical issues related to identifying appropriate multivariate models and estimating the model parameters have yet to be addressed.

An alternative approach to adopting a single forecasting model is to combine forecast from two or more procedures (Bates and Granger 1969; Haist et al. 1987; McLeod et al. 1987; Winkler and Makridakis 1983). The true underlying process generating recruitment is never known and the forecasting models employed by managers will be deficient in some sense. Different approaches to modeling recruitment incorporate unique characteristics of the data and combining forecasts generated by the competing models may provide a beneficial mix of the strengths of each approach. Combining forecasts produced by two or more models has been successful in economics (Winkler and Makridakis 1983) and in other resource modeling fields (McLeod et al. 1987) and consideration should be given to this approach when forecasting recruitment.

REFERENCES

Bates, J.M. and C.W.J. Granger. 1969. The combination of forecasts. Operational Research Quarterly 20: 451 - 468.

Beauchamp, J.J. and J.S. Olson. 1973. Correction for bias in regression estimates after logarithmic transformations. Ecology 54: 1403 - 1407.

Beverton, R.J.H. and S.J. Holt. 1957. On the dynamics of exploited fish populations. Fishery Invest., Lond., Ser. 2, 19: 533p.

Box, G.E.P. and D.R. Cox. 1964. An analysis of transformations. J. Royal Statist. Soc. A. 127: 211 - 252.

Box, G.E.P. and G.M. Jenkins. 1970. Time Series Analysis: Forecasting and Control. Holden Day Inc., San Francisco, CA., 575p.

Box, G.E.P. and G.C. Tiao. 1975. Intervention analysis with applications to economic and environmental problems. J. Amer. Stat. Assoc. 70: 70 -79.

Camacho, F., A.I. McLeod and K.W. Hipel. 1985. Contemporaneous autoregressive-moving average (CARMA) modeling in water resources. Water Resources Bulletin 21: 709 - 720.

Cushing, D.H. 1973. The dependence of recruitment on parent stock. J. Fish. Res. Board of Can. 30: 1965 - 1976.

D'Astous, F. and K.W. Hipel. 1979. Analyzing environmental time series. ASCE J. Environ. Eng. Div. 105: 979 - 992.

Draper, N.R. and H. Smith. 1966. Applied Regression Analysis. John Wiley and Sons Inc., New York. 407p.

Eggers, D.M., C.P. Meacham and H. Yuen. 1983. Synopsis and critique of the available forecasts of sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) returning to Bristol Bay in 1984. Alaska Dept. Fish. Game Infor. Leaflet 228.

Fournier, D. and C.P. Archibald. 1982. A general theory for analyzing catch-at-age data. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 39: 1195 - 1207.

Granger, C.W.J. 1969. Investigating causal relations by econometric and cross-spectral methods. Econometrica 37: 424 - 438.

Granger, C.W.J. and P. Newbold. 1976. Forecasting transformed series. J. Royal Statist. Soc. B 38: 189 - 203.

Haist, V., J.F. Schweigert and D. Fournier. 1987. Stock assessments for British Columbia herring in 1986 and forecasts of the potential catch in 1987. Can. MS Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1929: 63p.

Haist. V., M. Stocker and J.F. Schweigert. 1985. Stock assessment for British Columbia herring in 1984 and forecasts of the potential catch in 1985. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1365: 53 p.

Hannan, E.J. 1970. Multiple Time Series. Wiley, New York.

Henderson, M.A. 1987. Forecasts of the size of the area 10 sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) stock from 1985-1990. Can. MS. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1919: 21p.

Hipel, K.W., A.I. McLeod and D.J. Noakes. 1982. Fitting dynamic models to hydrological time series. p. 110 - 129 In A.H. El-Shaarawi and S.R. Esterby [eds.], Time Series Methods in Hydrosciences, Elsevier, Amsterdam.

Jensen, A.L. 1985. Time series analysis and the forecasting of menhaden catch and cpue. N.Amer.J. Fish. Manage. 5:78-85.

Johnson, R.A. and D.W. Wichern. 1982. Applied Multivariate Statistical Analysis. Prentice Hall Inc., Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey.

Kendall, M. and A. Stuart. 1979. The Advanced Theory of Statistics Vol. 2: Inference and Relationship (Fourth Edition). MacMillan Publishing Co.,MacMillan Publishing Co., New York. 748p.

Kendall, M., A. Stuart and J.K. Ord. 1983. The Advanced Theory of Statistics Vol. 3: Design and Analysis, and Time-Series (Fourth Edition). MacMillan Publishing Co., New York. 780p.

Larkin, P.A. 1971. Simulation studies of the Adams river sockeye salmon Oncorhynchus nerka. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 28: 1493-1502.

Ludwig, D. and C.J. Walters. 1981. Measurement errors and uncertainty in parameter estimates for stock and recruitment. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 38: 711-720.

Madansky, A. 1959. The fitting of straight lines when both variables are subject to error. J. Amer. Stat. Assoc. 54: 173 - 205.

McLeod, A.I. and K.W. Hipel. 1988. The McLeod-Hipel Time Series Package. Elsevier, Amsterdam. (In press)

McLeod, A.I., D.J. Noakes, K.W. Hipel and R.M. Thompstone. 1987. Combining hydrologic forecasts. ASCE J. Water Resources Planning and Manage. 113: 29 - 41.

Mendelssohn, R. 1981. Using Box-Jenkins models to forecast fishery dynamics: identification, estimation and checking. Fish. Bull. 78:887-896.

Mittertreiner, A. and J. Schnute. 1985. Simplex: a manual and software package for easy nonlinear parameter estimation and interpretation in fishery research. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1348: 90p.

Noakes, D. 1986. Quantifying changes in British Columbia Dungeness crab (Cancer magister) landings using intervention analysis. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 634 -639.

Noakes, D.J., A.I. McLeod and K.W. Hipel. 1985. Forecasting monthly river flow time series. International Journal of Forecasting 1: 179 - 190.

Noakes, D., D.W. Welch and M. Stocker. 1987. A time series approach to stock-recruitment analysis: transfer function noise modelling. Natural Resource Modeling 2: 213 - 233.

Pennington, M. 1985. Estimating the relative abundance of fish from a series of trawl surveys. Biometrics 41: 197 - 202.

Peterman, R.M. 1982. Model of salmon age structure and its use in preseason forecasting and studies of marine survival. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 39: 1444-1452.

Quenouille, M.H. 1957. The Analysis of Multiple Time Series. Griffin, London.

Richards, L.J. and J. Schnute. 1986. An experimental and statistical approach to the question: Is CPUE and index of abundance g Can. J. Fish Aquat. Sci. 43: 1214-1227.

Ricker, W.E. 1954. Stock and recruitment. J. Fish. Res. Board Can.11: 559-623.

Ricker, W.E. 1975. Computation and interpretation of biological statistics of fish populations. Bull. Fish. Res. Board Can. 191: 382p.

Saila, S.B., M. Wigbout and R.J. Lermit. 1980. Comparison of some time series models for the analysis of fisheries data. J. Cons. Int.Explor. Mer 39: 44-52.

Salas, J.D., G.Q. Tabios III and P. Bartolini. 1985. Approaches to multivariate modeling of water resources time series. Water Resources Bulletin 21: 683-708.

Schnute, J. 1987. Data uncertainty, model ambiguity, and model identification. Natural Resource Modeling 2: 159-212.

Shepherd, J.G. 1982. A versatile new stock-recruitment relationship for fisheries and the construction of sustainable yield curves. J. Cons. Int. Explor. Mer 40: 67-75.

Shepherd, J.G., J.G. Pope and R.D. Cousens. 1984. Variations in fish stocks and hypotheses concerning their links with climate. Rapp. P.-V. Reun. Cons. Int. Explor. Mer 185: 255-267.

Stocker, M., V. Haist and D. Fournier. 1985. Environmental variation and recruitment of Pacific herring (Clupea harengus pallasi) in the Strait of Georgia. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 42 (Suppl. 1):174-180.

Stocker, M. and R. Hilborn. 1981. Short-term forecasting in marine fish stocks. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 38: 1247-1254.

Stocker, M. and D. Noakes. 1988. Evaluating forecasting procedures for predicting Pacific herring (Clupea harengus pallasi) recruitment in British Columbia. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 45: 928-935.

Tang, Q. 1985. Modification of the Ricker stock recruitment model to account for environmentally induced variation in recruitment with particular reference to the blue crab fishery in Chesapeake Bay. Fisheries Research 3: 13-21.

Vecchia, A.V. 1985. Periodic autoregressive-moving average (PARMA) modeling with application to water resources. Water Resources Bulletin 21: 721-730.

Walters, C.J. 1985. Bias in the estimation of functional relationships from time series data. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 42:147-149.

Walters, C.J. and D. Ludwig. 1981. Effects of measurement errors on the assessment of stock-recruitment relationships. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 38: 704-710.

Walters, C.J. and M.J. Staley. 1987. Evidence against the existence of cyclic dominance in Fraser river sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka). p. 375 - 384 In H.D. Smith, L. Margolis, and C.C. Wood [ed.] Sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) population biology and future management. Can. Spec. Publ. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 96.

Ward, F.J. and P.A. Larkin. 1964. Cyclic dominance in Adams river sockeye salmon. Int. Pac. Salmon Fish. Comm. Prog. Rep. No. 11: 116p.

Winkler, R.L. and S. Makridakis. 1983. The combination of forecasts. J. Royal Statist. Soc. A. 146: 150 - 157.

APPENDIX A: NOTATION

a - regression coefficient

a_i - ith regression coefficient

a_t - normal and independently distributed random variable with mean zero and constant variance σ_{a2}

$\underline{a}_t$ - vector of random variables assumed to be NID with mean zero and covariance matrix $\mathbf{\Sigma}$

$\underline{A}$ - column vector of regression coefficients

$\mathbf{A}$ - matrix of regression coefficients

AR(p) - autoregressive model of order p

ARMA(p,q) - autoregressive moving average model with p AR and q MA terms

b - intercept parameter or scaling factor employed in linear regression models

b_i - time delay associated with the ith input covariate or intervention series

B - backward shift operator

$\underline{B}$ - vector of regression coefficients

$f()$- arbitrary function in errors-in-variables model

$g[]$- function relating density-independent and environmental variables in the Ricker-environmental model

k - recruitment lag

m - number of input covariate series components included in the transfer function-noise and Ricker-environmental models

MA(q) - moving average model of order q

n - number of observations

$N_{n,t}$- number of n year-old recruits in year t

$N_{n+1,t+1}$- number of n+1 year-old recruits in year t+1

p - order of the nonseasonal autoregressive operator

PAR- periodic autoregressive model

PARMA - periodic autoregressive-moving average model

q - order of the nonseasonal moving average operator

r_i- order of the $\delta_i(B)$ polynomial in the i^{th} transfer function component

r_t - observed recruitment at time t such at r_t is a random variable whose standard deviation is σ

R_{max}- upper limit to recruitment

R_t - recruitment at time t

$R_{t'}$- forecast of recruitment in the transformed domain

s_{t-k} - observed stock size at time t-k such that s_{t-k} is a random variable whose standard deviation is τ

S_{t-k} - stock size at time t-k

SARIMA - seasonal autoregressive integrated moving average model

t - discrete time

u_i- order of the $\omega_i(B)$ polynomial in the i^{th} transfer function component

x_i- i^{th} element of the column vector $\underline{X}$

x_{ti} - value of the i^{th} input covariate series at time t in the transfer function-noise and Ricker-environmental models

$\underline{X}$ - column vector of covariates

y_t- value of the response or output variable at time t

$\underline{Y}$ - vector of response or output variables

$\underline{Z}$ - k-dimensional vector of outputs employed in the multivariate time series model

α - density-independent parameter in the Ricker stock-recruitment model

α_t - value of the density-independent parameter at time t in the Ricker-environmental model

β - density-dependent parameter in the Ricker stock-recruitment model

δ_{ij}- j^{th} parameter associated with the $\delta_i(B)$ polynomial in the i^{th} transfer function component

$\delta_i(B)$ - denominator of the i^{th} transfer function component

ε_t- NID random variable with mean zero and variance one

λ - variance ratio, τ^2/σ^2, employed in the errors-in-variables model

θ_i - i^{th} nonseasonal moving average parameter

$\boldsymbol{\theta}_j$ - j^{th} kXk MA matrix in multivariate ARMA model

$\theta(B)$ - nonseasonal moving average operator of order q

$\boldsymbol{\theta}(B)$ - k-dimensional MA(q) operator

θ_{jlm} - MA parameter in multivariate ARMA model

$\mu_{i'}$ - mean of the i^{th} series in multivariate ARMA model

μ_{xi} - mean of the ith covariate series, x_{ti}

μ_y - mean of the output response variable y_t

σ - standard deviation of a normal random variable, ψ_t

σ_a^2- variance of a_t

$\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ - covariance matrix of $\underline{a}_t$

τ - standard deviation of a normal random variable, ε_t

ϕ_i - i^{th} nonseasonal autoregressive parameter

$\phi(B)$- nonseasonal autoregressive operator of order p

ϕ_{ilm} - AR parameter in multivariate ARMA model

$\boldsymbol{\Phi}_i$ - i^{th} kXk AR matrix in multivariate ARMA model

$\boldsymbol{\Phi}(B)$ - k-dimensional AR(p) operator

ψ_t- NID random variable with mean zero and variance one

ω_{ji} - j^{th} parameter associated with the $\omega_i(B)$ polynomial in the i^{th} transfer function component

$\omega_i(B)$ - numerator of the i^{th} transfer function component

VII WORK TEAM ACTIVITIES

A. WORK TEAM CONCEPT

by

M. Sinclair
Scotia-Fundy Region

The primary aim of the multi-disciplinary work team concept was to increase individual participation and interaction between disciplines. A group of nine scientists is about the optimal size for effective communication. The plenary sessions of 60 participants are useful for formal presentations of the overviews, but such sessions are not conducive to fruitful discussion of the issues.

The recruitment problems assigned to the work teams were arbitrarily defined (one problem from the Pacific Ocean, Gulf of St. Lawrence and Atlantic Ocean respectively).

Even though the work team chairmen were requested to generate a research plan to address the assigned recruitment problem, as a result of the sessions, it was not expected that these reports would form the substance of the recommendations of the workshop. The value of the work team sessions was the interaction itself. The reports of the chairmen are nevertheless reproduced in the following sections to provide partial documentation of their discussions.

The participants have indicated that a mix of multi-disciplinary work teams and plenary sessions was a most useful model for workshops of this type. In retrospect, it would have been preferable to have given a full day for the work team discussions and the preparation of their reports. A two-day meeting was too short given the agenda. The chairmen are thanked for the good job they did in running the respective sessions, preparing the summaries during their lunch break, and presenting them in the subsequent plenary session.

The workshop reports may, in some cases, represent the chairmen's perception of discussions as not all the reports were circulated to work team members for final review.

VII WORK TEAM ACTIVITIES

B. LIST OF TEAM MEMBERS

Room: Outer Harbour

Lobster 1:

K. Brander
G.Y. Conan*
K.F. Drinkwater
G.C. Harding
C. Hudon
D. Lefaivre
D. McKone
R.K. Mohn
D.D. Sameoto

Room: Brig

Lobster 2:

K.T. Frank
T.D. Iles
Y. de Lafontaine
T.C. Lambert
P. Leblond
D.L. Mackas
J.D. Pringle*
J.-C. Therriault
M.J. Tremblay

Room: Gallery

Salmon 1:

G.B. Ayles
J. Boutillier
K. Denman
R. Francis
B. Hargreaves*
M. Healey
D. Noakes
J. Runge
R.E. Thomson

Room: Anchor:

Salmon 2:

M. Chadwick*
J. Craig
E.L. Dalley
G.T. Evans
M.M. Mullin
R.A. Myers
P.C. Smith
R.L. Stephenson

Room: Suite 552

Cod 1:

S.A. Akenhead
J.T. Anderson
W.C. Leggett
J.W. Loder
I. Perry
B.D. Petrie
J.C. Rice*
A. Sinclair
D. Ware

Room: Suite 651:

Cod 2:

R.J. Crawford
W.R. Crawford
J. Gagné
G.S. Jamieson
A. Koslow
J.D. Nielson
P. Pepin
M. Sinclair
A. Tyler*

---

* Chairpersons

VII WORK TEAM ACTIVITIES

C. LOBSTER - QUESTIONS POSED AND REPORTS BY WORK TEAM CHAIRMEN

The Problem

Magdalen Islands lobster landings are predicted by a regression involving spring St. Lawrence River runoff lagged nine and ten years (see attached figure from Drinkwater 1987). Enhanced landings follow periods of high runoff. There have been no field studies directed toward understanding the mechanisms underlying the statistical relationship. A leading hypothesis is that of Sutcliffe (1972; 1973) involving food-chain interactions. Under this "food chain" hypothesis, high runoff generates increased downstream vertical transport of nutrients in the Gulf of St. Lawrence which leads to higher plankton production and in turn higher survival of lobster larvae and/or early-stage juveniles. Background information on lobsters off the Magdalen Islands is provided in the summary prepared by Christianne Hudon (see Appendix II). Some information on relevant physical oceanography is also provided.

The work team is requested to provide the components of a research program that would increase understanding of the mechanisms generating recruitment variability of lobsters of the Magdalen Isands, with particular emphasis on testing the leading hypothesis of Sutcliffe (or an alternate if the team considers it more fruitful).

GROUP I (Chairperson's Report)

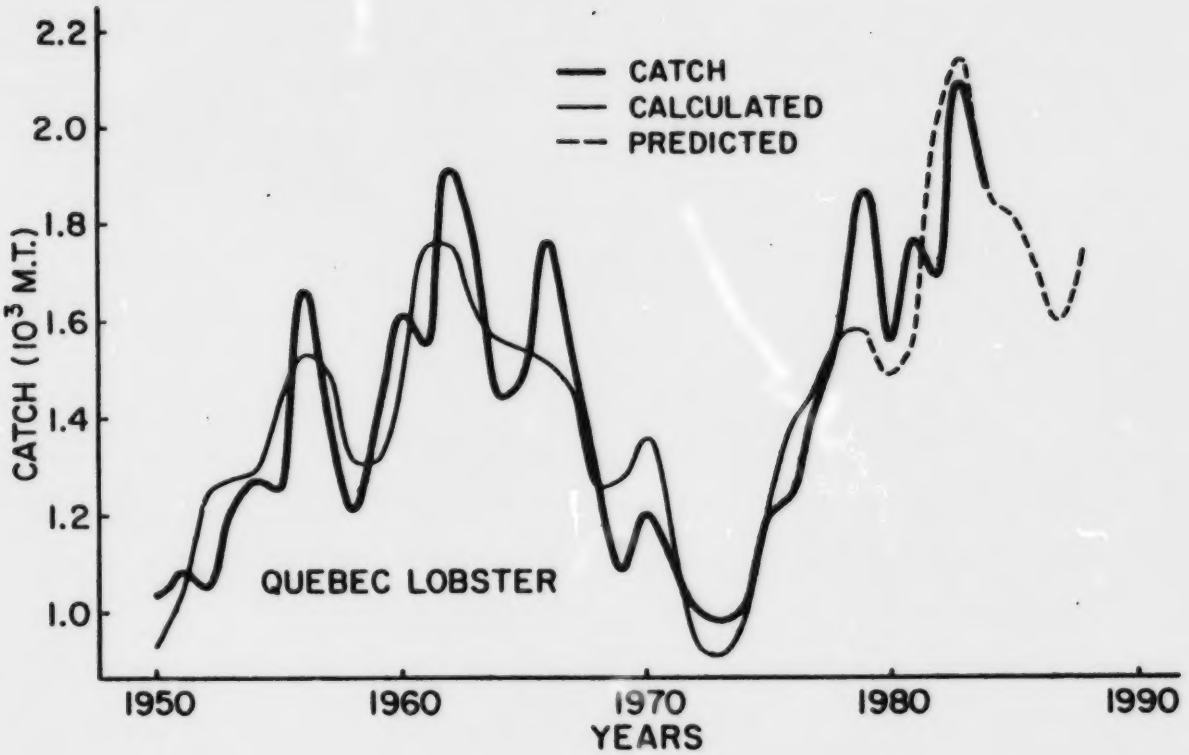
Statement of the Problem

Lobster landings at the Magdalen Islands (Gulf of St Lawrence) have fluctuated from 1 to 2.2 10^3 tons over the past 40 years. There appears to be two types of fluctuations: weak fluctuations with a period of about 3 years, wide fluctuations with a period of about 20 years.

The fluctuations can be modelled during the time interval between 1950 and 1979 using runoff from the St. Lawrence River lagged nine and ten years (Sheldon et al. 1982) as: $C = 0.17R_1 + 0.16R_2 - 1.79$, where C is the catch in 10^3 t, R_1 is the average February and March runoff (RIVSUM) and R_2 is the average July-October runoff for 9 and 10 years previously, RIVSUM is in 10^3 m^3 s^{-1}.

A very good similarity of the retrospectively calculated to the observed landings was obtained for the period 1950-1979. From 1979 to 1984, forecasted landings were quite similar to the observed landings. Over the past 4 years, a divergence appears: predicted landings decrease, observed landings keep on increasing apart from week fluctuations (from Drinkwater).

There has been no field study designed for testing mechanisms involved. A leading hypothesis (Sutcliffe, 1972, 1973) is that high runoffs generate increased vertical transport of nutrients which lead to higher plankton



The observed, calculated and predicted annual catches of lobster from Quebec. The calculated catch was determined from a linear regression with RIVSUM (see text). The catch predictions were also based on the regression. (From Drinkwater, K.F. 1987. Sutcliffe Revisited: Previously published correlations between fish stocks and environmental indices and their recent performances. pp. 41-61. In R.I. Perry and K.T. Frank (Eds.) Environmental Effects on Recruitment to Canadian Atlantic Fish Stocks. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1556.

production and thereafter higher survival of lobster larvae and/or early stage juveniles.

Critical Review of the Problem

Biological Background:

According to Bugden (1981) freshwater discharge from the St. Lawrence seem to decrease rather than increase eddy exchange between surface and deeper layers due to increased stratification. Consequently, an increase in nutrients could be expected only from the runoff rather than from an upwelling. This contradicts the initial hypothesis.

Correlation between freshwater runoff and abundance of catch does not imply causality. River outflow could in itself be the consequence of another common causality factor. Both river outflow and catch seem to follow more or less periodic fluctuations. Both series of data are highly autocorrelated, it is thereon difficult to ascertain statistically whether conjunction of periodicities over a short time interval imply causality.

Rhythms have often been described in landings of Homarus or Nephrops lobsters, and were sometimes related to average water temperatures a few years earlier (Gulf of Maine, European lobster and Nephrops stocks). This would imply higher production/survival of lobster (Homarus) larvae in warm years, higher survival/production in Nephrops larvae in cold years. It is difficult to dissociate effects of temperature from effects of freshwater runoff in the Gulf of St. Lawrence since both are intercorrelated. Higher water temperatures are known to enhance growth and rate of molting: larvae would progress through planktonic stages faster at higher temperatures and therefore be less subject to predation. Predation rather than food limitation would act negatively on the survival of lobster larvae. Rates of mortality estimated for lobster larvae in Iles de la Madeleine and in St. George's Bay (New Brunswick) are low but there are no interannual comparisons available.

An Alternate Hypothesis

Little is known of early benthic stages. Small lobsters are abundant in certain locations such as Isle de la Madeleine (Hudon) or north coast of Prince Edward Island (Conan pers. observation), but are very difficult to study quantitatively. Early benthic stages are thought to last for about three years before they become easily catchable in traps. They are easily subject to predation by fish (cunners, cod) particularly when they molt, and remain usually concealed in borrows, under rocks, or in crevices. From late fall to early spring, they remain inactive due to low temperatures and will not be able to react strongly to disturbances of the environment. If a storm hits shallow lobster grounds in locations where there is no ice cover, large quantities of lobsters of all sizes, and particulary very small ones, are cast ashore on the beaches and die. Storm induced mortality can be quite high at early benthic stages. A collection of lobster cast ashore on the north coast of Prince Edward Island in 1986 was studied by modal analysis. It was estimated that sublegal lobsters contained 5 well defined age groups. Since the growth rate is high at these ages, size ranges of component groups only slightly overlapped.

Storm incidence is positively correlated with freshwater runoff (Jean Claude Therriault, pers. communication). Since the data of landings and river runoff (equivalent to storm incidence) are highly autocorrelated, with periodicities components of circa 3 years and circa 20 years, it appears quite impossible to differenciate a positive correlation between the two phenomenas with a 9 to 10 years lag from negative correlation with a 4 to 5 year lag time. It is possible that the environmental control of recruitment is actually occuring through fall and winter storms, in locations and years of reduced ice cover, by massive kills of early benthic stages of lobsters. The two year averaging (9-10) becomes (4-5) and may be explained by the fact that two major age classes contribute to the landings.

Experimental Designs for Testing Hypotheses

Two possibilities are retained: 1) Ho is the Sutcliffe hypothesis: recruitment of the fishery is partially positively controlled by freshwater runoff 9-10 years earlier. 2) H_1 is the new hypothesis: recruitment to the fishery is partially negatively controlled by storm incidence 4 to 5 years earlier.

1) Ho requires either a) that the number of years elapsed between larval stage and recruitment to the fishery be extended from present belief of 5 years to a new status of 9 years, the population control would be by availability of food during larval stages; or b) that control by food availability takes place during early benthic stages through presence of a prey (such as young Cancer irroratus) whose abundance itself may be controlled by river runoffs some years earlier: a) two stages effect through the food chain would explain the 9 to 10 years lag.

Both possibilities should be checked:

a) The first possibility requires quantitative plankton sampling of lobster larvae abundance over a period of at least 20 years (lag time is 9 years) allowing calculation of mortalities of planktonic stages, simultaneous sampling of pelagic food production (abundance and turnover rate) and measurement of lobster larvae condition (lipid to protein ratio).

The first possibility also requires adequate aging of prerecruit stages in the wild. Tagging and recapture using microtags could be used (Alan Campbell pers. communication). Alternatively, modes in the frequency distributions could be followed if early stages could be easily sampled. A methodological study is required for designing sampling devices allowing quantitative sampling of early lobster stages.

b) The second possibility requires quantitative sampling of benthic stages, as above. Stomach contents of early benthic stages should be examined and abundance of major prey surveyed at the same time as the early lobster stages. An index of stomach content should be used for quantifying feeding success.

No time series for data described in a) or b) are presently available.

2) H_1 requires time series analysis of storm occurrences and ice coverage vs catch abundance with a 4 to 5 year lag in protected vs non protected areas of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Such data is available. Quantitative sampling of early benthic stages (size composition and abundance) washed ashore after storms will be required. Quantitative sampling of early benthic stages in control stations over a period of at least 10 years will be required due to the 4-5 year lag time hypothesis.

Additional Technological Innovations Required

For Monitoring Abundance/Maturity of Larvae:

1) Long term monitoring by current meters and thermometers for estimating surface circulations would be required in gyres (Iles de la Madeleine, Northern Northumberland Strait) or bays (St. George Bay). This would allow one to understand and quantify larval drift, larval retention and loss of larvae by advection.

2) Mapping of surface current circulation by satellite teledection of surface temperature would enhance knowledge of the bodies of water studied.

3) Design of large mid-water trawl type plankton net with 100 micron meshes for sampling lobster larvae and food available for the larvae.

4) Operation of sampling cruises twice weekly from April to September. The period of larval occurrences vary from year to year, a complete coverage of the season is required.

For Monitoring Abundance of Early Benthic Stages:

1) Design of collectors allowing capture of post larvae when they become benthic. So far attempts have been totally unsuccessful.

2) Design of benthic samplers allowing quantitative sampling of early benthic stages: trawls, grabs, dredges, suction or water jet devices simulating action of a storm. Sampling should preferably take place during early spring, late fall or winter when ice cover permits, because lobster activity is reduced by low water temperatures during these periods.

General Conclusions

Two alternative explanations for incidence of environmental factors on recruitment of lobsters in the Gulf of St. Lawrence have been identified. The first explanation is known as the Sutcliffe hypothesis; it involves positive effects of freshwater runoff, or correlated phenomena such as wind driven upwellings, on primary production and subsequently, through the food chain, on recruitment to the lobster fishery. The second explanation is new and involves negative effects of mortality induced by storms during the cold season at times or locations when/where ice cover does not protect early benthic stages of dormant (hiberating) lobsters, with subsequent effects on fishery recruitment.

In order to accept or reject either of these two different, but not necessarily conflicting explanations for fluctuations of lobster abundance, research projects were briefly described. All experiments/monitoring and analyses require expensive long term (10 to 20 years) set ups, except for the age distribution determination of the early benthic stages and the analysis of storm incidence on abundance of catch 4 to 5 years later. The latter explanation is easier to test than the former. Some data is available for testing both explanations.

GROUP II (Chairperson's Report)

Sutcliffe (1972) noted a significant relationship between increased downstream transport of the St. Lawrence River and increased annual yields of Quebec lobster. Lag time employed was 9 and 10 years. Operating within the paradigm that food resources play a critical role in controlling population densities, he proposed the hyposthesis that increased river flow will increase nutrient concentrations in the mixed layer by entraining nutrient rich bottom waters. The increased nutrients lead to higher plankton production which, in turn, enhance lobster larval survival.

The group had the following concerns regarding the basis of the hypothesis:

1) There is no biological rationale behind the lags chosen; it is generally considered to take about 5 years to attain recruit size from time of post-larval settlement.

2) Apparently the relationship does not hold for other southern Gulf of St. Lawrence lobster stocks, which were in fact assessed but not reported.

3) There has been a decoupling of the relationship between yields and river flow over the past three years.

4) Increased river flow will not induce entrainment of nutrient rich bottom waters.

The first concern above is real only if, as in most lobster fisheries high with exploitation rates, the Magdalen Islands' annual lobster yield has been largely dependent on the first molt class into legal size. If this fishery were based on a number of molt classes for each of the years 1959 to about 1985, when the correlation held (Sultcliffe 1973; Sheldon et al. 1982), then the lag period employed might be reasonable. Our first recommendation, then, is to test the hypothesis that the size structure of the catch of Magdalen Islands fishermen (these fishermen land a significantly large portion of Québec's annual lobster yield) between 1950 and 1984 was heavily dominated by the first molt class into legal size. If this hypothesis is rejected, then this gives some biological legitimacy to Sutcliffe's (1973) time lag.

To continue the exercise, we assumed support was not found for the above hypothesis and that Sutcliffe's (1973) lag time of about 9 years was appropriate. However, another serious flaw in the foundation for Sutcliffe's (1973) hypothesis was noted. Given the relationship between river flow and landings, he chose to work under the paradigm that food limitation plays a large role in governing population abundances. He then suggested a relationship between river flow and primary production through the entrainment of nutrient-rich waters from below the mixed layer. He speculated that enhanced primary production would lead to enhanced larval survival. Our concern here is that enhanced river flow does not cause enhance nutrient concentrations. Thus, we concluded that Sutcliffe's (1972 and 1973) mechanism to explain the positive correlation between increased river flow and enhanced lobster yields was inappropriate. We point out, however, that evidence is available showing that the mixed layer can, on occasion, increase in depth by as much as 15 m. When this occurs, the nutrient levels of the upper layer would be enhanced from the nutrient-rich layer below. Apparently, a mechanism that could bring this about is sea turbulence generated by strong winds. Our second recommendation is that appropriately trained personnel (a meteorologist and biological, physical, and chemical oceanographers) should investigate the relationship between major wind events and nutrient concentrations in the mixed layer. If support is found for the hypothesis that major wind events significantly enhance annual primary production in Magdalen Islands waters, then it should be determined if there is a relationship between these wind events and interannual variance in the Islands' lobster yields.

If the latter relationship is shown, why, then, has there been this 35-year relationship between river flow and lobster yields (Sutcliffe 1973)? We suggest that the same major meteorlogical events that lower the mixed layer may bring high precipitation to the St. Lawrence River watersheds which in turn increase river discharge.

Time series data for primary production in the Magdalen Islands waters are not available; thus we cannot attempt to relate, through empirical analysis, interannual variations in primary production and lagged lobster yields. We, therefore, strongly recommend that an annual oceanographic monitoring program be initiated in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, which would include primary production. More specifically, a study could be initiated to test the hypothesis that lobster larvae in Magdalen Islands waters are not food limited (Hudon and Fradette 1987). This could be done by analyzing RNA/DNA ratios, lipid/protein levels, etc., of lobster larvae.

The group, under the paradigm that large-scale physical events have significant impact on abundance levels, suggested that river flow may have a direct impact on larval retention in Magdalen Islands waters. Support for this concept is Hudon et al.'s (1986) hypothesis that lobster larvae are retained in Magdalen Island water by, and transported southward in, a summer-occurring gyre described by El-Sabh (1976). Were this gyre shown to be important in larval retention, then significant changes in annual river discharge might influence the presence and/or strength of the gyre. Another factor that could impact gyre characteristics is major meteorological events.

The group, however, had some concern that the method employed by El-Sabh (1976) would be insufficient to accurately describe a gyre in water as shallow as that around the Magdalen Islands. We suggest, then, that sufficiently sensitive methodology be employed to discern the presence/absence of the gyre. If the gyre exists, then its temporal and spatial variability should be described along with its residence time in relation to lobster larvae and other important plankters.

The group felt it premature to offer specific hypotheses in this area (in fact, one member of the group felt hypothesis testing was not the method for bringing about major advances/paradigm shifts in science). It was obvious that lobster researchers, up to the recent past, operated under the simple fisheries paradigm that stocks can be managed without sound autecological or synecological data. We recommend that at the very least, Peter Larkin's (pers. comm.) concept of "know your animal well" should be implemented for lobster. Understanding the ecology of each major life history stage and their concommittant natural history is of the utmost importance in understanding those variables that significantly influence recruitment.

LITERATURE CITED

El-Sabh, M.I. 1976. Surface circulation pattern in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 33:124-138.

Hudon, C. and P. Fradette. 1987. Planktonic growth of lobster (Homarus americanus) larvae off Iles de la Madeleine, Gulf of St. Lawrence. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.: in press.

Hudon, C., P. Fradette, and P. Legendre. 1986. La repartition horizontale et verticle des larves de homard (Homarus americanus) autour des Iles de la Madeleine, golfe du Saint-Laurent. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 2164-2176.

Sutcliffe, W.H., Jr. 1972. Some relations of land drainage, nutrients, particulate material, and fish catch in two eastern Canadian bays. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 29:357-362.

_____ 1973. Correcations between seasonal river discharge and local landings of American lobster (Homarus americanus) and Atlantic halibut (Hyppoglossus hyppoglossus) in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 30:856-859.

VII WORK TEAM ACTIVITIES

D. SOCKEYE SALMON - QUESTIONS POSED AND REPORTS BY WORK TEAM CHAIRMEN

The Problem

Sockeye salmon landings from the fisheries in the coastal zone and rivers on the return migrants are highly variable. In other words, "recruitment" of mature adults to the coastal zone and freshwater fisheries after the oceanic phase of the life cycle is unpredictable. An important component of the observed variablity is caused by processes in the deep ocean in the northern Pacific Ocean. There is, however, no leading hypothesis that addresses the variable mortality during this component of the life history. The relevant background information is summarized in the package prepared by Brent Hargreaves (see Appendix III). The request to the working team in this case is to identify the components of a research program that will provide sufficient descriptive information such that reasonable hypotheses can subsequently be formulated. What are the observational programs (oceanographic, ecological, and fisheries) that are required to improve our understanding of high-seas sockeye salmon mortality?

GROUP I (Chairperson's Report)

The work team changed the wording of the problem as follows:

To determine the factors that control, and ultimately to be able to accurately forecast, inter-annual variability in the high-seas distribution, mortality, and growth rates of Canadian salmon in the North Pacific Ocean.

Report from Working Group 1

Discussion in this working group focussed on several specific questions:

1. Is the high seas mortality of sockeye an important problem?
2. What specific questions are most important?
3. What approaches to these questions appear most tractable and are likely to provide the quickest and most cost-effective solutions?

Importance of the Problem

The working group began by reviewing the background documentation that had been provided prior to the meeting. Several members also verbally contributed relevant information from other sources. The consensus was that mortality of sockeye salmon during the high seas (open ocean) phase of their life cycle was indeed an important problem. It was acknowledged that sockeye are an important commercial species and that variations in catch of sockeye have

historically been high and largely unpredictable. The work team agreed that, in most cases, the variability in catch appears to be real and not due simply to inadequate or poor quality data, and that for the few stocks (e.g. Babine Lake, Great Central Lake) for which there is good data on smolt production and escapement, a significant portion of the variability in recruitment arises from mortality in the ocean. The working group also agreed that the fisheries management and industry planning problems resulting from poor pre-season recruitment estimates are significant. Several studies indicate that the highest rate of mortality of sockeye salmon in the ocean occurs during the early sea life period, rather than the high seas phase. However, the working group noted that the period of highest mortality does not necessarily control variability in recruitment. Existing data are not sufficient to determine what portion of the variation in recruitment of sockeye is due to mortality during the early sea life period, versus during other periods.

Most Important Questions

The work team identified two major questions:

1) What could be done to substantially improve forecasting of sockeye recruitment?

2) What controls the variation in recruitment of sockeye?

Treating Recruitment as a "Black Box":

The work team considered several approaches to improving forecasting of sockeye recruitment. The conclusion was that an analytical approach was most likely to yield the most immediate and cost effective benefits. In particular, some members were convinced that construction of new mathematical models, based on existing fisheries and ocean climate data, would provide improvements in the accuracy of pre-season and in-season predictions, and in providing confidence limits for these predictions. All members agreed that such improvements would be valuable to both fishery managers and the fishing industry. However, it was also recognized that all previous models of this type have invariably broken down over periods of about a decade, because they essentially treat ocean recruitment as a "black box", in which the underlying mechanisms and processes remain obscure. Thus, the work team felt the empirical model approach should be initiated first and would probably provide immediate improvements in forecasting. However, this approach should be considered only a short-term solution, without much hope of providing long-term solutions. In addition, the "best" forecasting model(s) probably will not be the same models used to generate other types of estimates, such as optimal escapement levels.

In terms of field work, the work team thought that implementation of additional test fisheries could yield immediate improvements in recruitment forecasting. This could include improved in-season (near-shore) test fisheries or new offshore test fisheries. The latter might be conducted by chartering commercial fishing vessels (e.g. salmon trollers) to fish within the 200 mile limit, or research vessels operating on the high seas. There is no data available to assess how effective an offshore test fishery would be for Canadian stocks, but this type of test fishery has proven valuable for forecasting recruitment of sockeye returning to Bristol Bay, Alaska.

Looking Inside the "Black Box":

The work team concluded that there are several useful approaches that could be taken to determine what controls variation in ocean mortality and recruitment of sockeye. In order of priority these include collation and analyses of existing mortality and recruitment data, new field studies, large-scale manipulative studies and mathematical modelling. The purpose of these activities would be to improve understanding of the processes that operate within the "black box" of ocean mortality, rather than to simply improve short term recruitment forecasts.

The work team concluded that the highest priority for new research should be given to collating and analyzing existing data on ocean mortality and recruitment of salmon. The most important question would be to define the true variability in recruitment, and determine if there are coherent patterns in recruitment within and between areas that have not been previously identified. In particular, the work team noted that most studies to date have focussed on relatively few stocks or locations, and little work has been done to collate and analyze relevant recruitment data from all Pacific Rim countries that produce salmon.

The work team concluded that additional multi-disciplinary field research is required. However, the quickest and most effective approach to understanding recruitment variability appears to be to focus efforts on processes operating in coastal areas rather than on the high seas. Existing data suggest that most of the ocean mortality of sockeye occurs during early sea life, before juvenile salmon reach the high seas. Most of the variability in recruitment may also arise during this period, although this is less certain. The work team concluded that efforts should, therefore, focus on the early sea life period. The recently initiated Marine Survival of Salmon (M.A.S.S.) and LaParouse Bank programs are good examples of the type of research required, and should provide valuable information concerning the processes which control mortality during early sea life. Similar research projects should also be conducted in other locations, to identify regional differences. This type of coastal research should then be extended seaward, to include the entire early sea life period. This work should provide the foundation, and assist in defining the most important questions, for subsequent high seas research activities.

The work team concluded that large scale manipulative experiments could provide critical new data. The ability to manipulate the abundance, fresh water to ocean migration timing, and characteristics (e.g. size) of juvenile sockeye and other salmon species through enhancement techniques provides an excellent opportunity to obtain critical information about the processes that control ocean survival and recruitment. To date, this potentially enormous source of information has been exploited only to a small degree, and much more large scale experimentation should be done.

The development of new mathematical models is also desirable. Fisheries recruitment models which incorporate more extensive physical and biological ocean data are required, particularly ones that address the question of food chain interactions and limitations. Models which address the problem of

the effects of variations in ocean conditions on salmon mortality, migration routes, and migration timing are also required. Improved stock mixture (composition) models would assist in assessing year to year variability in mortality and distribution of salmon.

The consensus of the working group was that realistically there was little additional research on the high seas that could be profitably undertaken at this time. The most important high seas recruitment questions are not clearly defined yet. There are substantial data on ocean distribution and migrations of sockeye, growth rates, food chain relationships, effects of oceanographic conditions, etc., currently available. However, much of this data was collected in small studies conducted over many years and it is not clear how relevant the composite picture is to understanding the processes that control recruitment variability. A number of improvements in technology and methods are also required for high seas work, in areas such as fisheries stock identification, fish tracking and measurement of near-surface water currents and large scale ocean productivity.

Under current fiscal restraints, it is too costly to conduct a national research program of the magnitude required to make substantial progress on the high seas recruitment question. However, a viable alternative might be to make a concerted effort to obtain relevant data through Canadian involvement in ongoing and future international high seas activities. For example, the upcoming World Ocean Circulation Experiment (WOCE) will provide an unprecedented opportunity to obtain high quality oceanographic data in the North Pacific. A coordinated international fisheries effort conducted during the same period could provide very useful data. The formation of a new international fisheries research organization among Pacific Rim countries (e.g. the proposed PICES organization) would greatly facilitiate this type of cooperative effort. Efforts should be made to obtain more catch and environmental data from foreign vessels fishing on the high seas, and to place more Canadian observers aboard foreign fishing and research vessels. Arrangements might also be made to obtain additional data from foreign port sampling programs. The work team also thought that some new salmon fisheries could be allowed in high seas areas currently closed to foreign fishing (e.g. INPFC convention areas). These would be carefully regulated fisheries, designed to obtain additional scientific data with minimal expense.

GROUP II (Chairperson's Report)

Introduction

Because this problem is directed at larger and older stages of fish, it is a good example of where the success of recruitment research should be highest. Marine survival is also relevant to the costly (0.3 billion dollar) enhancement program, where it would be best that releases coincide with favourable sea conditions.

The research program was divided into two parts, including a retrospective analysis of existing data, and future studies. The research was further sub-divided into the detection and causes of high seas mortality.

Retrospective (first year of program)

i) Detection of variation in sea survival:

It is not possible to separate coastal and high seas mortality because stock abundance cannot be measured between the smolt stage and returning adults.

If high seas mortality is influenced by large scale oceanographic events or conditions then it should be coincident among groups of stocks. We recommend a retrospective look at:

1) Historical data bases of smolt to adult returns to examine covariance in returns per smolt among stocks of sockeye.

2) Historical data bases of adult to adult returns, making assumptions of freshwater age (and expected loss in precision), to examine covariance of survival at sea.

3) Covariation in marine survival rates among all salmon species. We assume that there are enough similarities in the marine phase to make it reasonable to expect they would respond to the same environmental events. We would extend this analysis to Asian species as well.

   If covariance is apparent, an annual index of survival can be developed for groups of stocks which can then be compared to large scale physical oceanographic features.

ii) Detection of variation in physical oceanographic features:

Because salmon migrate in surface waters, five features were identified for analysis:

1) Northern hemisphere pressure at sea level.

2) Sea surface temperatures from ships of opportunity, IGOS, and long term stations to develop SST anomaly patterns. Good resolution in coastal areas should be emphasized.

3) Sea level.

4) Freshwater discharge.

5) Sea surface salinity at coastal stations/and ships of opportunity to develop anomaly patterns.

iii) Causes:

Depending on results of above we would extend the analysis to cover four general categories which could influence the mortality of salmon at sea: food, predation, straying and fishery.

Food:

The shortage of food should be manifested either by a change in abundance of prey or a change in salmon growth rate.

Prey or zooplankton abundance has been measured at Station Papa, located in the center of the salmon high seas feeding grounds for 20 years, 1957-77. This time series would be correlated with the time series on physical oceanographic features.

Salmon growth during the first year at sea can be estimated from the back-calculation of scales for stocks where the variation in smolt size is known. Changes in mean growth or its variance may be correlated with physical oceanographic features, in particular the large El Nino events of 1957-58, 1972-73 and 1982-83.

Changes in the variance might indicate size-specific mortality at sea.

It would also be useful to examine variation in the growth of other pelagic species found in the same area as salmon, for example pollock.

Predation:

We were unable to propose a way of testing the hypothesis that oceanographic events such as El Ninos may have restricted the range of salmon and increased its exposure to natural predators.

It would be useful to examine concurrent fluctuations in the abundance of potential predators.

Straying:

Investigate the possibility of compensatory return of older aged salmon during anomalous years. The hypothesis would be that younger salmon get lost at sea during adverse environmental conditions and require an additional year before returning.

Fishery:

The accuracy of historical catches in high seas fisheries must be investigated.

Future Studies (second and subsequent years of program)

i) Detection of variation in marine survival:

1) Establish several rivers where smolts and returning adults can be counted and tagged to measure interception in mixed fisheries and to provide a future long term index of sea survival.

2) Investigate the possibilty of establishing a sampling program to separate coastal vs high seas mortality, perhaps located at the northern tip of Vancouver Island.

ii) Detection of variation in physical oceanographic features:

Improve and extend the climatological data bases derived from ships of opportunity.

iii) Causes:

Food:

Re-establish several long term oceanographic sampling stations for zooplankton.

Predation:

Initiate a study to identify important predators and prey of salmon.

Straying:

Establish an experimental fishery stratified by temperature in Alaskan gyre to monitor annual changes in the distribution of salmon in relation to oceanographic features. Sample the high seas fisheries for good catch rate data and also sea surface temperature at location of catches.

Fishery:

Good catch records and stock identification of the high seas fisheries are essential to understanding the factors which determine variation in sea survival.

Caveats

1) It would not be cost effective to initiate a large scale sampling program to estimate the abundance of salmon at sea; emphasis should be placed on monitoring smolts and returning adults.

2) Generally, intensive surveys which collect large amounts of environmental data for short time periods are not effective. It would be better to investigate other means of remote sensing sea surface properties, for example satellite imagery and by expanding the ships of opportunity program.

VII WORK TEAM ACTIVITIES

E. NORTHERN COD - QUESTIONS POSED AND REPORTS BY WORK TEAM CHAIRMEN

The Problem

Recruitment to the northern cod population is variable (as is the case for most marine fish populatons with complex life histories). Sutcliffe et al. (1983) found a statistical relationship between Hudson Bay runoff (which was indirectly estimated) and recruitment to this cod population (with a realistic lag period) (see atttached figure from Drinkwater 1987). The conclusions of this paper have been criticized by other workers (for example, Koslow et al. 1987), and other hypotheses have been proposed. Nevertheless, the Sutcliffe et al. "food-chain" interpretation of the statistical relationship might be considered a leading hypothesis. Under this hypothesis, increased runoff leads to increased stratification in the Labrador Current and thus decreased vertical transport of nutrients. The relatively decreased nutrient supply to surface waters is hypothesized to lead to reduced cod larval and juvenile survival due to food-chain interactions. In sum, high runoff generates lower year-class strengths as a result of food-chain energetics within the Labrador Current system. Alternative hypotheses stress the role of large-scale physical oceanographic processes on the interannual variability in the circulation and mixing of the Labrador Current but do not necessarily specify the biological mechanisms. The relevant background information is summarized in Appendix IV (Background information on the northern cod question by J. Rice).

The work team is requested to identify the components of a research program (oceanographic, ecological, and fisheries) that would increase our understanding of northern cod recruitment variability, taking into consideration the Sutcliffe et al. hypothesis (or an alternate if it is considered preferable).

Sutcliffe et al. (1983) investigated the effects of the Hudson Bay runoff on the southern Labrador Shelf, northern Newfoundland and the northern Grand Bank cod stocks. Having insufficient discharge data from the Hudson Bay rivers but knowing its effect on the salinity of the waters off Labrador and Newfoundland, cod abundance was correlated with available long-term salinity records. Correlations between VPA estimates of abundance of age 4 cod and corresponding summer salinities for each of the first 3 year of the life of the cod were high and accounted for 80% of the variation in the cod abundance with high salinity water (i.e. during years of low runoff). The following hypothesis was suggested. Temperature and salinity characteristics of the waters on the Labrador Shelf and off Newfoundland are formed near the eastern entrance of Hudson Strait through intense vertical mixing. This mixing brings nutrient-rich (high salinity) deep water into the surface layer which subsequently is carried by the mean circulation onto the northern Labrador Shelf.

Once on the shelf, the nutrients promote primary production. The Labrador Current carries the water, together with the phytoplankton, southward along the Labrador Shelf. Zooplankton feed upon the phytoplankton, small fish

feed upon the zooplankton and eventually the large fish (e.g. cod) feed upon the small fish. The time required for this food chain to develop, together with the southward advection by the Labrador Current, can explain the low fish concentrations on the northern Labrador Shelf and high concentrations on the southern shelf. In years when the Labrador Shelf salinity is high, there are more nutrients available in the surface layers and biological production, including cod, increases. During times of high river discharge into Hudson Bay, stratification increases, thereby suppressing the vertical mixing in the Hudson Strait region. This leads to fewer nutrients, as well as lower salinity, in the near-surface waters and a subsequent decrease in the cod production along the Labrador Shelf.

GROUP 1 (Chairperson's Report)

The work team focused on two periods in the pre-recruit life history of northern cod; from spawning through the first summer of life and during their juvenile period. For the first 6 months of life, research was suggested on two aspects of the influences on year-class success. These aspects work sequentially on the eggs and larvae.

The first aspect is physical transport of eggs and early larvae from the spawning sites to their ultimate nursery areas (likely the inshore bays). There is work underway at the Bedford Institute of Oceanography, Dartmouth, Nova Scotia, and the work team attached importance to continued and accelerated research into the forcing and variability of circulation on the Labrador and eastern Newfoundland shelves. This should include determining the statistical relation among the following existing time series: along-shelf current, salinity, water temperature, run-off (or relevant precipitation) where available, ice extent and atmospheric variables. Interannual and seasonal variability, as well as variability in the wind-forced band, should be examined. The research should also involve identifying the physical mechanism(s) contributing to any statistically significant relation, and the development of a suite of models (ranging from conceptual to predictive) for both the along-shelf and cross-shelf mean and variable flows. There are a number of existing research programs in the Physical and Chemical Sciences Branch of Scotia-Fundy Region that are relevant to these questions.

To use the physical oceanography in study of recruitment variation, one must know where the eggs are in the water column, especially at and just after spawning. The work team felt field work to quantify vertical egg dispersal in the water column after spawning was appropriate in the immediate future. Starting immediately, a study (using existing data and specimens or collecting samples if they do not already exist) of how fecundity, egg size and bouyancy varies with female size and environmental conditions was also thought appropriate.

The second aspect of the study of influences in the first six months is the trophic component. The work team agreed to start by looking at the relative importance of (a) coastal upwelling; (b) cross-shelf transport; and (c) along-shelf transport of water from Hudson Bay to inshore Newfoundland, to the transport of nutrients and potential food into the presumed inshore bay

nursery areas. This work would involve analyzing existing data (particularly recent oceanographic cruises off Labrador) and undertaking a series of cruises running cross-shelf transects to quantify nutrient and plankton concentrations across the cruise track. Candidate sites for cruises would be from Cape Chidley, Cape Harrison and two from Newfoundland areas. Little extra work would be required to sample for large zooplankton at the same time, to characterize the spectrum of potential predators on eggs and larvae. In addition, standard indices of coastal upwelling should be worked up from as long a series of wind-stress data as possible. Finally, as a specific test, the assumption in the Sutcliffe et al. hypothesis that increased run-off leads to reduced nutrient supply should be examined for the seasonal cycle of run-off.

Although the work team talked mostly about events in the first six months of cod life history, the team agreed there was no evidence indicating that year-class strength was set at the larval period. The work team wanted to establish what percent of the variance in the Sutcliffe et al. regression was attributable to salinity in the first, second and third years of life. If most of the variance was explained by salinity at one specific age, juvenile research should focus on that age. If no age stood out as having a particularly strong relationship, the team agreed age 1 was a reasonable place to initiate juvenile work.

The team agreed that a 5-year series of indices of abundance at the focal age should be developed, to relate to year-class strength (as reflected in recruitment to the fishery at age 4). However, too little is known of the basic biology of juvenile cod of any age to develop a meaningful index now. Rather, preliminary survey work should be undertaken to delineate areas of concentration of selected ages of cod. From these results, a survey design could be developed, probably in 2-5 years. During the preliminary sampling, specimens should be kept for study of food habits, and the survey work should try to identify major predators on the selected age group. Again, the preliminary data on food habits and potential predators might provide useful guidance in design of later field programs.

GROUP II (Chairperson's Report)

Objective

Design a research program to investigate the sources of interannual variability in recruitment of the northern cod population of the continental shelf off Labrador.

Overview of Information Needed

A consensus was quickly reached that knowledge of stock structure would have to be developed in order to understand recruitment patterns. If more than one stock exists, each with its own recruitment pattern, trying to interpret variability in recruitment as though there were only one stock will lead to confusion. It is important to know whether the adults mix throughout the range of the study area at some time of the year; whether large-scale mixing takes place during the larval or juvenile stages; whether inshore junveniles that have been observed are from offshore spawning.

The group decided to consider the problem by considering five separate stages and processes associated with those stages that would likely contribute to inter-annual variability in recruitment to the stock. The group wanted to emphasize that successful investigation would likely involve the investigation of processes that influence more than one life history stage; that the problem would not be resolved by concentrating on the egg and larval stages alone. The five stages were:

1) The spawning event (mid-February to end of May).

2) Egg and larval stages (mid-February to mid-June).

3) Early juveniles: 50-70 mm (July to end of August).

4) Adult gonad recovery.

5) Adult maturation and vitellogenesis, including first spawning.

Hypotheses Regarding Sources of Variation

Spawning Event:

Present Information:

Spawning occurs on the outer edges of the banks, first in the north, and last in the southern portion of the population area. The total spawning period is more restricted in duration than for other cod stocks to the south. A single fish possibly releases eggs in batches over a period of weeks.

Hypotheses:

1) Delay in spawning influences year-class strength.

2) Local spawning is triggered by an event such as the attainment of a critical temperature.

Eggs and Larvae:

Productivity Hypotheses:

1) More rain and run-off causes less mixing over the Labrador Shelf, and consequently less primary productivity, and lower larval survival (the Sutcliffe hypothesis).

2) Coastal upwelling injects nutrients into the upper layers, and cross-shelf advection allows productive waters to mix with larvae.

3) Warm, moist periods alternate with cool, dry periods. The cool, dry periods are associated with the intrusion of the more saline west Greenland water mass, and higher productivity (Kostlow hypothesis).

Advective Loss Hypothesis:

1) In some years, cross-shelf flow away from the coast increases, trapping larvae offshore where they are lost to the population.

2) In some years, eddies are strong enough to retain the larvae at latitude and also move them towards shore, contributing to stronger year-classes.

Juveniles:

Present Information:

Juveniles have been captured inshore that may or may not be from offshore spawning. Metamorphosis from larval stage to juvenile occurs at 25 mm at about 2 months of age.

Hypotheses:

1) Juvenile mortality may be due to cannibalism.

2) Juvenile mortality may be due to predation by other species.

3) Juvenile mortality may be due to advective trapping offshore.

4) Juvenile mortality may be due to occasional intrusions of particularly cold water that renders the juveniles inactive and susceptible to mortality sources 1-3 above.

Gonad recovery and maturation - First spawning:

1) Readiness for spawning may be delayed or speeded up by the accumulation of degree-days, the rate of development being controlled by temperature.

2) Under favourable temperature conditions, first spawning for young fish just entering maturity is advanced by as much as a year. The portion of the year-class that is advanced in this way may vary from year to year.

3) The rate of gonad recovery, and the portion of the spawning stock biomass ready to spawn at a given time, may be dependent on availability of forage species for the adult cod.

<u>Approaches to Investigation</u>:

Physical Oceanography:

Phenomena to look for:

1) A two-layer system that would deter mixing of nutrients.

2) Upwelling that would add nutrients to the euphotic zone.

3) Advection from inshore to offshore that could carry off early juveniles.

4) The formation of eddies or gyres that would retain larvae or juveniles at latitude.

5) Evidence for the intrusion of the west Greenland water mass in some years.

Methods of investigation:

1) Track pan-ice for surface flow.

2) Track icebergs for integrated flow at depth.

3) Make CTD sections across the shelf and slope.

4) Establish a long-term mooring to monitor advection, temperature and salinity at depth. Initially install 5 or 6 moorings to determine the best position for long-term monitoring.

5) Analyze water level data of the Hydrographic Service for advection patterns.

6) Analyze existing current meter records from oil impact studies.

7) Establish anemometer stations for estimation of wind-water effects.

Eggs and Larvae:

1) Exploratory surveys should be carried out in relation to initial physical oceanographic findings. Larvae should be searched for in relation to likely retention areas, fronts, and other areas of potentially high productivity.

2) Long-term surveys should be designed around initial findings in a manner such that the hypotheses developed above can be substantiated or discarded. After 5 years, the possiblity of redesign should be considered based on findings from statistical analysis.

Juveniles:

1) Methods must be developed to determine whether inshore juveniles come from offshore spawning, e.g. protein analysis, parasite studies, meristic studies.

2) Exploratory surveys should be conducted in relation to successful larval surveys to determine whether offshore juveniles can be found.

3) When the juveniles are found, systematic abundance surveys should be carried out to examine the mortality hypotheses developed above.

Spawning Cod:

1) Sampling of adult fish should be carried out to determine the sequence of spawning timing from north to south, and the relationship between timing and subsequent year-class strength. Sampling could be carried out by combining effort on research vessels, commercial vessels, and sampling in port.

2) Histological examination of spawning cod ovaries should be made to determine the significance of the batch spawning that has been reported. This work could be done simultaneously with the spawning timing work indicated above.

3) Stock identification studies should be carried out to determine the degree of mixing through the study area.

VIII COMMENTS BY INVITED EXPERTS

The invited experts were each asked to address a specific question of generic interest in order to focus the plenary discussion on selected issues. They were not, however, restricted to the question posed, and were encouraged to make any comments that they felt appropriate.

COMMENTS BY PAUL H. LEBLOND

During much of the first day of the workshop we heard about programs underway in the various regions of the Department which address the question of the importance of the environment on the survival of larvae and juvenile fish and shellfish. These presentations were made in an atmosphere of explicit recognition of the revelance of oceanic conditions on fisheries recruitment. Interesting examples of collaboration between physical and biological oceanographers were presented, particularly with respect to survival and diffusion of fish larvae on major east-coast banks.

The wheel seems to have come full circle! When I began my studies in oceanography as a summer student at the Pacific Oceanographic Group in 1961, it was assumed by all concerned that the research would help in understanding the variability of fish populations and hence in managing the fisheries. To put it simply: the fish live in the ocean and must surely be influenced by its variability. How could that transparent truth have gone so much out of fashion that we are struggling to rediscover it today?

Two reasons come to mind for the temporary divergence of oceanography and fisheries. First of all belief in the influence of physical parameters was founded more on faith than on evidence. Physical oceanographers were simply not very successful at explaining the variability of fish stocks in terms of that of the environment. Fisheries biologists soon became disillusioned with physical explanations; physical oceanographers turned to more rewarding problems. The establishment in Canada of new major oceanographic centres in Dartmouth and Sidney separate from the existing fisheries laboratories in St Andrews and Nanaimo encouraged the divergence. Secondly and simultaneously, concern with over-exploitation of the fish stocks focused on human predation as the main cause of stock variability. Population dynamics models based on parametric representations of recruitment in terms of catch as a fraction of existing stock became the main tool for managing the fishery.

Are we now entering another similar cycle? The reviews of current stock prediction techniques presented at the end of the first day, coming as they did after a day of discussions on the role of the environment, left a disappointing impression. Predicting next year's stocks on the basis of this year's and some parameterization based on historical experience is equivalent to predicting next week's weather in term of today's with the help of some empirical rule: it assumes that whatever happens in the meantime, to fish populations or to the state of the atmosphere, is of minor consequence. Meteorologists have long recognized the need for dynamic modelling of the atmosphere. Perhaps the time is ripe for fisheries science to follow the same route.

If the cycle is not to repeat itself, with false hopes followed by disillusion and severance, some precautions are in order. Even though physical oceanography has made great progress in the past 20 years, one must not expect miracles. It is not possible today to predict the state of the ocean a year in advance and whatever is done now to improve the understanding of the role of the environment on recruitment will not yield immediate results. Combined physical and biological research projects will not have direct impact on management processes for some time. It would thus be advisable to pursue a two-track course: continuing to use and improve population dynamical methods while searching, by observation and analysis, for causes which will allow the inclusion of oceanic effects in recruitment estimates. Above all, one must remember that the ocean/atmosphere system is far from simple; to expect that its influence on a fish stock might be represented by the value of a suitably chosen parameter is a naive prospect.

Let's be a little more specific: I wish to bring up three points where I think improvement is possible.

First of all, the dispersion of eggs and larvae is best understood in terms of a Lagrangrian description of ocean currents: following specific water parcels. Standard descriptions of ocean currents are usually made from an Eulerian point of view: with respect to a fixed coordinate system. Although it is possible in principle to pass from one representation to the other if data points are sufficiently dense in space and time, the conditions for doing this reliably are seldom satisfied. It is encouraging to see that recent work on Flemish Cap or Brown's Bank makes use of Lagrangian measurements. There is a strong need for measuring ocean properties from a Lagrangian point of view, as a drifting larva would see it. Many more measurments of this kind are needed; cheaper and more reliable measuring and tracking systems are required so as to provide sufficient coverage to resolve the features of regions and periods of interest. A Lagrangian approach to modelling, or at least to the presentation of results, is also needed to foster understanding of ocean variability from a point of view most closely adapted to the study of fish recruitment.

If physicists and biologists are going to collaborate in developing and testing of fish survival models, they must have compatible data bases to exchange and compare. To be of some use for management purposes, data must be available soon after collection. Some common system of coding, transmitting and storing physical and biological data is necessary so that they may be available quickly for comparison with each other and with the results of models. Direct electronic entry and tape storage should be the norm for all data.

Finally, one cannot but be impressed with the range and quality of scientific expertise available within the Department of Fisheries and Oceans. The creation of multidisciplinary task forces oriented towards the solution of specific problems, with clear missions and firm reporting deadlines might lead to more rapid progress.

COMMENTS BY KEITH BRANDER

"How does one identify the correct time-space scales for recruitment studies? From the overview given yesterday, do you perceive that the overall program has identified the correct time-space scales?"

The overviews presented a variety of studies with very different time and space scales ranging from long term, large scale correlation analyses to the characterization, in terms of time scales (residence time, vertical diffusion, recirculation time), of water movements on individual banks of the Scotian Shelf. I do not think it is possible to distinguish between "correct" and "incorrect" scales for recruitment studies, since the processes which gnerate survival of young fish are governed by events at many scales. The problem is to use appropriate scales for each part of the process and to integrate all the different scales. For example, current fieldwork into the role of advection in survival of North Sea herring larvae is covering the whole North Sea for the entire over-wintering period (October to February), but at the same time the diel vertical distribution of larvae on scales of a few meters is being studied, because Ekman Transport is involved.

Empirical associations may help to identify appropriate scales, by indicating the nature and timing of physical forcing as it affects recruitment, by pointing to the times and places where governing processes may occur, and by providing an estimate of the proportion of recruitment variability which is generated by physical factors or by local factors rather than factors at larger scales. The credibility of empirical associations is limited until the processes responsible for apparent relationships have been identified and tested.

COMMENTS BY MICHAEL M. MULLIN

It has long been recognized that recruitment of marine species is strongly influenced by physical oceanograhy (the ocean's climate), especially on scales of interannual variability; correlations on this scale can provide both predictive capability for managers and insight into (though not proof of) causality. On the other hand, the survival of individual larvae and juveniles is the product of biological interactions and physical parameters on quite small scales, and recruitment is, after all, a probabilistic summation of these individual successes or failures. Causation, especially that due to interactions between species, can be established unambiguously on these scales (though often only for extreme laboratory situations).

Physical oceanographers have long had instruments (e.g. tide gauges, current meters) which make measurements on very small scales but can do so for a long time, thus permitting study of variability on many scales through a variance spectrum. We lack similar capacity in marine ecology - we generally choose (or are assigned) a scale of study based on intuition, economic constraints, or personal "style"; therefore, we generally are unable to determine a variance spectrum for recruitment or other ecological processes. We need to be able to study biological processes on the same range of scales as is now possible in physical oceanography if we are really going to match recruitment to physical events in a causal sense.

Consider a hypothetical "weak year" for recruitment of a population, where there is some spatial and temporal variability within that year, so that there are good and bad mesoscale subareas. How does a "strong year" differ? Do the good subareas show even stronger recruitment (increasing the variance as

well as the mean), or do the worse subareas somehow improve to equal the good ones (decreasing the variance while increasing the mean)? Or do the good and bad areas improve equally, so that the mean recruitment is greater but the spatial/temporal variance is unchanged? Or does the range over which recruitment occurs at all simply expand, spreading the same overall mean over a wider area and thus yielding more recruits?

It is intellectually stimulating, and worth holding as an ideal, to consider what we might understand about recruitment if we had information on a sufficient range of scales to answer such questions, together with a panoply of environmental and ecological information on similar scales. Please don't ask me how it will be paid for, however.

COMMENTS BY ROBERT C. FRANCIS

Question: Given that within a Canadian context, only the Department could allocate sufficient resources (and provide sufficient infrastructure) for decadal time scale monitoring, should a DFO national recruitment program include a major monitoring component? What proportion of the overall program should involve monitoring (i.e. CalCOFI-type effort)?

My answer to the first question is yes, there should be a monitoring component to any national recruitment program. Major shifts in the abundance and structure of marine fish communities occur on an inter-decadal basis and are, presently, unpredictable. Therefore, experiments cannot be constructed which attempt to reveal mechanisms affecting these shifts. At present, a monitoring program is the only way to hope to uncover causal relationships. However, I would like to make several points about such a monitoring program.

(1) It is of utmost importance to develop methods of monitoring fisheries recruitment. Perhaps the best way to do this is through 0-group surveys.

(2) The information generated in a monitoring program should be useful to fisheries managers.

(3) You don't need a lot of monitoring stations, but those that are established should be well placed. Once you establish a station, take a broad suite of physical and biological measurements.

(4) Monitoring should be used to ordinate recruitment variability by time, space and species.

In closing, I would like to summarize the main points raised in a recent NOAA Recruitment Plan that I was involved in:

(a) Focus equally on short- (intra-annual) and long- (interdecadal) term time scales.

(b) Seek to determine those factors that promote survival rather than an accounting for various sources of mortality.

(c) Focus on comparing recruitment processes in a limited number of target marine environments rather than attempting comprehensive examinations of single marine ecosystems (i.e. the emphasis is on developing general principles).

COMMENTS BY WILLIAM C. LEGGETT

I wish to begin my comments by congratulating the organizers of this workshop, and thanking them for their kind invitation to me to attend. The insights gained from this overview of the extraordinary range of the recruitment related activities ongoing at this time, and the diversity of approaches being used, is sure to be of value to me in my ongoing work, and in my planning for future studies. Among the most valuable of these insights is the knowledge gained about the interests and research activities of individuals within the DFO system. Before coming to this workshop, I considered myself relatively well informed concerning the players and the projects ongoing in Canada in this field. It is clear that I was mistaken. This workshop has largely corrected that situation, not only for me, but for the other participants. Based on my own experience, and the comments of others, I believe the workshop can be declared an unequivocal success. The increased awareness of the work of others who are researching similar problems, or who have similar objectives, but who have employed different (and in many cases perhaps better) approaches will be of value to all participants.

This workshp has laid the foundation for an expansion of collaboration and cooperation, and for a very real increase in the "yield" from ongoing research. The interest in such cooperation, and in continuing the dialogue, is very evident. It should be encouraged in the weeks and months that follow this experience. To do so requires only that such initiatives be supported by administration (i.e. that obstacles to genuine interregional cooperation in research be aggressively removed). This does not imply that local priorities/initiatives be abandoned. It requires only that individuals and regions involved in this work jointly seek to understand the fundamental questions/hypotheses that underlie, and thereby link, work ongoing in different areas (and frequently on different species) and that they cooperate in efforts to identify and evaluate these common questions using compatible approaches and timing. The maintenance of close personal contact throughout the pursuit of the common elements of the study should also be supported. The cost of such cooperation would be minimal in real terms, and insignificant in relation to the return it would yield.

I turn now to the more specific questions addressed to me: Is the prediction of recruitment a realizable goal, and how should we approach it? My answers are yes (generally); and creatively.

I say yes (generally) because I believe prediction of major trends in recruitment to be achievable for most species. This alone would be an important advance for management. I am less convinced that high resolution prediction of the numbers or biomass of individual year classes recruiting to the fishery will be achieved for more than a handful of species in the foreseeable future. This does not mean, however, that the latter should be abandoned as a goal. It means

simply that we should not become frustrated in the quest, and that we should acknowledge and exploit the importance of the ability to predict trends with some confidence (which develops, in most cases, as a by-product of striving for the larger goal).

I answer creatively, because I am convinced that there is no one explanation for, or solution to, the recruitment problem. New approaches, and a new willingness to consider alternative hypotheses will therefore be required. There are, undoubtedly, common themes. These provide a framework for a coordinated attack. It is clear, however, that many factors, both biotic and abiotic, operate to regulate the success of a year class. The hierarchy of importance in this framework is likely to vary thorugh time and space, and between species. Identifying the important variables and understanding how they interact in response to key forcing functions is the challenge.

The history of recruitment research is rich in examples of searches for unique solutions to the problem. The eloquence of Hjort's "critical period", and the rich body of research it spawned is a classic example. Unfortunately it has not provided the "key". The empirical approach of the 1930's and 1940's provides another example. Many encouraging relationships were developed. Unfortunately, one by one they failed, probably because lack of understanding of the factors producing them prevented appropriate fine tuning to changes in the timing or magnitude of the driving functions. By the early 1950's empiricism was in ill repute. The legacy remains. Ricker's classic works fueled the next romance. The 1950's, 1960's and early 1970's were dominated by attempts to develop stock recruitment functions as a means of understanding recruitment, and as an aid to management. While this approach too failed to provide the answer, it did provide the basis for a broader attack. The rich data base developed during the search for stock recruitment relationships made possible the demonstration that year class success is fixed early in life in a wide variety of species, and fueled the explosion of early life history research that has dominated the 1970's and 1980's. This same data base provided the basis for a return to empirical approaches to the problem, this time in the form of explorations of the role of biotic and abiotic factors as regulators of residuals about the density-dependent functions identified.

Unfortunately, this most recent work has again been characterized by rather single minded adherence to specific dogma. The belief that food was the "key variable", and that inter-annual variability in early life history mortality rates would reflect its impact and reveal the future of the cohort shaped much of the research of the 1980's. Early demonstration that abiotic variables (temperature, salinity, currents, etc.) explained a significant fraction of the residual variability in recruitment models focused attention on the role of these factors as regulators of the interaction between larvae and their food. Failure to clearly demonstrate the hoped for generality has helped to foster the rise of interest in predation as a primary cause of recruitment variability. Skepticism about the utility of the empirical models developed, even when these were supported by reliable information on the mechanisms that produced them, has unfortunately limited their use as aids to management.

We have also discovered, relatively recently, that variability in the duration of the period over which the highest mortality rates operate can

influence year class formation as strongly as major differences in the mortality rate itself. Hence, factors regulating the rate of development, and thus time to metamorphosis, may be more important regulators of recruitment than factors that induce mortality directly!

So - how do we proceed?

First, optimistically. Why? Because the research of the past decade, while it has not provided the solutions we sought has provided a solid foundation upon which to buidl. We now view the early life stages of fishes very differently than we did in the past. It is clear that larvae, for example, are not the passive creatures they were once seen to be. Larvae interact with their environment much as do adults. They regulate their exposure to potential variability in the environment via behaviour, and in so doing are capable of filtering much of the variance they were previously assumed to have experienced. This realization will alter the approach we take to studying the interaction between larvae and their environment. In my laboratory, for example, we have begun to study the characteristics of survivors (those which form the backbone of the year class), rather than concentrating exclusively on the causes and magnitude of mortality as we once did. We hope, by so doing to identify developmental characteristics (size at hatch, early growth rate, size and/or age at metamorphosis, etc.) that influence survival. By studying the evolution of the distributions of these variables we hope to identify those combinations of traits that characterize survivors.

Optimistically, also because we as fisheries scientists are blessed with a historical data base unequalled in any other area of ecology. This we can use to explore possibilities, to evaluate competing hypotheses, and as a framework for testing the predictive potential of new models we may develop. We have made far too little use of this resource in the past, preferring rather to question its accuracy and rush out to gather more data. Analysis of this historical data may not provide the solution, but it can be of great benefit in identifying the proper questions.

Finally, optimistically because the rapid development of new technologies and methodologies for in-situ studies of larval ecology that has occurred in recent years has greatly increased the precision with which these studies can be conducted, and the confidence we can place on the relevance of the findings of the "real world".

Second, with an open mind. Why? Because slavery to old ideas and approaches is unlikely to yield the results we require. It is becoming abundantly clear, for example, that studies rooted exclusively in biology and biological processes are unlikely to be satisfactory in most cases. Properly integrated physical and biological studies in which both elements serve a common goal will be required for progress in many areas. We should be alert to the potential for empirical studies. Those who doubt the power of this approach would be wise to reflect on the progress achieved by limnologists who have exploited this approach to understand and predict production processes in freshwater systems (using a data base much less rich and no more precise than that available to fishery ecologists). The marriage of empirical and in-situ experimental studies shows promise of providing a means by which empirical

models can be tuned to accont for interannual variability of important driving functions thereby precluding, or at least minimizing, the probability of their failure.

Finally, with a long range perspective. Why? Because the very nature of the problem virtually guarantees that no "quick fixes" will be found. If recruitment forecasting is important, and I firmly believe that it is (in fact it is a central component of one of the fundamental problems in ecology), those responsible for the allocation of resources must realize that individuals and teams engaged in this work will require what some might consider the luxury of sustained effort if they are to be successful.

IX GENERALIZATIONS STATED BY STEERING GROUP

The general discussion touched on many aspects of recruitment research. This section summarizes some of the major generalizations. It is stressed that these generalizations represent the consensus of the Steering Group rather than the workshop participants as a whole.

1. The characteristics of recruitment problems vary in important ways among species and areas. Thus, there is not considered to be a generally preferred approach to research on recruitment questions.

2. The rate of increase in understanding of the mechanisms controlling recruitment variability has not, in recent decades, been characterized by major breakthroughs that increase our understanding of recruitment variability of different species and geographic areas. It is probable that future increases in understanding will be incremental rather than dramatic.

3. Several multi-disciplinary recruitment projects have been initiated recently in DFO on both the Atlantic and Pacific. These projects are examples of well coordinated research teams of both physical oceanographers, biological oceanographers and fisheries biologists.

4. It is apparent from the papers that were presented at the workshop, and the resulting discussions, that there has been a shift in emphasis, in the last few years, from the critical period concept (where recruitment is believed to be determined in the very early life history stages) to the view that recruitment is also affected by significant events and processes in the adult and juvenile life history stages. The current approach to solving the recruitment problem, therefore, has become more balanced since it also places some emphasis on other life history stages.

5. The paucity of knowledge of the biology of many species means that critical gaps are encountered when attempts are made to study the influence on recruitment of events affecting juvenile fish.

6. Advances in recruitment research depend upon repeated measurements of important biological and oceanographic features. This information is necessary on inter-annual and inter-decadal time scales. Although there are often time series data on fish stock abundance, there is a lack of long time series data for physical and biological oceanographic features such as currents, temperature, salinity and zooplankton abundance.

7. In general, there are existing biological and physical data sets with which to begin examining a number of recruitment hypotheses and this is often the place for studies to begin. However, these data sets are sometimes difficult for researchers to access and in specific cases must be supplemented with further observations.

8. There is a growing acceptance that environmental forcing at large-scales is of fundamental importance to recruitment of marine species. These environmental processes can operate simultaneously over large areas within one year and also can cycle slowly over many years.

9. There is evidence of a lack of communication/coordination of recruitment research within DFO. Specific examples include herring research nationally and lobster and cod research within the Atlantic zone.

10. Significant advances in marine research are dependent on the continued development of appropriate instrumentation which will increase our sampling resolution, in space and time, in order to overcome problems in analysis. Examples cited included Lagrangian measurements of biological and physical variables and acoustic techniques for continuous sampling.

X RECOMMENDATIONS OF STEERING GROUP

The following are recommendations for a framework to improve DFO recruitment research:

1. Cooperation among physical, chemical and biological sciences is important and should continue to be encouraged. This collaboration seems to be developing well under the current organizational structure, but there appears to be problems coordinating work across Regions; hence

2. The Department should initiate a series of focused, species specific workshops directed at improving the coordination, planning and review of research on specific recruitment problems. The workshops would target individual species and involve expert review of ongoing and potential research projects. The workshops would be charged with producing an agreement on short-term (2-3 years) and long-term (5-10 years) objectives and priorities for research within the Department. Initial candidate taxa would include lobster, herring and Atlantic cod.

3. CAFSAC, AFSAC and PSARC are asked to provide a tabulation, for each species assessed, of the current source of the recruitment measure used in the assessment, the proportion of the projected catch made up of recruits, and the coefficient of variation of the recruitment value over the data base.

The following are recommenations for addressing existing constraints on progress in recruitment research:

4. Because recruitment is influenced by many biotic and physical factors, researchers can expect to need access to data from a variety of sources. It is recommended that a) researchers pursue more comprehensive analyses of existing data; b) Science Directors ensure access to necessary data is provided; and c) the Data Management Working Group ensures that data archiving is done in ways which facilitate such uses.

5. Certain aspects of recruitment research depend on careful measurement of large scale oceanographic phenomena. Because these events may occur rarely and unpredictably, it is important that some flexibility is included in the scheduling of vessels (and work plans).

6. In addition to the requirement of proper scientific methods, well designed recruitment studies require that field data are collected for long periods of time. In order to successfully evaluate the progress of these studies, it is necessary to establish well-defined, short-term objectives or hypotheses which are examined regularly.

7. A long-term time series of plankton data would be invaluable to DFO recruitment and climate research. Time series for sea surface temperature and fisheries data exist on both the east and west coasts, but there are no parallel plankton time series on either coast that provide a measure of how the plankton respond to annual and interannual variations in oceanic conditions. A group of scientists should be convened to design a small, cost-effective program for monitoring the marine environment.

8. Quantitative methods discussed during the workshop have promise of improving the way that recruitment forecasts are derived and incorporated into the general management process, including assessments. It is recommended that scientists involved in the provision of management advice increase their familiarity with such methods and explore applications of these methods to speicifc management problems.

APPENDIX II EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The National Recruitment Workshop was held in St. John's on February 23 and 24, 1988. It was chaired by M. Sinclair. Participation included forty-eight departmental scientists from several disciplines, six invited experts and seven representatives from DFO senior management. The day following the workshop, a steering group under the chairmanship of G.B. Ayles, with regional representation, met to draft a set of generalizations that emerged from the workshop discussions, as well as some strategic recommendations dealing with the planning of research on recruitment.

The workshop was introduced by M.C. Mercer, the Regional Director of Science from the Newfoundland Region, and L.S. Parsons, the Assistant Deputy Minister, Science. Following these introductory addresses, M. Sinclair provided a historical sketch of the development of concepts relevant to recruitment research. Subsequently, overviews of departmental research on recruitment, respectively in the Pacific Ocean, the Gulf of St. Lawrence and the Atlantic Ocean, were presented. Each presentation involved summaries of relevant physical oceanographic and fisheries biology research. The aim of the overview was to provide a summary of the present departmental research activities on recruitment. What research questions are being asked and what approaches are being taken to address the problems? Particular emphasis was directed towards the relevant physical oceanographic programs and the degree to which a multi-disciplinary approach is followed. These overviews provide the setting, or background information, that is necessary for an evaluation of the scope and direction of present efforts on recruitment related research. The first day's plenary sessions ended with two presentations on statistical approaches to recruitment forecasting.

During the morning of the second day, the participants were divided up into six multi-disciplinary work teams (nine scientists per team). The work teams were asked to address one of three recruitment problems. The background documentation for the particular problem had been sent out to each participant several weeks prior to the workshop. Two work teams addressed each problem. One of the teams comprised members with specific expertise for the assigned problem. Members of the second teams for each of the problems lacked detailed knowledge of their particular problem. The aim of the work team concept was to generate increased interaction between scientists of different disciplines rather than to generate specific recommendations for research. During the afternoon of the second day, the chairmen of the work teams presented the results of their deliberations in a plenary session held at the Northwest Atlantic Fisheries Centre. The workshop ended with a general discussion introduced by comments from each of the non-departmental invited experts.

The steering group drew the following generalization from the workshop:

1. The characteristics of recruitment problems vary in important ways among species and areas. Thus, the preferred approach to research on recruitment questions is generally considered to be unique to the specific problem under consideration.

2. The rate of increase in understanding of the mechanisms controlling recruitment variability has not, in recent decades, been characterized by major breakthroughs that increase our understanding of recruitment variability of different species and geographic areas. It is probable that future increases in understanding will be incremental rather than dramatic.

3. Several multi-disciplinary recruitment projects have been initiated recently in DFO on both the Atlantic and Pacific. These projects are examples of well-coordinated research which include teams of both physical oceanographers, biological oceanographers and fisheries biologists.

4. It is apparent from the papers that were presented, and the resulting discussions, that there has been a shift in emphasis from the critical period concept (where recruitment is believed to be determined in the very early life history stages) to the view that recruitment may be more influenced by significant events and processes in the adult and juvenile life history stages. The current approach to solving the recruitment problem has, therefore, become more balanced by placing some emphasis on later life history stages.

5. There is a paucity of knowledge of the biology and life history of many marine species. The result is that many hypotheses remain untested or poorly defined, especially for juvenile stages.

6. Advances in recruitment research depend upon repeated measurements of important biological and oceanographic features. This information is necessary on inter-annual and inter-decadal time scales. Although there are often time series data on fish stock abundance, there is a lack of a comparable time series for physical and biological oceanographic features such as currents, temperature, salinity, and zooplankton abundance.

7. In general, there are existing biological and physical data sets with which to begin examining a number of recruitment hypotheses. However, these data sets are sometimes difficult for researchers to access and, in specific cases, must be supplemented with further observations.

8. There is a growing acceptance that large-scale environmental forcing is of fundamental importance to recruitment of marine species. These environmental processes can operate simultaneously over large areas within one year and can also unfold slowly over many years.

9. There is evidence of a lack of communication/coordination of recruitment research within DFO. Specific examples include herring research nationally, and lobster and cod within the Atlantic zone.

10. Significant advances in marine research are dependent on the continued development of appropriate instrumentation which will improve our sampling resolution, in space and time, in order to overcome problems in analysis. Examples cited included Lagrangian measurements of biological and physical variables and acoustic techniques for continuous sampling.

The following are recommendations by the steering group for a framework to improve DFO recruitment research:

1. Cooperation among physical, chemical, and biological scientists is important and should continue to be encouraged. This collaboration seems to be developing well under the current organization structure, but there appears to be problems coordinating work across regions.

2. The Department should initiate a series of focused, species-specific workshops directed at improving the coordination, planning and review of research on specific recruitment problems. The workshops would target individual species and involve expert review of ongoing and potential research projects. The workshops would be charged with producing an agreement on short-term (2-3 years) and long-term (5-10 years) objectives and priorities for research within the Department. Initial candidate taxa would include lobster, herring and Atlantic cod.

3. CAFSAC, AFSAC, and PSARC are asked to provide a tabluation for each species and stock assessed, of the current source of the recruitment measure used in the assessment, the proportion of the projected catch made up of recruits, and the coefficient of variation of the recruitment value over the data base.

4. Because recruitment is influenced by many biotic and physical factors, researchers can expect to need access to data from a variety of sources. It is recommended that: a) researchers pursue more comprehensive analyses of existing date; b) Science Directors ensure access to necessary data is provided; and c) the Data Management Working Group ensures that data archiving is done in ways which facilitate such uses.

5. Certain aspects of recruitment research depend on careful measurement of large scale oceanographic phenomena. Because these events may occur rarely and unpredictably, it is important that some flexibility is included in the scheduling of vessels (and work plans).

6. In addition to the requirement for proper scientific methods, well-designed recruitment studies require that field data are collected for long periods of time. In order to successfully evaluate the progress of these studies, it is necessary to establish well-defined, short-term objectives or hypotheses which are examined regularly.

7. A long-term time series of plankton data would be invaluable to DFO recruitment and climate research. Time series for sea surface temperature and fisheries data exist on both the east and west coasts, but there are no parallel plankton time series on either coast that provide a measure of how the plankton respond to annual and interannual variations in oceanographic conditions. A group of scientists should be convened to design a small, cost-effective program for monitoring the marine environment.

8. Quantitative methods discussed during the workshop have promise of improving the way that recruitment forecasts are derived and incorporated into the general management process, including assessments. It is recommended that scientists involved in the provision of management advice increase their familiarity with such methods and explore applications of these methods to specific management problems.

The full proceedings of the workshop are being published in the departmental Technical Report Series.

APPENDIX I LIST OF PARTICIPANTS AND OBSERVERS

Chairman: Dr. M. Sinclair

Non-DFO:

Dr. K. Brander (Ministry of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food, Lowestoft)
Dr. R. Francis (University of Washington, Seattle)
Dr. A. Koslow (Dalhousie University, Halifax)
Dr. P. Leblond (University of British Columbia, Vancouver)
Dr. W.C. Leggett (McGill University, Montreal)
Dr. M.M. Mullin (Scripps Institution of Oceanography, La Jolla)

DFO:

Newfoundland Region:

Mr. S.A. Akenhead
Dr. J.T. Anderson (Steering Group member)
Mr. E.K. Dalley
Dr. G.T. Evans
Dr. R.A. Myers
Dr. P. Pepin
Dr. J.C. Rice (Steering Group member)

Scotia-Fundy Region:

Dr. K. Drinkwater
Dr. K.T. Frank
Dr. G.C. Harding
Dr. T.D. Iles
Mr. T. Lambert
Dr. J.W. Loder
Dr. R.K. Mohn
Dr. J.D. Nielson
Dr. I. Perry
Dr. B. Petrie
Dr. J.D. Pringle
Dr. D. Sameoto
Dr. M. Sinclair (Steering Group member)
Dr. P. Smith
Dr. R.L. Stephenson
Mr. M.J. Tremblay

Gulf Region:

Dr. M. Chadwick (Steering Group member)
Dr. G.Y. Conan
Mr. A. Sinclair

Quebec Region:

Dr. Y. de Lafontaine
Dr. J. Gagné (Steering Group member)
Dr. C. Hudon
Dr. D. Lefaivre
Dr. J. Runge
Dr. J.-C. Therriault

Headquarters (Ottawa):

Dr. G.B. Ayles (Chairman, Steering Group)
Dr. W.D. McKone (Steering Group member)

Central and Arctic Region:

Dr. J. Craig
Dr. R.J. Crawford

Pacific Region:

Dr. J. Boutillier
Dr. W.R. Crawford
Dr. K. Denman
Dr. B. Hargreaves
Dr. M. Healey
Dr. G.S. Jamieson
Dr. D.L. Mackas
Dr. D. Noakes
Dr. R.E. Thomson
Dr. A. Tyler
Dr. D. Ware (Steering Group member)

DFO Management:

Mr. L.S. Parsons (Headquarters)
Mr. E.B. Dunne (Newfoundland)
Mr. E.J. Niles (Gulf)
Dr. J.C. Davis (Pacific)
Mr. S.B. MacPhee (Scotia-Fundy)
Dr. J. Boulva (Quebec)
Mr. M.C. Mercer (Newfoundland)

APPENDIX III BACKGROUND INFORMATION ON LOBSTER QUESTION

by

C. Hudon
Quebec Region

Research Question: Prediction of recruitment of the American lobster (Homarus americanus) off Iles de la Madeleine, Gulf of St. Lawrence.

Introduction

In the last few years, many studies have dealt with various aspects of stock-recruitment relationships for fisheries management. Prediction of stock abundance from recruit assessment, in order to achieve stability in landings is probably the most sought-after long-term goal of fisheries management. Several attempts have been made to predict lobster landings in the southern Gulf, by correlating various environmental parameters with lobster landings a number of years later. Freshwater runoff (Trites 1970; Sutcliffe 1973; Sheldon et. al. 1982), dominant winds (Caddy 1979), surface circulation patterns (Iles 1975; Dadswell 1979; Robinson 1979) and surface water temperature (Scarratt 1964; Dow 1977; Flowers and Saila 1972; Boudreault et. al. 1977) were investigated with various degrees of success.

Sutcliffe's (1973) relation, between the April run-off of the St. Lawrence River with total Quebec landings 9 years later was further developed into a predictive rlationship explaining 77% of the variation in landings (Sheldon et. al. 1982). This relationship was successful in predicting the upward trend in landing for the years 1972-78 from the increased discharge observed in 1963-69 (Ennis 1986b).

The mechanisms possibly underlying that correlation were studied by Bugden et. al. (1982). Among the factors affected by runoff variability are water circulation, water mixing pattern and intensity of mixing, ice formation and distribution, heat retention (temperature near surface), direct nutrient enrichment, salinity, turbidity, light penetration and intensity of stratification. Obviously, the mechanisms suppose a number of steps between the input of nutrient rich freshwater and the output of a strong recruitment year class for lobster. A likely chain of events would be through the influence of freshwater runoff on circulation and mixing, increased planktonic production and their favourable influence on larval retention and survival. Furthermore, the positive effects on benthic postlarval density are expected to last until that cohort reaches legal size, several years later.

The American lobster occurs over a wide geographical range (Southern Labrador to North Carolina) and most populations are subjected to a high percentage of exploitation (80-85%, Campbell 1980). Lobster is managed on the basis of regions rather than discrete stock units, and historical landing statistics are available from the early 1870's for some areas. Neighbouring statistical units can have similar or different fluctuations in annual landings, which has lead to the definition of recruitment units presumably under similar physical or biological constraints (Campbell and Mohn 1983; Harding et. al.

1983). The above studies lead one to expect that each region (recruitment unit) should be under the influence of a particular set of physical and/or biological limitations to recruitment, resulting in bottlenecks at different stages of early lobster life. The remainder of this paper will examine the available information on the early life cycle of the American lobster off Iles de la Madeleine in order to asses the relative importance of the above factors with respect to recruitment into the fishery.

Lobster Fishing and Population Parameters off Iles de la Madeleine

A minimum legal size, a restricted fishing season, a limited number of permits and of number of traps per permit are the major management tools in fisheries for the American lobster. Present size limits, in effect for many years, range from 63.5 mm CL to 81 mm CL (76.2 mm CL in Iles de la Madeleine). Berried females of all sizes are excluded from the fishery. 999 permits are prsently being fished off Iles de la Madeleine, from roughly the middle of May to the end of July. Each permit carry a maximum number of 300 traps.

Iles de la Madeleine are an archipelago 100 km long located in the southern Gulf of St. Lawrence. They constitute seven islands, five of which are linked by narrow sand dunes enclosing three lagoons. The northwest side is exposed to the influence of the Gaspé current and water masses from Miramichi Bay (Bumpus and Lauzier 1965) while waters have a gyre-like circulation and a longer residence time on the shallower and more sheltered southeast size. Accordingly, seasonal water temperature is lower and varies within a narrower thermal range on the northwest side of the Islands than on the southeast side. The different temperature regimes are responsible for the differences of population parameters observed on each side; lobsters from the northeast exhibit a larger mean size (Bergeron 1967); reach sexual maturity at a larger size (Dubé et Grondin 1985); spawn and hatch their eggs later in the summer (Attard and Fradette 1985); and have a slower rate of increase in CPUE than on the southeast size. Since adults do not migrate between sides (Dubé 1984), larval transport appears to be the major mechanism ensuring exhange between the two sides (Hudon et. al. 1986).

Egg Production off Iles de la Madeleine

The female lobster carries a clutch on its abdomen until hatching (at 10 to 12 months) (Ennis 1975). Egg development depends largely on the temperature experienced by the female (Perkins 1972). Factors limiting egg production are the egg losses due to natural causes (up to 36% of a single clutch) over the entire incubation period (Perkins 1971). Of the population of ovigerous females, about 15% will loose all their eggs during incubation (Ennis and Collins 1983). Parasitism by nemertean worms (Brattey et. al. 1985) and symbiosis by a polychete (Brattey and Campbell 1985) are also commonly observed along the Atlantic coast but are rare off Iles de la Madeleine.

In reproductive terms, a "recruit" achieves its potential only after reproducing at least once before it can be taken by the fishery. Off Iles de la Madeleine, the size at first maturity is attained by 50% of the population at about 79 mm CL on the southeast coast and 85 mm CL on the northwest coast of Iles de la Madeleine (Dubé and Grondin 1985). As a result of the compromise between legal size and size at first maturity, a variable proportion of egg production is protected from the fishery (Attard 1985).

Although the first condition of successful recruitment is in maximal larval production, the systematic protection of all berried females might not be the best way to achieve that result. Larvae producted by small (Ib) females (having molted and extruded their first clutch of eggs in the same summer) were found to have a low chance of survival due to their late hatching date and low energetic content (Attard and Hudon 1987), whilst large females contributed proportionally more to larval production, therefore suggesting the usefulness of setting an upper size limit to the fishery.

Larval Abundance and Growth

Depending on temperature, a single clutch can hatch within days or weeks (Perkins 1972), so that stage I larvae occur in the plankton over a two-month period, from late June to September (Hudon et. al. 1986). The peak of abundance occurs in mid-July, corresponding to maximum summer temperatures, thus ensuring rapid larval development to the benthic stage. This mechanism was hypothesized to minimize the duration of planktonic life in order to avoid the heavy predation likely to occur at this stage (Hudon and Fradette 1987).

Predation and feeding are poorly known in nature. Wild larvae are carnivorous, preying on increasingly large zooplankters with successive moult stage (Harding et. al. 1983). The high growth factors observed for wild larvae off Iles de la Madeleine suggest that starvation is not a major problem in the southern Gulf (Hudon and Fradette 1987). Laboratory studies have shown that larvae are cannibalistic, starvation resulting in delay in moult, low growth factor (% increment) and high mortality rate.

Better understanding of larval behaviour in nature has somewhat altered the perception that lobster larvae are entirely passive drifters. Vertical migrations are well defined in the first two stages, but stage III and IV congregate near the surface (Hudon et. al. 1986). The amplitude of vertical movements varies widely between areas, from 30 m in the Gulf of Maine (Harding et. al. 1985) to less than 3 m off Iles de la Madeleine (Hudon et. al. 1986). Although the possibility of using vertical migrations to make directional movements by moving between water masses travelling in different directions was suggested (Caddy 1979), it appears that such mechanism would be most useful in late stages, at which time vertical migration ceases to occur. Swimming ability increases with larval stage (Ennis 1986a), and directionnally oriented movements were observed in nature for stage IV post larvae (S. Cobb, pers. comm.). A significant correlation was found between the concentration of planktonic stage IV and the distance to the shallow rocky bottoms where benthic settlement takes place, whereas none was found with the distance to the nearest coast (Hudon et. al. 1986). Swimming ability would allow larval movements at the small (1-10 km) scale which, under certain conditions, could bear significant effects. However, horizontal movements of water masses should account for larval dispersion at a larger scale (10-100 km).

Residual water circulation pattern off Iles de la Madeleine shows an anti-cyclonic (clockwise) pattern of circulation during the period of larval peak abundance, resulting in an exportation of the larvae towards the southeast side and their concentration in Baie de Plaisance. Larvae produced near Ile d'Entree should be carried toward the north side of the Islands, therefore

supporting the hypothesis of the closed recruitment cell for this area (Dadswell 1979; Campbell et Mohn 1983). Overall survival rate calculated for the three regions around Iles de la Madeleine yields an estimate of 1.84%, which is comparable to the survival values of 0.17-2.49% obtained in Northumberland Strait (Scarratt 1964, 1973) and 2.45% in St. Georges Bay (Harding et. al. 1982).

Post Larval Benthic Stages

The transition between the pelagic and benthic stage is characterized by an "exploratory phase", taking place at the end of the fourth stage, during which the post-larva executes deep dives to the bottom to inspect the type of substratum available (S. Cobb, cited by Aiken 1986). There is very little information on chemo-sensory detection of suitable substrata for larvae, although the occurrence of that capacity in adult lobster and other invertebrate larvae make this possibility very likely. High concentration of stage V post larvae on shallow rocky bottoms further support an active selection mechanism (Hudon 1987). Shallow grounds were hypothesized to be more favourable due to better growth conditions and lower predator density. Furthermore, pre-settlement mortality should be lower in shallow areas, because of the reduced probability of predator encounter over the water column.

Post larval benthic settlement lasts from mid-August until October. This long ranging period of benthic settlement combined with the slow decline of water temperature during the fall period induces a wide span of sizes (Stage V to VIII, 5.3 to 14.5 mm CL) in the cohort by the end of its first growing season (Hudon 1987). This size span combined to the large variability in individual growth rates is likely to result in the entry of a single cohort in the fishery over several years. The benefits of a single successful year class would, therefore, be considerably diluted in time.

Benthic settlement of planktonic post larvae is successful on solid substrata such as rocks and bounders with or without macroalgae offering hiding places. Small stones devoid of macrophyte colonisation in shallow waters support large densities (0.75 to 3.30 ind. m^2) of very small (23.8 mm CL) mean size lobsters (Hudon 1987), therefore qualifying for the definition of "nursery areas". On those areas, predation of small lobsters by cunners, other lobsters and rock crabs was observed (Hudon and Lamarche 1988). In addition to predation, post larval recruitment is possibly limited by the extent of such habitat and its protection from silting and various human impacts (land fill, sediment dumping, coastal pollution, etc.). The availability, distribution and abundance of nursery areas in the other regions of the Atlantic coast as well as the natural mortality associated with the early benthic stages are not known at the present time.

Towards a Reliable Prediction of Lobster Recruitment into the Fishery

Given the complexity of the path of energy transfer from physical conditions to biological response, the particularities of lobster's early life stage and the lag between post larval and adult production, the sustained validity of Sucliffe's (1973) model is a remarkable success. Similar mechanisms remain to be determined for other regions (or recruitment units), possibly involving other physical factors (wind, surface temperature, etc.) bearing a critical influence over other specific stage of the early lobster life.

Also, methods could be devised for the direct evaluation of settlement success at the stage (or, more conveniently, the size) at which natural mortality stabilizes to a level roughly comparable to that of the exploited segment of the population. This would use the minimal size at which an evalution of the population would reflect with some confidence the number of animals entering the fishery. This approach is exemplified by the predictive relationship obtained for Panulirus cygnus in western Australia (Caputi and Brown 1986; Phillips 1986), in which the late planktonic puerulus stage is used to predict landings four years ahead of the fishery.

In either cases, much information is still needed on the biology of the early life stages of the American lobster and on its response to the physical environment in order to achieve successful prediction of the fishery.

Questions

What elements make Sutcliffe's model work?

What are the physical factors likely to influence lobster recruitment in the other regions (recruitment units) along the Atlantic coast?

What is the contribution of long-term climatic warming trends in determining recruitment and the extent of geographical distribution?

What is the relative contribution of different-sized females to benthic post larval population?

Are stage IV planktonic post larvae capable of oriented movements, allowing them to select for rocky bottoms at settlement time? What are the cues and/or stimulis for physical orientation and bottom selection?

What are the growth and mortality rates of post larval lobsters in nature?

Is it possible to develop post larval collectors, which would allow to estimate year class strength several years ahead of recruitment into the fishery?

Suggested Reading (A complete list of references is available on request)

Campbell, A. and R.K. Mohn. 1983. Definition of American lobster stocks for the Canadian Maritimes by analysis of fishery-landing trends. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc. 112: 744-750.

Harding, G.C., K.F. Drinkwater, and W.P. Vass. 1983. Factors influencing the size of the American lobster (Homarus americanus) stocks along the Atlantic coast of Nova Scotia, Gulf of St. Lawrence, and Gulf of Maine: A new synthesis. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 40: 168-184.

Hudon, C., P. Fradette and P. Legendre. 1986. La repartition horizontale et verticale des larves de homard (Homarus americanus) autour des Iles de la Madeleine, golfe du Saint-Laurent. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 2164-2176.

Sutcliffe, W.H. Jr. 1973. Correlations between seasonal river discharge and local landings of American lobster (Homarus americanus) and Atlantic halibut (Hyppoglossus Hyppoglossus) in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. 30: 856-859.

Sheldon, R.W., W.H. Sutcliffe Jr. and K. Drinkwater. 1982. Fish production in multispecies fisheries. p. 28-34. In: M.C. Mercer (ed.) Multispecies approaches to fisheries management advice. Can. Spec. Publ. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 59.

LITERATURE CITED

Aiken, D.E. and S.L. Waddy. 1986. Environmental influence on recruitment of the American lobster, Homarus americanus: a perspective. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 2258-2270.

Attard, J. 1985. Fecondite individuelle et production d'oeufs par recrue du homard (Homarus americanus) sur les cotes nord et sud des Iles de la Madeleine, Golfe du Saint-Laurent. Rapp. Tech. Can. Sci. Halieut. Aquat. 1417: vi + 14 p.

Attard, J. et P. Fradette. 1985. Developpement des oeufs et fecondite des femelles de homard (Homarus americanus) aux Iles de la Madeleine, Quebec. CSCPCA Doc. Rec. 85/15. 22 p.

Attard, J. and C. Hudon. 1987. Embryonic development and energetic investment in egg production in relation to size of female lobster (Homarus americanus). Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 44: 1157-1164.

Bergeron, J. 1967. Contribution a la biologie du homard (Homarus americanus M. Edw.) des Iles de la Madeleine. Nat. Can. 94: 169-207.

Boudreault, F.R., J.N. Dupont et C. Sylvain. 1977. Modeles lineaires de prediction des debarquements de homard aux Iles-de-la-Madeleine (Golfe du Saint-Laurent. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. 34: 379-383.

Brattey, J. and A. Campbell. 1985. Occurrence of Histriobdella homari (Annelida: Polychaeta) on the American lobster in the Canadian Maritimes. Can. J. Zool. 63: 392-395.

Brattey, J., A. Campbell, A.E. Bagnall, and L.S. Uhazy. 1985. Geographic distribution and seasonal occurrence of the nemertean Pseudocarcinonemertes homari on the American lobster, Homarus americanus. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 42: 360-367.

Bumpus, D.F. and L.M. Lauzier. 1965. Surface circulation off the continental shelf off eastern North America between Newfoundland and Florida. Folio 7. In: W. Webster (ed.) Serial Atlas of the Marine Environment. Am. Geogr. Soc., New York, NY.

Caddy, J.F. 1979. The influence of variations in the seasonal temperature regime on survival of larval stages of the American lobster (Homarus americanus) in the southern Gulf of St. Lawrence. Rapp. P.-v. Reun. Cons. int. Explor. Mer. 175: 204-216.

Campbell, A. 1980. A review of mortality estimates of lobster populations in the Canadian Maritimes. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 932: 28-35.

Campbell, A. and R.K. Mohn. 1983. Definition of American lobster stocks for the Canadian Maritimes by analysis of fishery-landing trends. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc. 112: 744-750.

Caputi, N. and R.S. Brown. 1986. Relationship between indices of juvenile abundance and recruitment in the western rock lobster (Panulirus cygnus) fishery. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 2131-2139.

Dadwell, M.H. 1979. A review of the decline in lobster (Homarus americanus) landings in Chedabucto Bay between 1956 and 1977 with an hypothesis for a possible effect by the Canso Causeway on the recruitment mechanism of eastern Nova Scotia lobster stocks. Can. Fish. Mar. Serv. Tech. Rep. Ser. 834 (Part 3): 113-144.

Dow, R.L. 1977. Relationship of sea surface temperature to American and European lobster landings. J. Cons. int. Explor. Mer 37: 186-191.

Dubé, P. 1984. Analyse des deplacements du homard (Homarus americanus) sur les cotes des Iles de la Madeleine, a partir des donnees de marquage et de recapture, de 1978 a 1982. CSCPCA Res. Doc. 84/57.

Dubé, P. et P. Grondin. 1985. Maturite sexuelle du homard (Homarus americanus) femelle aux Iles-de-la-Madeleine. CSCPCA Doc. Rec. 85/98. 41 p.

Ennis, G.P. 1975. Observations on hatching and larvae release in the lobster Homarus americanus. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 32: 2210-2213.

Ennis, G.P. 1986a. Swimming ability of larval American lobster Homarus americanus, in flowing water. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 2177-2183.

Ennis, G.P. 1986b. Stock definition, recruitment variability, and larval recruitment processes in the American lobster, Homarus americanus: a review. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 2072-2084.

Flowers, J.M. and S.B. Saila. 1972. An analysis of temperature effects on the inshore lobster fishery. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. 29: 1221-1225.

Harding, G.C., W.P. Vass, and K.F. Drinkwater. 1982. Aspects of larval American lobster (Homarus americanus) ecology in St. Georges Bay, Nova Scotia. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 39: 1117-1129.

Harding, G.C., K.F. Drinkwater, and W.P. Vass. 1983. Factors influencing the size of the American lobster (Homarus americanus) stocks along the Atlantic coast of Nova Scotia, Gulf of St. Lawrence, and Gulf of Maine: A new synthesis. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 40: 168-184.

Harding, G.C., J.D. Pringle, W.P. Vass, and R.W. Trites. 1985. Larval aspects of lobster recruitment in the Gulf of Maine. ICES paper K:34.

Hudon, C. and P. Fradette. 1987. Planktonic growth of lobster (Homarus americanus) larvae off Iles de la Madeleine, Gulf of St. Lawrence. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. (in press).

Hudon, C., P. Fradette and P. Legendre. 1986. La repartition horizontale et verticale des larves de homard (Homarus americanus) autour des Iles de la Madeleine, golfe du Saint-Laurent. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 2164-2176.

Hudon, C. 1987. The ecology and growth of post larval and juvenile lobster Homarus americanus) off Iles de la Madeleine, P.Q. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. (in press).

Hudon, C. and G. Lamarche. Niche segregation between the American lobster (Homarus americanus) and the rock crab (Cancer irroratus) in various habitats off Iles de la Madeleine, P.Q. Mar. Ecol. (Prog. Ser.) (accepted for publication).

Iles, T.D. 1975. An analysis of the decline in the southern Gulf of St. Lawrence landings to demonstrate differential area and time effects. ICES Shellfish Committee. C.M. 1975/K:55.

Perkins, H.C. 1971. Egg loss during incubation from offshore northern lobsters (Decapoda: Homaridae). Fish Bull. 69(2): 451-453.

Perkins, H.C. 1972. Developmental rates at various temperatures of embroyos of the northern lobster (Homarus americanus Milne-Edwards). Fish. Bull. 70(1): 95-99.

Phillips. B. 1986. Prediction of commercial catches of the western rock lobster, Panulirus cygnus. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 43: 2126-2130.

Robinson, D.G. 1979. Consideration of the lobster (Homarus americanus) recruitment overfishing hypothesis; with special reference to the Canso Causeway. Fish. Mar. Serv. Tech. Rep. 834: 77-99.

Scarratt, D.J. 1964. Abundance and distribution of lobster larvae (Homarus americanus) in Northumberland Strait. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. 21: 661-680.

Scarratt, D.J. 1973. Abundance, survival and vertical diurnal distribution of lobster larvae in Northumberland Strait, 1962-63, and their relationships with commercial stocks. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. 30: 1819-1824.

Sheldon, R.W., W.H. Sutcliffe Jr. and K. Drinkwater. 1982. Fish production in multispecies fisheries. p. 28-34. In: M.C. Mercer (ed.) Multispecies approaches to fisheries management advice. Can. Spec. Publ. Fish Aquat. Sci. 59.

Sutcliffe, W.H. Jr. 1973. Correlations between seasonal river discharge and local landings of American lobster (Homarus americanus) and Atlantic halibut (Hyppoglossus Hyppoglossus) in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. 30: 856-859.

Trites, R.W. 1970. The Gulf of St. Lawrence from a pollution view point. F.A.O. Tech. Conf. on Marine Pollution and its effects on living resources and fishing FIR: MP/70/R-16.

APPENDIX IV BACKGROUND INFORMATION ON THE SOCKEYE SALMON QUESTION

by

B. Hargraeves
Pacific Region

Problem: To determine the distribution, mortality, and growth rates of sockeye salmon in the northern Pacific Ocean, and to identify the factors that contribute to interannual variability in recruitment to the coastal and freshwater fisheries during the return spawning migration to the natal rivers.

Reason: This is a difficult but important problem, applicable to salmonids and many oceanic resource species. Most research on recruitment of west-coast salmon has focussed on the freshwater and early marine phases of the life cycle. However, attention may soon have to broaden to include recruitment processes on the high seas. This would be a major undertaking; and the focussed, interdisciplinary format of this Workshop provides an unusual opportunity to discuss new ideas and approaches.

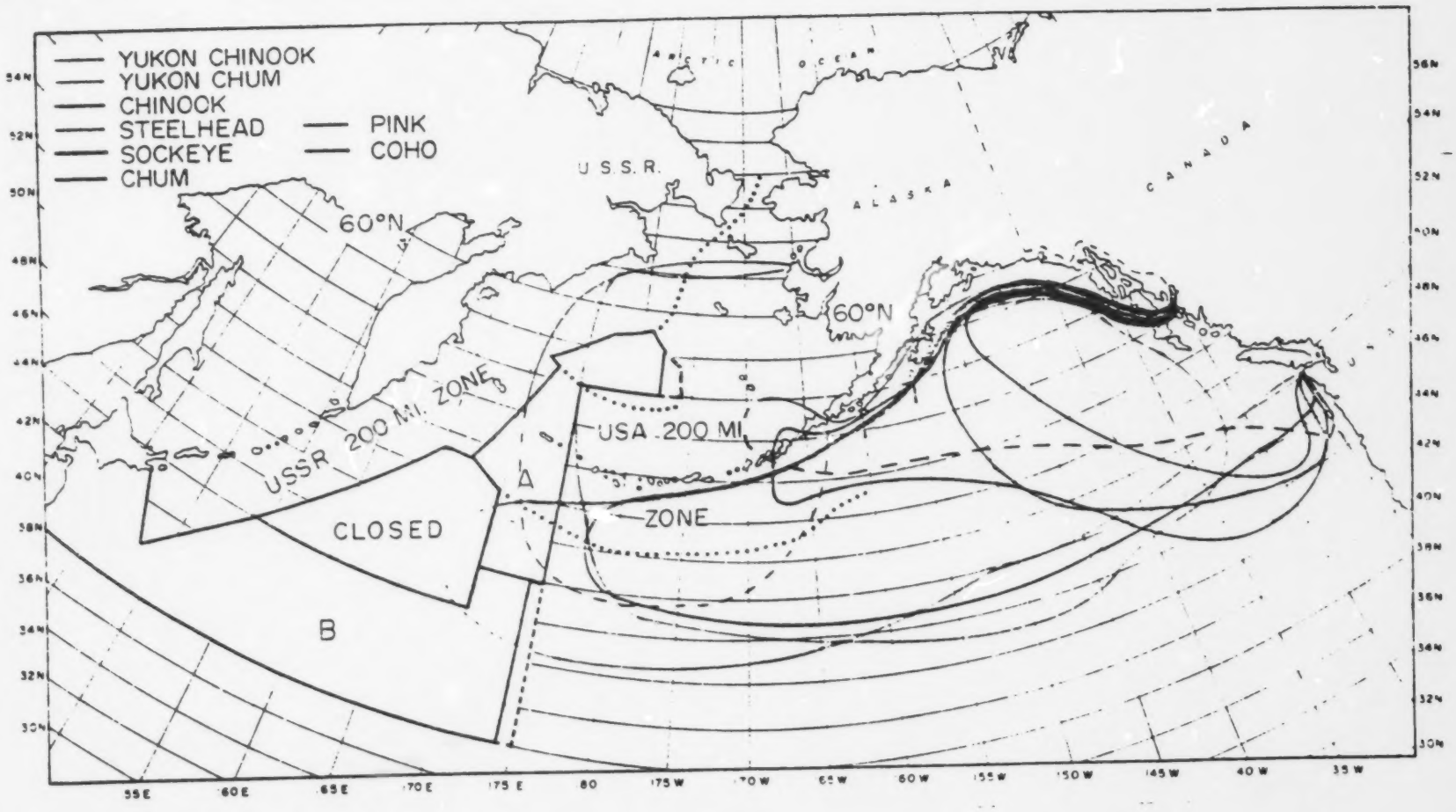
Elaboration of the Problem

Pacific salmon are the most important commercial species on the west coast of Canada. Most salmon spend a major portion of their life cycle in the ocean before returning to spawn and die in freshwater. Data from high-seas fishing and tagging work indicate that some species of salmon migrate large distances and are widely distributed in the northeastern Pacific Ocean during the oceanic phase (Figure 1).

From a recruitment perspective, the abundance of all five species of salmon typically show substantial interannual variability. In some cases, there is also significant variation in body size and in the migration timing and routes taken by adult salmon returning to spawn. Many attempts have been made to explain and predict interannual variability in salmon production, including regression, correlation, and time series analyses. Some models initially appear to work well, but invariably have broken down soon after additional data became available. In general, much of the interannual variability in recruitment of salmon remains unexplained and unpredictable, which makes effective management of the fisheries very difficult.

During the oceanic phase,most Canadian salmon travel far beyond national territorial waters, and are susceptible to capture by foreign fishing fleets. In recent years, there has been a dramatic increase in the number of foreign vessels fishing flying squid on the high seas. This fishery is not directed at salmon, and existing data suggest that there is probably not much overlap between the distribution of salmon and flying squid during the current squid fishing season. However, the gill nets used to capture squid are known to be very effective in capturing matuing salmon, and exisitng international

FIGURE 1



Known ocean distribution of Canadian Pacific salmon and steelhead trout, as determined by tag recoveries, 1956-1986, and Japanese high-seas salmon fishing areas in 1987. A -- Mothership fishing area. B -- Landbased fishing area. Broken coloured lines indicate uncertain salmon distribution boundaries due to lack of data. Broken lines at 175°E between 38°N and 46°N, and east of 178°W in the central Bering Sea, represent easterly boundaries of the landbased fishing area from 1978 to 1985 and the Mothership fishing area from 1978 to 1986, respectively.

agreements (e.g. INPFC) which govern the distribution of fishing vessels, duration of the fishing season, reporting of catch data, etc., do not include countries such as Korea and Taiwan, which now represent the vast majority of the squid fishing fleet. Thus, there is growing concern that high-seas fishing activities in the northern Pacific Ocean may currently, or soon will, have important negative impacts on the productivity of Canadian salmon. Although there are sufficient data avialable to indicate the general distribution of Canadian salmon in the northern Pacific, this picture is a composite of many small, often isolated, data sets, collected over many years. thus, the details remain uncertain, particularly in terms of interannual variation in ocean distributions.

It is therefore important to determine the distribution, mortality, growth rated, and interception rates of Canadian salmon by foreign fishing vessels in the northern Pacific Ocean, and identify the high-seas factors that contribute to interannual variability in recruitment. This is also a generic question, applicable to other species in both the northern Pacific (e.g. Pomfret) and northern Atlantic Oceans (e.g., Atlantic salmon). The problems are: What is the most effective way to tackle this type of question? What fisheries parameters should be meausured or studied? What oceanographic factors are likely to be important? When? Where? How?

General Background:

The five species of Pacific salmon (commonly called sockeye, coho, chinook, pink, and chum) that occur naturally off the west coast of North America support one of the most important fisheries in the North Pacific Ocean. For example, the commercial catch of salmon by Canada, the United States, and Japan averaged 438, 346 tonnes, with a landed value of 1.2 billion (Canadian dollars) a year during the period of 1977 to 1982, the latest year for which published figures are abvailable for all three nations (I.N.P.F.C. Statistical Yearbooks 1972-1982). In Canada, Pacific salmon are by far the most important fisheries resrouce on the west coast, n terms of both value and size. FOr example, in 1985 the total landed value of all commercial species in British Columbia was worth 375 million dollars, of which salmon accounted for 246 million (66%). Anual commercial landings of B.C. salmon over the past decade have averaged 142 million pounds, dominated by pinks (37 million pounds), sockeye (34 million pounds), and chums (31 million pounds). Coho and chinook salmon are caught in smaller quantities in the commercial fisheries (23 and 17 million pounds, respectively), but these two species support an important sport fishery. It has been estimated that approximately 200-600 thousand chinook and 600-13-- thousand coho salmon are taken each year by sport fishermen. Coho and chinook are the primary target species for approximately 90% of all sport fishing conducted in tidal waters, which is estimated to be worth roughly 85 million a year to the B.C. economy in direct tourism-related income, and an additional 402 million a year in "economic activity" arising indirectly from sport fishing in tidal waters.

The five species of B.C. salmon differ considerably in many respects, including their productivity, their dependence on freshwater habitat, longevity, flexibility in the life cycle, size at maturity, behaviour susceptibility to fishing gear, and preference by both Canadian and internation consumers. From a

recruitment perspective, considerable interannual variation in survival rates has been observed. Early research suggested that the "bottle-neck" in salmon productivity occurred during the fresh water phase. Much subsequent work and recent major initiatives (e.g. Salmonid Enhancement Program) have clearly demonstrated the important of freshwater events to salmon recruitment, but have generally failed to account for more than 15 to 25% of the interannual variability in abundance. This has led to the current era, where many people are convinced that the man "bottle-neck" in productivity is high and variable mortality during the early sea-life stage. However, events in coastal waters may ultimately prove to be responsible for only a portion (perhaps 30-50%?) of the total interannual variability in mortality. After quantifying this, the next logical step will be to investigate recruitment processes of salmon on the high seas to determine the remaining sources of variability.

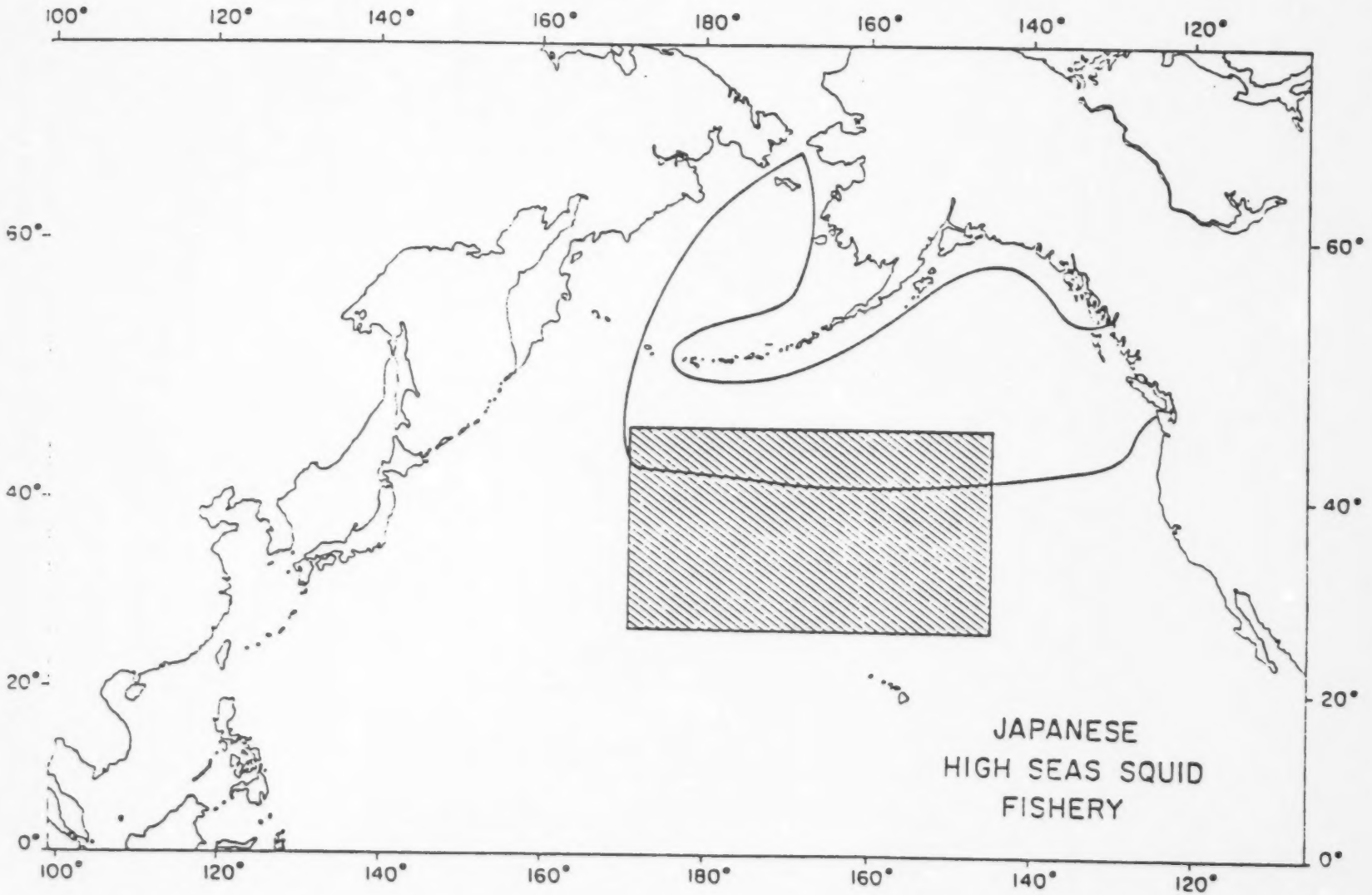
Research on the distribution, mortality, and growth of salmon on the high seas is also a major concern for stock management. Accurate estimates of interannual variations in abundance, average size, migration routes, and migration timint prior to the fishing seaosn would greatly improve and facilitate management of the fishery.

High Seas Fisheries

There has recently been increasing concern about the impact on Canadian salmon of foreign fleets fishing on the high seas. This concern is currently restricted to three fisheries. These are: (a) the high seas salmon-directed fisheries of Japan, (b) the high seas driftnet fisheries by Japan for non-salmonid species conducted by other nations. The fisheries with the greatest potential for significantly affecting Canadian salmon are the driftnet fisheries for non-salmonid species. Japanese, Taiwanese, and Korean vessels annually conduct extensive driftnet (gillnet) fisheries for flying squid, Omastrephes bartrami in the North Pacific Ocean. It is currently difficult to obtain reliable estimates for the total amount of fishing gear and effort involved in this fishery, but it is clearly substantial. for example, in 1983 an average jof 150 Japanese vessels, approximately 200 Korean vessels, and 101 Taiwanese vessels participated in high seas squid fisheries. Each vessel typically fishes 30 to 50 km of of gillnet, amounting to a total of 13530 to 22550 km of gillnet deployed each night! The high seas squid fishery has continued to expand since 1983, so it is likely that this is a consevative estimate of the amount of vessels and gear involved in more recent years.

The existing data indicate that there is some overlap in the geographic distribution of flying squid and salmon in the North Pacific (Figure 2). However, this is probably not very significant in a practical sense. The area of overlap in distribution of squid and salmon arises from the north-south migrations of both species in response to the seasonal warming and cooling of the surface layer of the ocean. However, flying squid prefer warmer water than salmon and typically are concentrated significnalty further south at any givne time. The results of a Canadian research vessel cruise this past summer are snsistent iwth tihis, and indicate that very few salmon would nprmally be cuaght by fishing vessels targeting exclusively on flying squid. However, it is not known to what extent interannual variability in oceanographic conditions affects the distribution of squid and salmon, or to what extent some vessels may be targeting on species other than squid. Very little is currently known about the distribution and fishing activities of vessels from Taiwan and Korea.

FIGURE 2



Japanese high seas squid fishery area compared to Canadian high seas salmonid area of interest. Maximum salmonid ranges are shown and there probably exists a seasonal separation during the squid fishery.

"Ghost Nets"

The high seas squid fisheries have also concerns about the drift nets that are lost or discarded at sea. This is primarily due to the nature and large quantities of fishing gear deployed in the drift net fisheries, the fact that the nets are not anchored, the often difficult sea conditions encountered in the North Pacific, and the heavy commercial vessel traffic which presumably severs many nets. The main concern appears to be that any lost or discarded gear may continue to "ghost fish" for long periods, possibly capturing and killing significant numbers of salmon, sea mammals, and sea birds, before finally sinking to the ocean bottom or washing ashore. Recent D.F.O. observations indicate that substantial quantities of high seas drift nets have washed ashore along the west coast of British Columbia. However, most nets recovered so far were found on beaches and were torn and tangled, so it is not clear to what extent lost and discarded nets pose a threat to Canadian salmon.

Sockeye Salmon

Due to the time constraints of this workshop, and the variety of life cycles exhibited by the various species of Pacific salmon, is probably best to limit discussion to one species as much as possible. Sockeye salmon is a reasonablechoice because this species is usually the most important commercially, and is probably the best known.

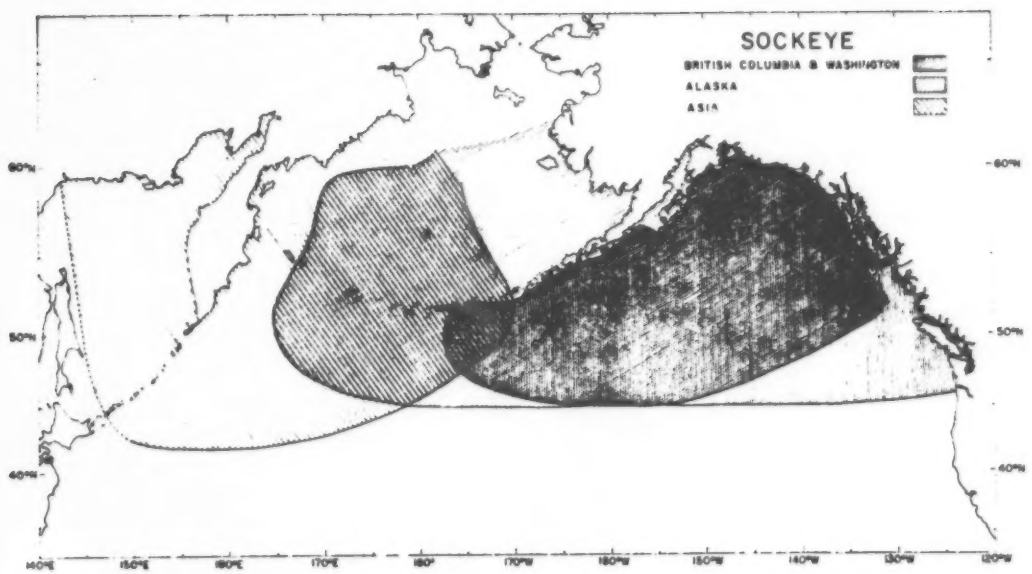
British Columbia sockeye typically have a four year life cycle, spending the first 1+ years in fresh water, the next 2+ years in the ocean. they return to spawn and then die in fresh water as four-year olds. A brief summary of other pertinent biological information for sockeye is available (Ricker 1966). Most B.C. sockeye enter the ocean during the spring of their second year at a size of 60-100 mm fork length. Existing data indicate that they remain close to shore, but migrate rapidly northward along the coast of British Columbia, Alaska, and the Aleutian Islands during their first ocean year. Juvenile sockeye apparently remain in and disperse throughout the Gulf of Alaska over the next two years, migrating soutwest each winter and northeast each summer (French et al. 1976; Hart and Dell 1986). Fishing surveys and tagging studies indicate that B.C. sockeye are distributed over a vast area in the North Pacific ocean,and the there is considerable overlap in the distributions of sockeye from Canada, the U.S., and Asia (Figure 3).

The productivity of sockeye salmon has varied considerably since commercial exploitation began in B.C. at the beginning of this century (Figure 4). This illustrates the enormous and largely unpredictable interannual variations that are common among all species of Pacific salmon. In general, landings of sockeye historically appear to have been substantially higher than current levels. The major declines in 1913-14 resulted largely from devastation of the important Fraser River stocks by the obstructicon of the river at Hells Gate Canyon. the current popular opinion in D.F.O. is that heavy fishing pressure thereafter has permitted only a modest recovery.

Fisheries Oceanography

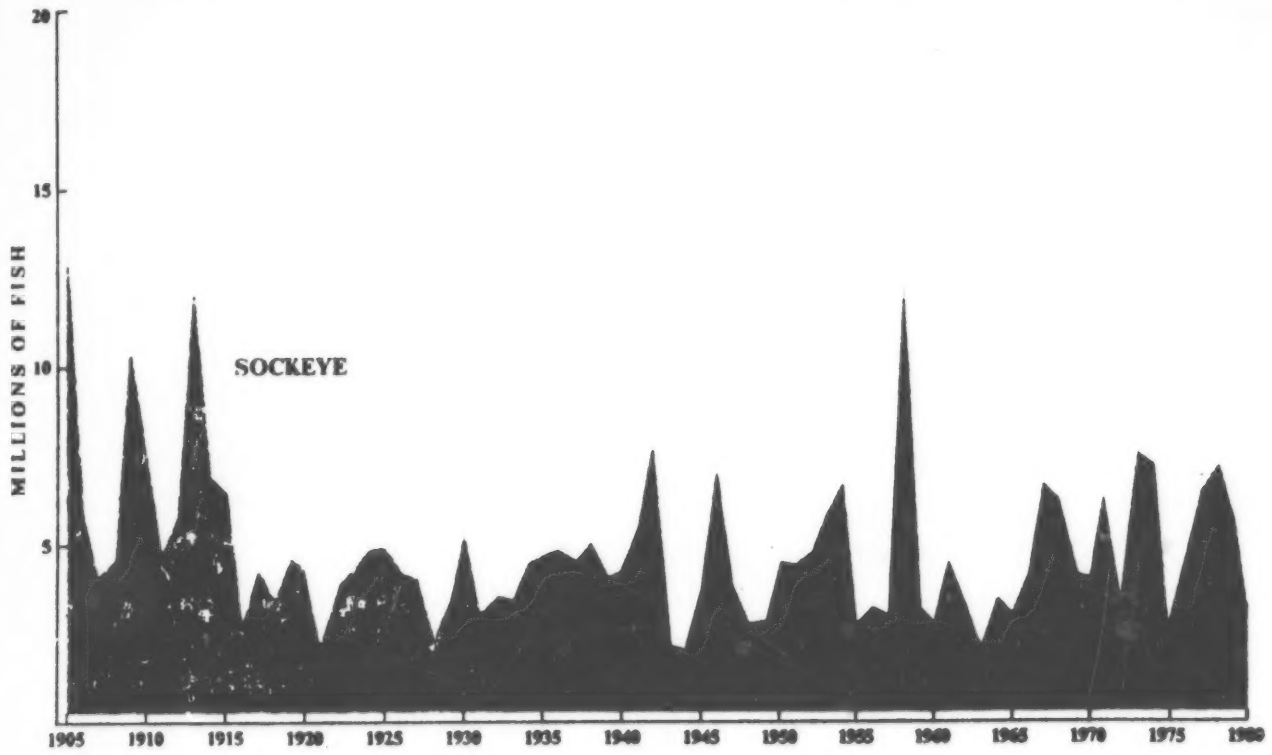
A summary of the general oceanography of the North Pacific Ocean is available (Shumacher and Wilson 1985). In general, it is clear that the ocean

FIGURE 3



Ocean distribution of sockeye salmon from North America and Asia.

FIGURE 4



Commercial landings of Canadian sockeye salmon since 1905

distributions of salmon and many other fish species and their prey are largely determined by, and can be substantially modified by, variations in the properties and movements of water in the North Pacific. All species have specific tolerences for temperature, salinity, oxygen, etc. which limit their distribution. For example, the minimal overlap in the distribution of flying squid and salmon mentioned earlier appears to be due primarily to differnent temperature preferences or tolerences, with flying sqid typically avoiding water with temperatures less than 12-15 degrees C and salmon generally avoiding water with temperatures greater than about 10 degrees C. The distribution of salmon includes the Pacific Subarctic Region, with each species apparently distributed according to its own temperature preferences, and migrating north and south in response to seasonal changes in water temperature. In general, water temperature has not been found to be a strong or consistent determinanat of salmon distribution s in the the ocean, although it clearly does influence both ocean distributions and migrations. Tagging and experimental work have illustrated that during the coastal migration juvenile salmon travel about 2- km per day while adult salmon returning from the open ocean to spawn can travel up to 50 km per day, and can swim steadily at speed of at least 212 km per hour for more than a hundred hours. The effects of ocean currents on salmon is uncertain. Ocean currents probably influence the migration routes and timing of both junvenile and adult. There has alos been some speculation that ocean currents may directly affect the survuval of salmon during coastal migrations. Throughout their ocean life salmon typically remain near the sea surface, with most being concentrated in the top 20 meters and very few found below about 50 meters. Salmon can be tolerant, and appear indifferent to, a wide range of salinity. French et al. 1976 concluded that there was little relation between high seas distibution of sockeye salmon and surface salinity. The diets of salmon on the high seas typically include such things as plankton (euphausiids, copepods, etc.), squid, and small fish. The effect of variations in food concentrations or timing is not well understood, although there is some evidence of density dependent growth and mortality during the high seas period for some stocks (Peterman 1978, 1984).

References

French, R., H. Bilton, M. Osaka, and A. Hartt. 1976
Distribution and origin of sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) in offshore waters of the North Pacific Ocean. Int. North Pacific Fish. Comm. Bull. 34: 133 p.

Ricker, W.E. 1966. Salmon of the North Pacific Ocean - Part iii: A review of the life history of North pacific Salmon. 4. Sockeye salmon in British Columbia. p. 59-70. I.N.P.F.C. Bull. No. 18

Hartt, A.C. and M.B. Dell. 1986. Early oceanic migrations and growth of juvenile Pacific salmon and steelhead trout. I.N.P.F.C. Bulletin No. 46. 105 pp

Petermen, R.M. 1978. Testing for density dependant marine survival in Pacific salmonids. J. Fish. Res. Board. Can 35:1434-1450.

Peterman, R.M. 1984. Effects of Gulf of Alaska Sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) abundance on survival, body size, growth rate, and age at maturity of British Columbia and Bristol Bay, Alaska sockeye populations. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1302: 87 pp.

Shumacher, J.D., and J.G. Wilson 1986. On the atmospheric and oceanic environment of the Gulf of Alaska. p. 135-178. In: A Workshop on Comparative Biology, Assessment, and Management of Gadoids from the North Pacific and Atlantic Oceans. Seattle, Washington. 24-28 June 1985. Proceedings: Session I: Physical and Biological Environment.

APPENDIX V BACKGROUND INFORMATION ON THE NORTHERN COD QUESTION

by

J. Rice
Newfoundland Region

This cod stock is the largest stock in the Northwest Atlantic, found in an area spanning more than 8° latitude. It has a complex life history, including an annual migration from offshore to inshore sites, and back offshore. During the offshore phase, the stock is partitioned into components more or less isolated on separate banks; whereas, during the inshore phase, these stock components overlap, and the patchiness of its distribution along the eastern and northern coastal areas of Newfoundland and Labrador varies from year to year. There can be also some movement alongshore during the inshore period.

Because the stock has a complex substructure, covers such an immense area, and has inshore and offshore components to its annual cycle, it is exposed to a huge array of environmental influences. Furthermore, the stock size has changed greatly in the past few decades, as have sizes of many other fish stocks which may interact with cod as prey or competitors. This means that many biotic factors may have influenced the biology of the stock as well. Clearly, untangling the influence of individual factors on recruitment to this stock is extremely difficult. Even the task of careful collection of additional data is challenging and slow, due to the size, area covered, and complexity of the stock.

The Northern cod stock has been exploited by European fishermen for nearly five centuries, with both inshore and offshore fisheries having long histories. With the advent of freezer-trawler technology, this stock was fished heavily by offshore trawlers prior to the extension of Canadian jurisdiction. Spawning stock biomass was reduced from over 1.2 mmt in the early 1960's to under 0.25 mmt by 1976. Over the same period, recruitment declined drastically, from as high as 900 million recruits in one year (1967) to as few as 100 million recruits in the mid- 1970's.

Although no one has proposed a precise shape for the stock-recruit relationship in this stock, for some years scientists have felt that a larger spawning biomass should enhance recruitment. "The Subcommitte considered the relationship between spawning biomass...and recruitment..., and advises that an adequate spawning biomass for this stock might be in the range of 1.2-1.8 mmt." (ICNAF Redbook 1977) (Corrected VPA estimates of historical stock sizes have since updated those values to a range from 0.85-1.3 mmt). They noted that poor recruitment may arise from a large spawning stock, however, as a very large recruitment may arise from a small SSb.

In 1977, a management strategy for this stock was adopted which had the objective of rebuilding the stock to the target range by the late 1980's. (ICNAF Redbook 1977). The stock has not yet rebuilt to the desired range. One factor in the slower than expected growth rate was the occurrence of a series of year-classes much weaker than the historic average recruitments assumed when the rebuilding program was initially discussed. An effect of the depressed spawning

biomass has been implicated in producing these weak year-classes. "Figure 11 (sic) suggests a significant effect of adult stock size on subsequent recruitment--so strong it would be irresponsible not to take the possibility into account in setting management measure" (Report of Task Group on the Newfoundland Inshore Fishery; 1987 pg 40). New non-parametric analyses support the existance of such an effect, but suggests factors other than spawning biomass contribute to determining recruitment levels in this stock. (Rice and Evans; in press). In fact, some regression models with autocorrelated error structures suggest the relationship of recruitment to spawning biomass may not (quite) be statistically significant (P=0.06; R. A. Myers, pers. comm).

Suggestions that oceanographic factors influence recruitment in Northern Cod also go back to at least the early 1970's. Templeman (1972) noted the coincidence of year class strengths in Northwest Atlantic cod and haddock stocks, with a lag which increased from south to north. He suggested several physical oceanographic processes that might affect recruitment to these stocks; water temperature, transport of eggs and larvae, wind and current driven mixing. He also noted the possibility of impacts on recruitment from biotic influences, especially abundance of predators, and the timing and magnitude of the spring bloom. He interpreted the evidence available at that time as suggesting the occurrence of moderately cool water in late winter and spring and timing of the spring bloom might be especially important to gadoid recruitment. He discussed posible mechanisms linking these oceanographic processes to gadoid recruitment.

More recently, Sutcliffe, et. al. (1983) "inferred that freshwater runoff variability from Hudson Bay, and its influence in the Labrador Current productivity, are important in generating year class variability in Northern cod". (Sinclair, et. al., Fisheries Needs for Physical Oceanographic Information Within the Atlantic Zone, 1987, pg. 93). Subsequent analyses have cast doubt on this direct relationship (Myers and Drinkwater, in press), but other analysis suggest recruitment in several gadoid stocks in the Northwest Atlantic may be influence by aspects of physical transport of eggs and larvae (Koslow, et al. 1987, Myers and Drinkwater, unpubl.).

Management of the Northern cod stock is still predicated on a belief in the desirability of attaining a larger biomass, with a larger spawning biomass and, thus, enhanced recruitment as one possible resultant benefit. (Others included higher catch rates, more stable catches, larger fish and more stable inshore catches). To achieve this larger biomass, the management strategy, in recent years, has been $F_{0.1}$, with the $F_{0.1}$ equilibrium biomass as the implicit target.

A useful study of sources of recruitment variation in this stock should give managers information on both how the average recruitment varies with spawning biomass, and how the expected recruitment at different spawning biomasses will vary with variation in oceanographic conditions. This is a different problem than predicting strength of a year-class a few years before it recruits to a fishery (although that ability would be nice as well). Rather, it is investigating the problems implicit in allusions in the TGNIF report to attaining levels of spawning biomass where recruitment will be more resistant to environmental buffeting, and to considering risk in the management of the stock (in this context the risks of even temporary recruitment failures, and the chances of successive strong year classes).

Synopsis of Life History and Stock Structure in Northern Cod

Adult cod overwinter in prespawning concentrations on the outer slopes of Hamilton Bank, Belle Isle Bank, Funk Island Bank and Northern Grand Bank. For management purposes age 7 has been used as the age of recruitment to the spawning population. Some cod certainly are sexually mature at younger ages, and cod as young as age 4 are common in the prespawning and spawning concentrations. Spawning occurs in the period March to June with spawning occurring earlier in the north. The buoyant eggs are released into the Labrador Current, where they are carried southward and onshore.

There is evidence of a consistent annual migration of cod inshore, following the spawning period. Fish overwintering on Hamilton Bank migrate primarily to southern Labrador and northeastern Newfoundland, south to Notre Dame Bay. Stock components overwintering on progressively more southerly banks move to progressively more southerly areas during the summer, but there is substantial overlap of cod from the overwintering sites during the inshore phase of their annual cycle. Cod overwintering on northern Grand Bank appear less prone to migrate inshore, but those fish do move further west and south to some extent, supporting a fishery in the vicinity of the Virgin Rocks. The return movement offshore begins in late summer, and continues through the fall and early winter.

There are also believed to be subpopulations resident in some of the inshore deep bays and coastal shelves. Little is known of these stocks, but their peak spawning may occur later than in the offshore components; commonly extending into May, June, or even later.

Little is known of the fate of the eggs from the offshore spawning components. Young cod (0's, 1's, 2's) are found in many inshore bays, and these areas are believed to be nursery areas for the stock. These inshore areas are surveyed for young code in some years. Important nursery areas offshore are not known, but there have been few attempts to find concentrations of young cod offshore. Commonly, groundfish move into deeper water and closer to the bottom as they grow larger.

Cod appear in the migrating groups by age 3 or 4. It is uncertain, howver, at what age cod first begin to show the annual migration pattern, and at what age the migrating behaviour is fully established. Although tagging studies indicate adult cod tend to return to the same bank where they were tagged, little is known of what determines which offshore bank juvenile cod first migrate to. Thus, the degree of mixing between spawning populations is unknown, but groups overwintering on the various banks are not believed to be completely genetically isolated. The TGNIF noted the lack of information on the degree to which stock components were responsible for their own recruitment to be an important gap in the knowledge of this stock.

Synopsis of Physical Oceanography in NAFO DIV. 2J and 3KL

The four offshore banks have large, fairly smooth caps shallower than 200 m (Hamilton Bank and Northern Grand Bank) or 300 m (Funk Island Bank and Belle Island Bank). To the east of the banks the continental shelf drops

steeply to depths well over 1000 m. The banks are separated by saddles with maximum depths of 400 m or more. The Labrador Trough lies inshore from the banks, again with depths often exceeding 400 m.

The cold, fresh, south-flowing Labrador current is a major oceanographic feature, with inshore and offshore branches. Velocities of both branches may exceed 40 cm. sec^{-1}, in jets adjacent to the much slower (5-10 $cm.sec^{-1}$) water in the cold intermediate layer lying over the banks. Wintertime convective cooling enhances the cold water advected down by the Labrador current.

In summer a shallow layer of warmer water (10°-15°C) forms above the thermocline, due to surface warming. This layer never reaches to the bottom of the water column to contact the top the banks, however. Storm events can increase vertical mixing to some extent, but the thermocline persists from its formation in spring well into the fall.

Water in the Labrador current jets shows little season variation. The inshore branch is very cold, with -1.5 considered typical, and values from -1.8 and 0° in extreme years. The offshore branch has a complex structure with a range of temperatures from -1.5 to 4.0° usually present. Warmer water is trapped in the Labrador Trough below the cold intermediate layer. This water remains in the 1° to 3°C range year-round.

The cold intermediate layer itself is a dominant oceanographic feature. It forms a wedge from the shoreward slope of the Labrador Trough, out across the width of the continental shelf, typically 200-300 km. Its thickness and temperature vary from year to year. In particularly cold years it may extend from 50-250 m and most water can be well below -1.5°C. In warm years it may only reach the 100 m isobath, but is still likely to contain some water below -1.0°C. Seasonally, thickness is greatest in late winter, decreasing to disappear with fall turnover.

The size and intensity of the cold intermediate layer is thought to be the major oceanographic factor contributing to variation in the annual migration of northern cod. These cod are commonly thought to prefer water of about 1-2°C or more. The influence of the cold intermediate layer and the branches of the Labrador Current on distribution and development rate of northern cod eggs and larve, and on subsequent year- class strengths, has not been investigated systematically.

Papers to distribute relative to recruitment of Northern Cod

Templeman, W. 1972. Year-class success in some north Atlantic stocks of cod and haddock. ICNAF Spec. Publ. #8 (223-238).

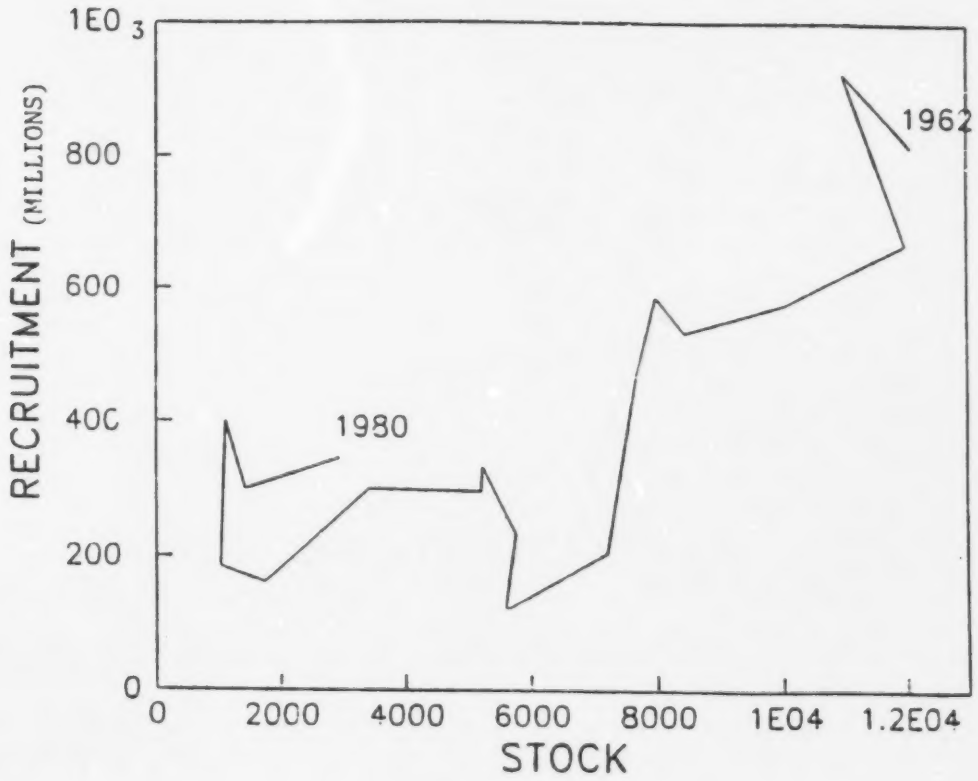
Lear, W. H. 1984. Discrimination of the stock complex of Atlantic cod (Gadus morhua) off southern Labrador and eastern Newfoundland, as inferred from tagging studies. J. Northw. Atl. Fish. Sci 5 (143-159).

Lear, W. H. and Wells, R. 1984. Vertebral averages of juvenile cod (Gadus morhua) from coastal waters of eastern Newfoundland and Labrador as indicators of stock origin. J. Northw. Atl. Fish Sci 5 (23-31).

Koslow, J.A., K. E. Thompson and W. Silvert. 1987. Recruitment to Northwest Atlantic Cod (Gadus morhua) and Haddock (Melanogrammus aeglefinus) stocks: Influence of stock size and climate. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci 44 (26-39).

Petrie, B., S. Akenhead, J. Lazier and J. Loder 1987. The oceanographic conditions in NAFO fishing areas 2J3KL for the period 1978-1986. CAFSAC Res/Doc 87/29 (26p).

Rice and Evans, Tools for embracing uncertainty in the management of cod in NAFO Divisions 2J and 3KL. Journal du Consiel, M.S.



Biomass of 7+ cod in NAFO Div 2J+3KL (in hundreds of tons) from the 1986 Assessment by NAFO, and recruitment, taken as numbers of age 4's recruiting to the fishery lagged four years.

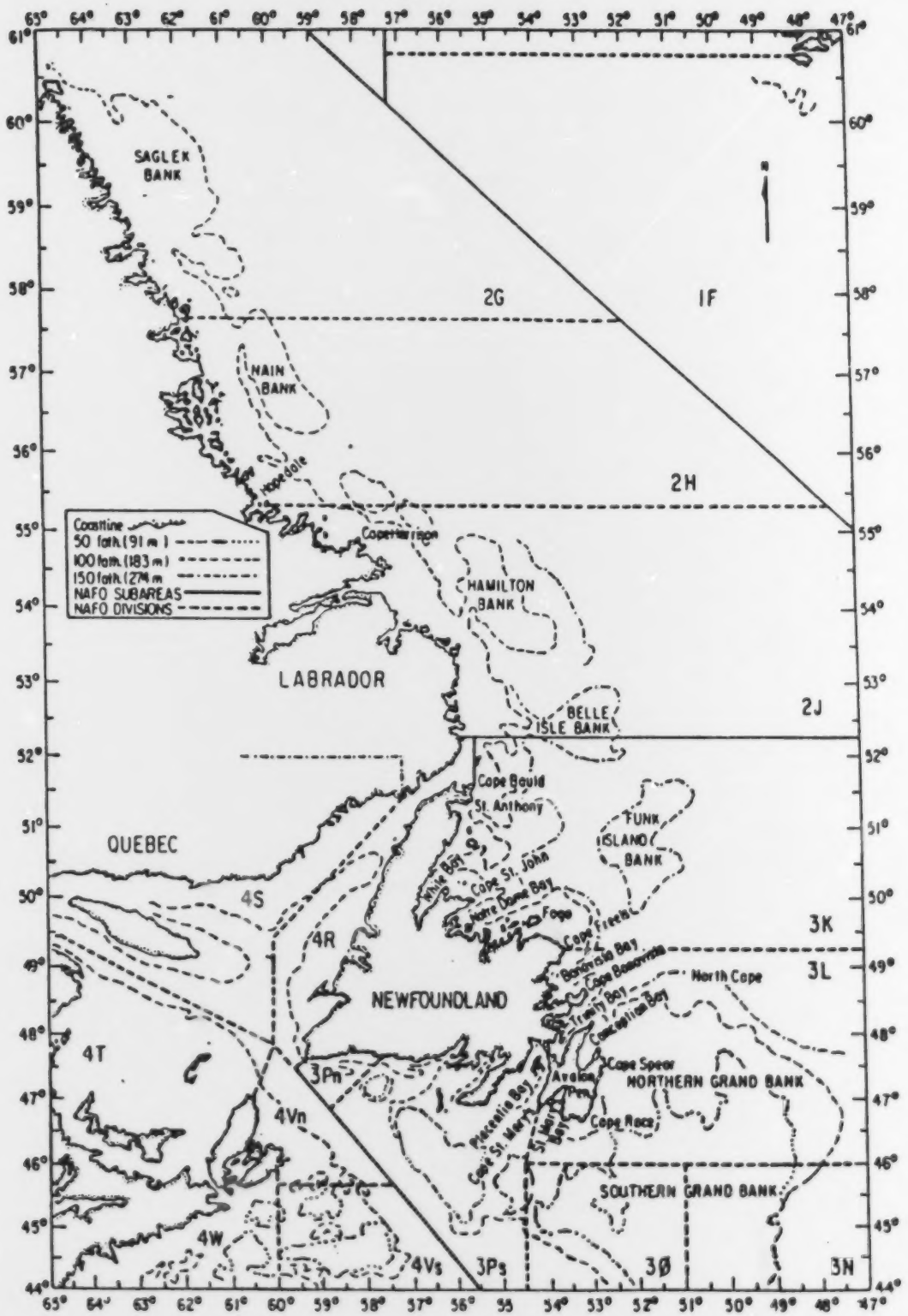


Fig. 1. Area mao of Newfoundland and Labador, showing NAFO Divisions and place names